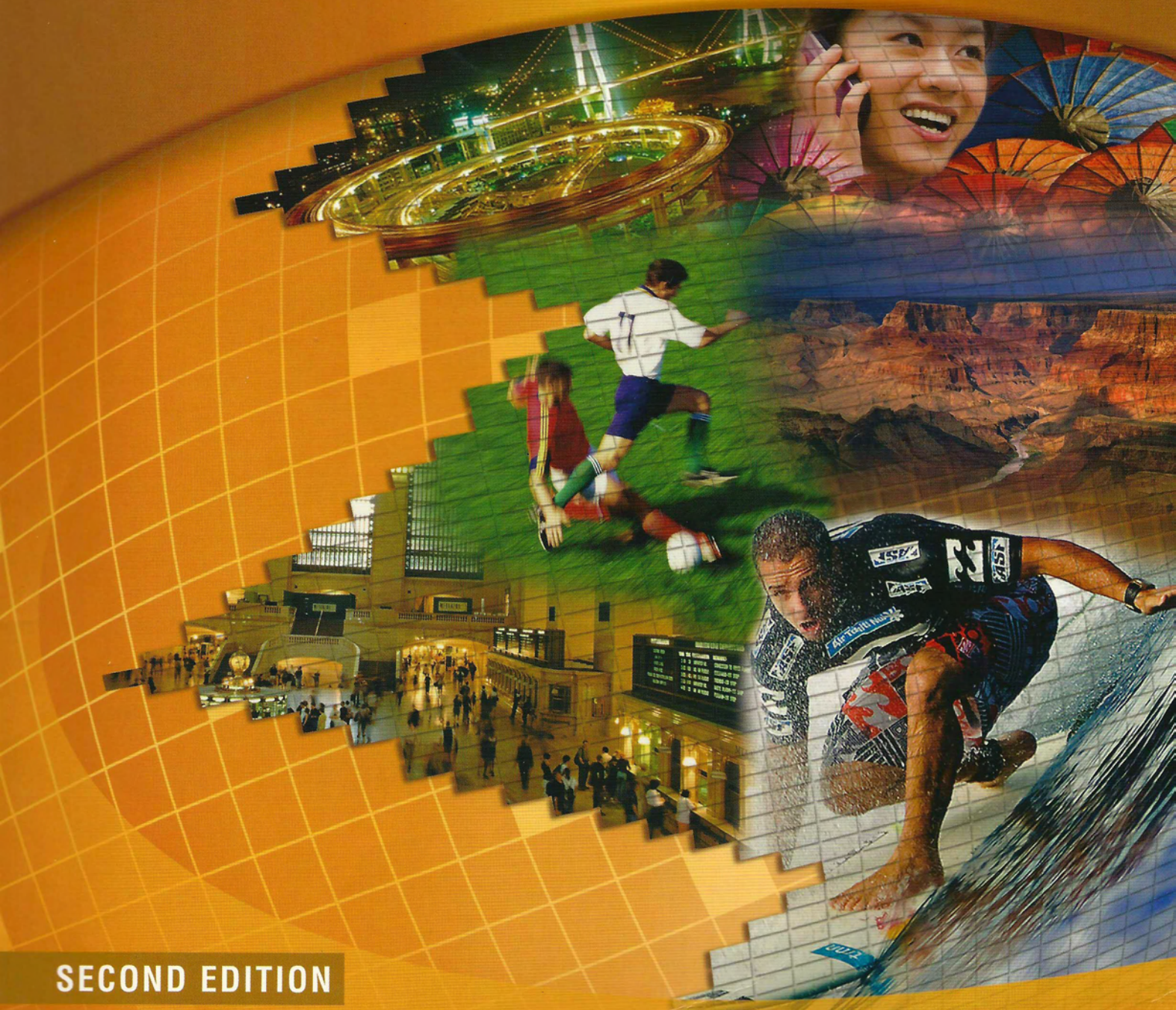
STUDENT PRACTICE
Multi-ROM

American Headway 2

THE WORLD'S MOST TRUSTED ENGLISH COURSE



SECOND EDITION

John and Liz Soars

OXFORD

oxfordenglishtesting.com

What is on the Student Practice Multi-ROM?

The Student Practice Multi-ROM has three parts:

1. Interactive grammar, vocabulary, writing, and video activities
2. Audio material from the video section
3. One free oxfordenglishtesting.com practice test. Read below to find out how to access your test.

How do I access my online practice test?

Go to oxfordenglishtesting.com and choose a practice test. You will need:

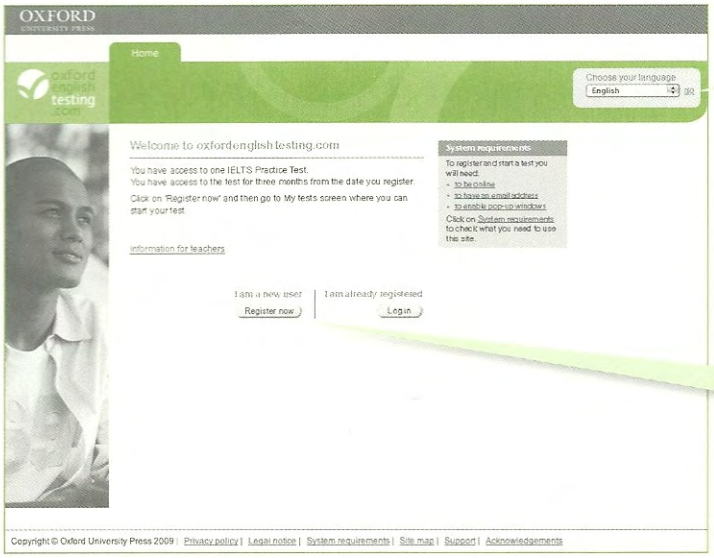
- to be connected to the Internet to take the test.
- to have an e-mail address (to register).

To access your practice test for the first time:

1. Put the Multi-ROM into the CD drive of your computer.
2. A screen will appear giving you two options. Click the first one to access your tests.

What do I do when I get to the website?

When you see this screen, follow steps 1–3. If the screen does not appear, follow step 4.



1 Choose a language from the drop-down list and click **Go**. The practice test will be in English. All other web pages will appear in the language you select here.

2 Click on the **Register now** button and fill in the details. Give an e-mail address and make up a password to use every time you log in.

3 Click on **Register**. Then click on **Save registration details**. Click on **My tests** to log in. You will have one year to use the practice test.

4 If the above page does not appear, go to www.oxfordenglishtesting.com/unlock. You will be asked to click **Register now** if you are a new user. Fill in the registration form and enter the unlock code printed on your Multi-ROM. Each code is unique and looks like this: 9219e6-9471d9-cf7c79-a5143b.

To access your test in the future, go to oxfordenglishtesting.com and log in using your e-mail and password.

American Headway 2

THE WORLD'S MOST TRUSTED ENGLISH COURSE

SECOND EDITION

John and Liz Soars

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Scope and Sequence

LANGUAGE INPUT

UNIT	GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	EVERYDAY ENGLISH
1 Getting to know you *page 2*	**Tenses** Present, past, future p. 2 **Questions** *Where were you born?* *What do you do?* p. 2 **Question words** *Who … ?, Why … ?, How much … ?* p. 3	Using a bilingual dictionary p. 8 Parts of speech adjective, preposition p. 8 Words with more than one meaning *I'm reading a good book.* *I booked my flight online.* p. 8 Phonetic symbols p. 8	Social expressions 1 *Have a good weekend!* *Same to you.* p. 9 Music of English – stress and intonation in sentences p. 9
2 The way we live *page 10*	**Present tenses** Present Simple *She lives in a room with 14 other women.* p. 10 Present Continuous *What are you doing these days?* p. 11	Collocations Daily life *have breakfast* *text your friends* p. 13	Making conversation 1 Asking questions Showing that you're interested p. 17 Music of English – highs and lows p. 17
3 What happened next? *page 18*	**Past tenses** Past Simple *He looked around.* *What did you do last night?* p. 18 Past Continuous *He was living with his mother.* p. 20	Past forms *looked, ran, went* p. 19 Making connections *lose/find, break/fix* p. 19 Adverbs *quietly, suddenly, slowly, still, again* p. 24	Time expressions *October eleventh* *the eleventh of October* *at six o'clock, on Saturday, in 1989* p. 25 Music of English – word linking p. 25
4 The marketplace *page 26*	**Quantity** *much* and *many* *How much milk?* *How many eggs?* p. 26 *some* and *any* *some apples* *There aren't any bananas.* p. 27 *a few, a little, a lot/lots of* *a few carrots, a little juice, lots of potato chips* p. 27 *something, someone, somewhere* p. 28 **Articles** *a soccer ball, an old Learjet, the world* *You can buy stamps.* p. 28	Food *milk, eggs, potatoes, a loaf of bread* p. 26 Bathroom objects *shampoo, a tube of toothpaste, towels* p. 28 Shopping *drugstore, post office, a T-shirt, envelopes, aspirin* p. 32 Music of English – sounding polite p. 32	Prices *£1.99* *$1.50* *What's the exchange rate?* *How much is a liter of gas?* p. 33
5 What do you want to do? *page 34*	**Verb patterns** *want/hope to do* *enjoy/like doing* *looking forward to doing* *'d like to do* p. 34 **Future intentions** *going to, will,* and Present Continuous for future *She's going to travel around Mexico.* *I'll give you a ride.* *What are you doing tonight?* p. 36	*-ed/-ing* adjectives *I was really frightened.* *That's so annoying.* p. 40	How are you feeling? *nervous, fed up* *Cheer up!* p. 41 Music of English – intonation in exclamations p. 41
6 Places and things *page 42*	***What … like?*** *What's hip-hop music like?* p. 42 **Comparative and superlative adjectives** *big, bigger, biggest* *interesting, more interesting, most interesting* *good, better, best* p. 43 ***as … as*** p. 48 *New York isn't as big as Tokyo* p. 44	Talking about towns *the nightlife* *historical buildings* p. 43 Synonyms and antonyms in conversation *lovely, beautiful* *great, terrible* p. 48 Music of English – stress and intonation p. 48	A long weekend *book online* *What exhibitions are showing this week?* *sightseeing* p. 49

SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

READING	LISTENING	SPEAKING	WRITING
"Blind Date" – a magazine article about the search for the perfect partner p. 6	"Best friends" – four people talk about their closest friends p. 5	Exchanging information – Dr. Mary Steiner p. 4 Discussion – best friends p. 5 Discussion – blind dates p. 7	Describing friends – Correcting common mistakes p. 98
"Tales of two cities" – two people talk about their two homes in different countries (jigsaw) p. 14	"A 24/7 society" – a radio program about night workers p. 16	Exchanging information – people's lifestyles p. 12 Describing your favorite room p. 13 Discussion – living abroad p. 14 Discussion – working at night p. 16	An e-mail – Linking words *but, although, however, so, because* p. 99
"The name's Bond, James Bond" – an extract from *The Man with the Golden Gun* p. 22	An extract from *The Man With The Golden Gun* p. 22	Telling stories *fortunately/unfortunately* p. 21 Exchanging information – a teenager goes on a spending spree p. 21	Telling a story – Position of adverbs and adjectives p. 100
"Markets around the world" – Bangkok, Provence, and Marrakech (jigsaw) p. 30	"I bought it on eBay!" – three people talk about things they have bought on eBay p. 29 Conversations in different kinds of stores p. 32	Information exchange – find the differences p. 28 Discussion – talking about markets p. 30 Group work – shopping in your town p. 32	A postcard – Synonyms in writing p. 101
"Brat camp" – where parents send their out-of-control teenagers p. 38	A song – "The Voice Within" p. 37	Role play – What are you doing tonight? p. 37 Talking about problems and advice p. 37 Discussion – teenagers and parents p. 38 Talking about books, movies and TV programs p. 40	Filling out a form p. 102
"London, the world in one city" – Is London the most cosmopolitan city in the world? (jigsaw) p. 46	"The best things in life are free" – five people talk about things they love that don't cost anything p. 45	Comparing things *Skiing is more exciting than sitting on the beach.* p. 44 Talk for one minute – my favorite free thing p. 45 Discussion – immigrants in your town p. 46	Describing a place – My hometown: relative pronouns *who/that/which/where* p. 103

LANGUAGE INPUT

UNIT	GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	EVERYDAY ENGLISH
7 Fame! *page 50*	**Present Perfect and Past Simple** *Julian has been in the music business for 20 years.* *John Lennon started a band when he was 15.* p. 50 ***for* and *since*** *for 56 years* *since 1984* p. 52 **Tense review** *Where do you live?* *How long have you lived there?* *Why did you move?* p. 52	Word endings Jobs *hairdresser, artist, politician* Nouns and adjectives *organization, moody* p. 56 Pronunciation – word stress *beauty, famous* *arrive, explain* *imagine, imagination* p. 56	Making conversation 2– short answers *Do you like cooking?* *Yes, I do, especially Chinese food.* p. 57 Music of English – sounding polite p. 57
8 Dos and don'ts *page 58*	***have to*** *I have to work at night.* *Do you have to work on weekends?* *He had to study for five years.* p. 58 ***should*** *You should go to the wedding.* *You shouldn't drink too much coffee.* p. 60 ***must*** *You must be careful.* p. 60	Words that go together *apply for a job* *earn a lot of money* *work hard* p. 64 Compound nouns *homemaker* *text message* p. 64 Music of English – word stress p. 64 Symptoms and illnesses p. 65	At the doctor's *a cold* *food poisoning* *It hurts.* *My body aches.* *Just take things easy for a while.* p. 65
9 Going places *page 66*	**Time clauses** *as soon as, when, while, until* *As soon as I have enough money, I'll …* p. 66 ***First conditional*** *If I pass my exams, I'll …* *What will you do if you get chased by wild animals* p. 67	Hot verbs – *make, do, take, get,* *make up your mind* *do me a favor* *take a photo* *get ready* p. 69	Directions *park, woods, pond* *across from the flower shop* *over the bridge* p. 73
10 Things that changed the world *page 74*	**Passives** *Tea is grown in India.* *The first cell phone call was made in 1973.* *What will cell phones be used for in the future?* p. 74	Verbs and nouns that go together *discover gold* *tell a lie* *lose weight* p. 77	Making phone calls *(919) 677-1303* *Is this Andy?* *This is John.* *You're breaking upage* p. 81 Music of English – intonation with numbers p. 81
11 What if …? *page 82*	**Second conditional** *If I were leader of the world, I'd give money to the poor.* *If I knew the answer, I'd tell you.* *If I had the time, I'd travel the world.* *If I were you, I'd apologize.* p. 82 ***might*** *I might go out, or I might stay at home.* p. 84	Literal phrasal verbs *go away* *Take off your coat.* Idiomatic phrasal verbs *Look up the word.* *The plane took off.* p. 88	Exclamations with *so* and *such* *I was so excited!* *It was such a shock!* *I've got so much work!* p. 89 Music of English – sentence stress p. 89
12 Trying your best *page 90*	**Present Perfect Continuous** *I've been living on the streets for a year.* *How long have you been selling* Street News? p. 90 **Present Perfect Simple versus Continuous** *He's been running.* *He's run five miles.* p. 90	Hot verbs – *bring, take, come, go* *I bring my dictionary to class.* *I took some flowers to my friend.* *My aunt comes to visit every week.* *I always go for coffee after school.* p. 93	Social Expressions 2 *Excuse me! Can I get past?* *Good luck on your exam!* *Thank you for having me.* p. 97

Audio Scripts p. 111 **Grammar Reference** p. 122 **Pairwork and Extra Materials** p. 137

1 Getting to know you

- **Grammar:** Tenses • questions
- **Vocabulary:** Using a bilingual dictionary
- **Everyday English:** Social expressions (1)

STARTER **1** Match the questions and answers.

Where were you born?	A year ago.
What do you do?	Three times a week.
Are you married?	In China.
Why are you studying English?	Because I need it for my job.
When did you start studying English?	I'm a teacher.
How often do you have English classes?	No, I'm single.

2 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

TWO STUDENTS

Tenses and questions

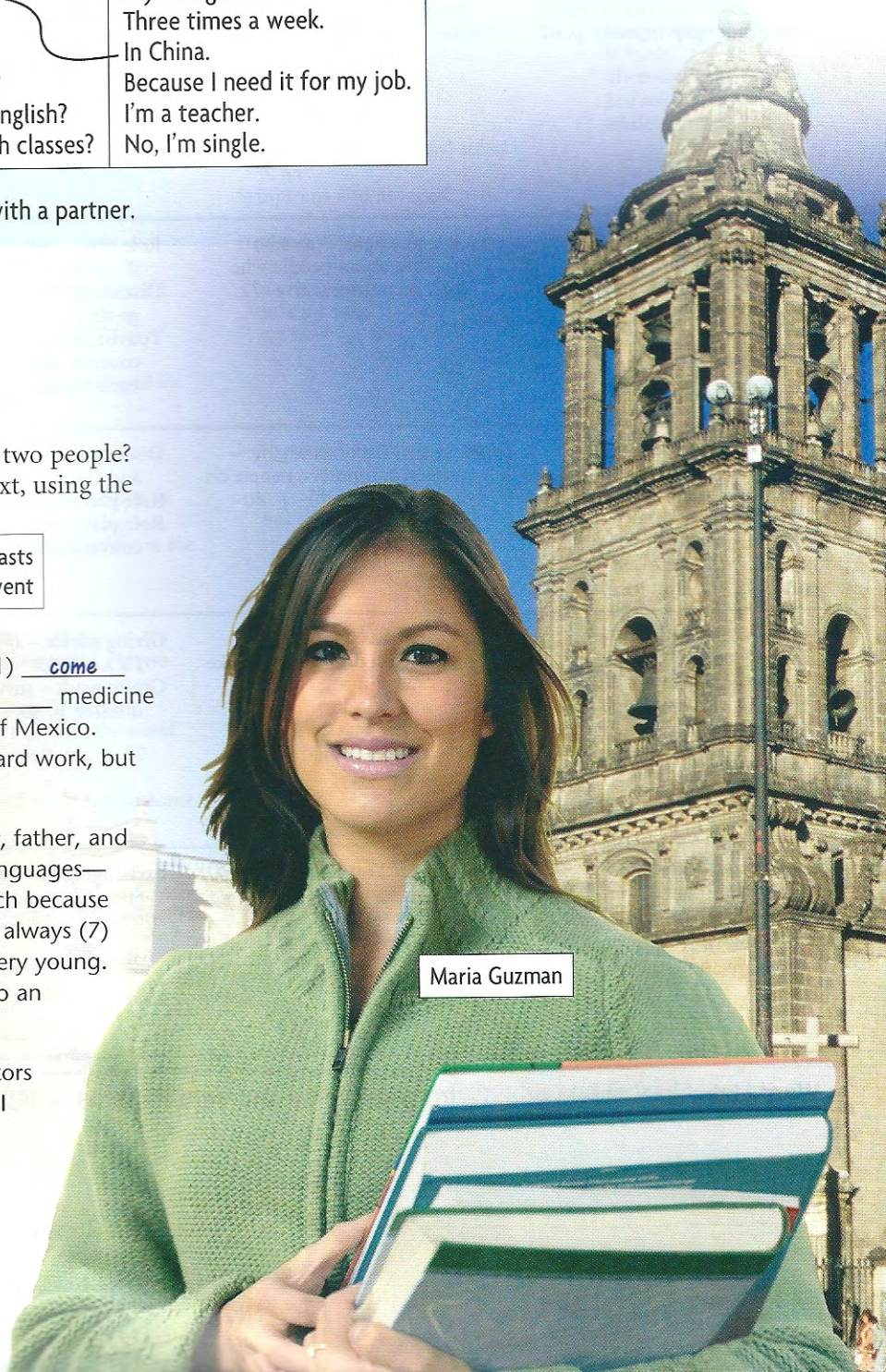
1 CD1 2 Look at the pictures. Who are the two people? Read and listen to Maria. Complete the text, using the verbs in the box.

'm enjoying	'm going to work	live	lasts	
'm studying	~~come~~	speak	spoke	went

Hello! My name's Maria Guzman and I (1) ___come___ from Mexico City. I'm 20, and I (2) _____ medicine at the National Autonomous University of Mexico. The course (3) _____ six years. It's hard work, but I (4) _____ it a lot.

I (5) _____ at home with my mother, father, and grandmother. I can speak two foreign languages—English and French. I (6) _____ French because my grandmother's from France, and she always (7) _____ to me in French when I was very young. I speak English because I (8) _____ to an English-speaking high school.

After I graduate, I (9) _____ for Doctors Without Borders in West Africa, because I want to travel and help people.





2 Look at the photo of Jim. Complete the questions about him.

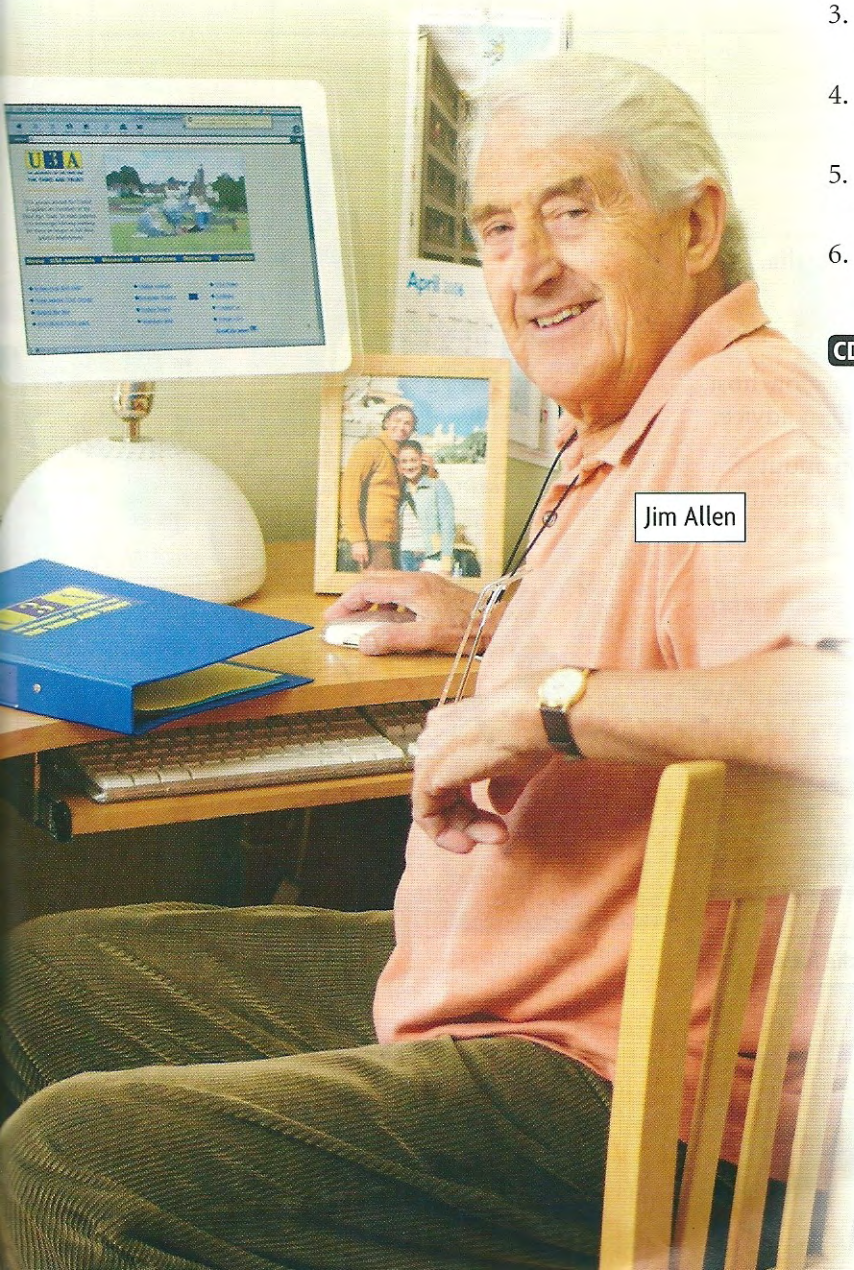
1. ___Where does he___ come from?
2. _____ live?
3. _____ live with?
4. _____ do before he retired?
5. When _____ leave school?
6. What _____ studying?
7. How many children _____ have?
8. What _____ do next year?

CD1 3 Listen to Jim, and answer the questions. Ask and answer them with a partner.

3 Complete the questions to Jim.

1. "Do ___you have___ a job?"
   "No, I don't. I'm retired. I'm a student now."
2. "What college _____ to?"
   "I don't go to a college. I study at home."
3. "_____ the class?"
   "Yes, I am. It's wonderful."
4. "What _____ right now?"
   "I'm writing an essay about *Don Quixote*."
5. "_____ leave school at 15?"
   "Because my family was poor. We needed the money."
6. "_____ to visit next year?"
   "My son and his wife. They live in Argentina now."

CD1 4 Listen and check.



GRAMMAR SPOT

1. Find examples of present, past, and future tenses in the audio scripts about Maria and Jim on p. 111.
2. What are the tenses in these two sentences? What is the difference between them?
   She lives with her parents.
   She's living with a family in the U.S. for a week.
3. Match the question words and answers.

What . . . ?	Because I wanted to.
Who . . . ?	Last night.
Where . . . ?	$5.
When . . . ?	A sandwich.
Why . . . ?	By bus.
How many . . . ?	In New York.
How much . . . ?	Jack.
How . . . ?	The black one.
Whose . . . ?	It's mine.
Which . . . ?	Four.

Grammar Reference 1.1–1.3 p. 122

PRACTICE

Talking about you

1 Ask and answer the questions in small groups.

- Where . . . live?
- Who . . . live with?
- What . . . like doing on the weekend?
- What . . . do last weekend?

Where do you live?

How many languages . . . speak?

How . . . you come to school this morning?

Make more questions. Use some of the question words in the Grammar Spot on page 3. Ask your teacher some of the questions.

2 Each of the questions has *one* word missing. Write it in.

1. Do you like listening to music?
2. What kind of music you like?
3. Do you often jeans?
4. What your teacher wearing today?
5. Where you go on your last vacation?
6. What did you last night?
7. What you doing tonight?
8. What are you going do after you graduate?

CD1 | 5 Listen and check. Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

3 Write a paragraph about you. Use the text about Maria on page 2 to help you.

Check it

4 Choose the correct verb form.

1. Maria *is / is being* from Mexico City.
2. Jim *speaks / is speaking* Spanish and English.
3. Today he *wears / is wearing* an orange shirt.
4. *Are you liking / Do you like* black coffee?
5. Last year I *went / go* on vacation to Florida.
6. Next year my sister *studies / is going to study* in Australia.

Exchanging information

5 Look at the picture of Dr. Mary Steiner. She's a radio show host. People call to tell her their problems and she gives them advice.

Work with a partner. You have different information about Dr. Mary Steiner. Take turns asking and answering questions.

Student A

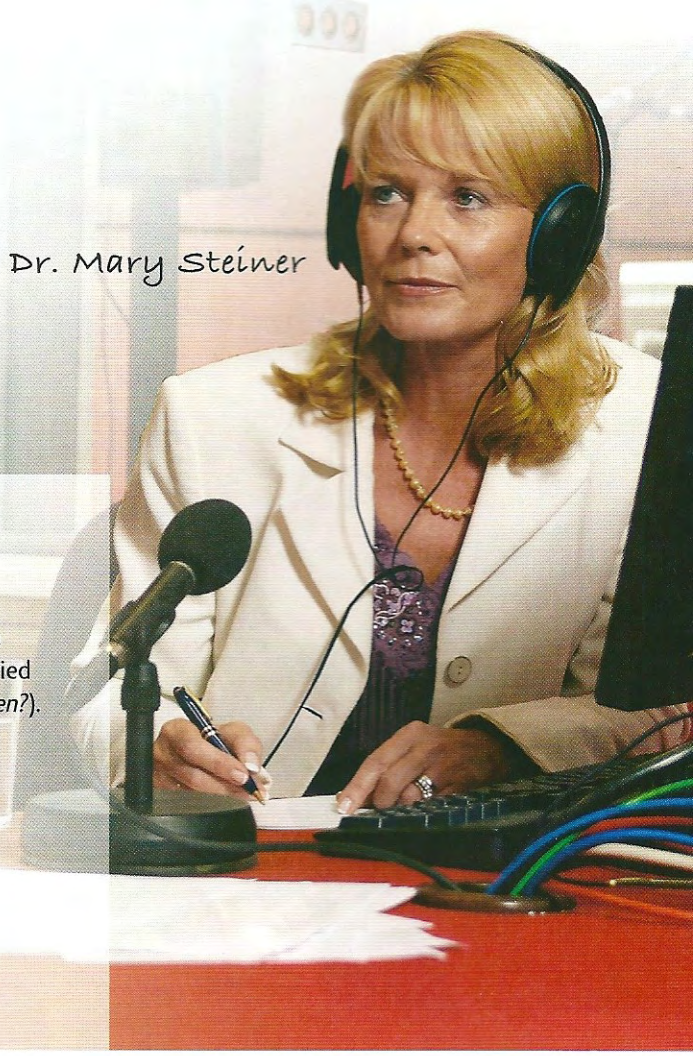
Look at the information on page 137.

Dr. Mary Steiner lives in . . . (*Where?*). She's married and has twin sons.

Student B

Look at the information on page 141.

Dr. Mary Steiner lives in Santa Barbara, California. She's married and has . . . (*How many children?*).



LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Best friends



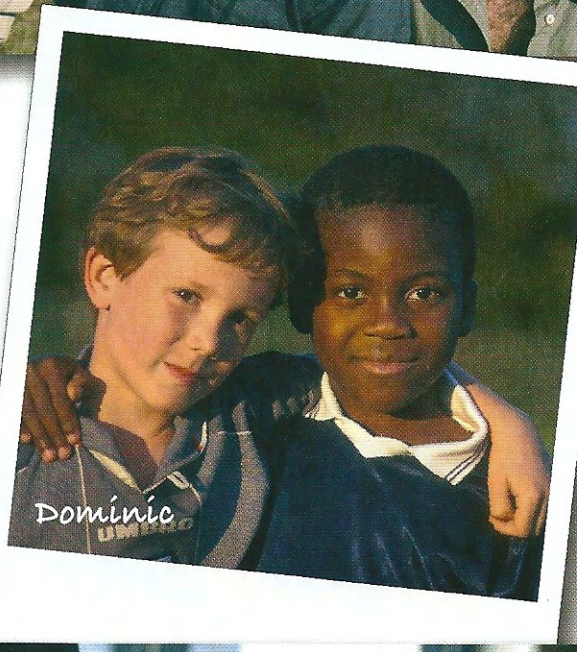
1 Discuss the questions in pairs.

- How many good friends do you have?
- Do you have a best friend?
- Why is he/she your best friend?

2 Look at the people in the photos. They will talk about their best friends Kirsty, Sammy, Dave, Adam, and Caleb.

CD1 6 Listen and complete the chart.

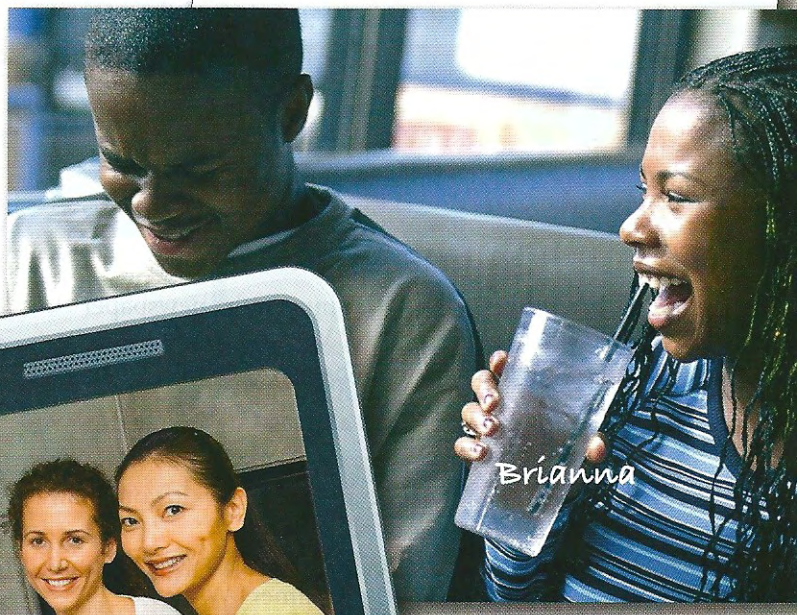
	Who is their best friend?	When did they meet?	Why are they friends?
1. Shona			
2. Dominic			
3. Michael			
4. Brianna			



3 Work with a partner. Answer the questions.

1. Which friends talk to each other about their problems?
2. Which friends share the same hobby? What is it?
3. Which friends only see each other once a year?
4. Which friends go to school?
5. Whose friend likes Indian cooking?
6. Whose friend has a dog named King?
7. Whose friend is tall?
8. Whose friend is like a brother?

CD1 6 Listen again. Check your answers.



Language work

4 Match the verbs with the words or phrase.

become	the Internet
play	e-mails
send	friends
give	on the phone
talk	soccer
have	together
grow up	parties
go on	advice



WRITING Describing friends *p. 98*

READING AND SPEAKING

A blind date

1 What's your star sign? Find out all the star signs in the class. Which is the most common? Do you think people who have certain star signs get along better?


Aries (March 21-April 20)

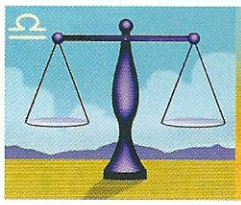

Taurus (April 21-May 21)

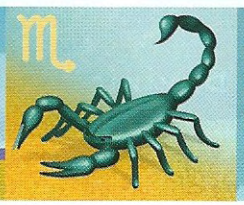

Gemini (May 22-June 21)


Cancer (June 22-July 22)


Leo (July 23-Aug 22)


Virgo (Aug 23-Sept 23)


Libra (Sept 24-Oct 23)


Scorpio (Oct 24-Nov 22)


Sagittarius (Nov 23-Dec 22)


Capricorn (Dec 23-Jan 20)


Aquarius (Jan 20-Feb 19)


Pisces (Feb 20-March 20)

2 Look at the photos and headings in the newspaper article. What is a blind date? What does the *Daily Post* do? Who are the people? What are their star signs?

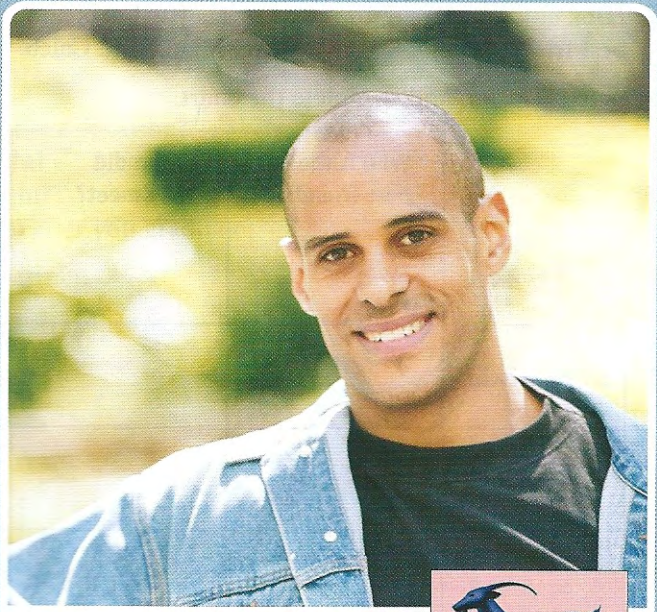
3 Work with a partner. Read about Matt and answer the questions.

1. What is his job? Does he enjoy it? How do you know?
2. What did he do after college?
3. Why does he like being back in Chicago?
4. Where does he go in the summer? Why?
5. What does he like doing there?
6. What does he do in Chicago on weekends?
7. Who is his perfect partner? What is most important?

4 Read the information about the three women carefully. Who do you think Matt will choose? Why? Discuss your ideas with your partner and then the class.

Blind Date

Who is looking for the perfect partner this week?





MATT 29, a scientist from Chicago, Illinois
Star sign: CAPRICORN

I travel a lot in my job. I go to meetings and conferences all over the world. It's great for me, because I studied oceanography and environmental science in college. After college I spent a lot of time at sea on scientific research ships. Now that I'm back in Chicago, it's much better for my social life. I have a lot of friends.

But I miss the ocean, so, in the summer, when I want to relax, I like going to the coast, and sometimes I spend the weekend camping with friends, having barbecues, and diving or surfing. It's great to get away from the city and go to a different world.

I also enjoy weekends in Chicago. I like meeting friends, hanging out, going to a baseball game. I'm a Cubs fan. I sometimes go clubbing, but not very often, and I love Indian food. I go to an Indian restaurant at least once a week.

Who is his perfect partner?

My perfect partner is outgoing, funny, and good to talk to. She dresses nicely, but isn't too worried about fashion. Someone who enjoys having a good time in the city, but also likes traveling, sports, and country life. This is very important to me.

Every week the DAILY POST helps a single person choose the perfect partner and have a date in an expensive restaurant. The couple then tells the POST what happened.

Who do you think Matt will pick from these three lovely girls?



MIRANDA, 29

Star sign: SCORPIO

Job: A lawyer. Loves her job, but it's hard work so she needs to relax.

Interests: Dancing, going to clubs, and movies. Meeting friends to exchange news. ("I have lots of friends.") Visiting art galleries sometimes.

Hates: Men who are crazy about football.

Clothes: Loves designer clothes. "I spend too much money on clothes."

Food: Italian, French, and fast food, "but only after a night out clubbing!"

Perfect partner: Good-looking, good fun, and good to talk to.



BETH, 25

Star sign: PISCES

Job: Bookstore manager. "I love working with books."

Interests: Reading, the theater, art galleries, bicycling ("I bike to work"), and walking. "Sometimes I really need to get out of the city and walk in the country."

Hates: "I can't think of anything."

Clothes: Comfortable. "I like to look nice, but I don't think too much about clothes."

Food: Vegetarian. Loves Indian food because "there are so many delicious 'veggie' dishes."

Perfect partner: Someone who's kind and good to talk to, who likes both city and country life.



HOLLY, 30

Star sign: CAPRICORN

Job: Fashion designer. "I started studying art history, but changed to fashion design."

Interests: Traveling, skiing ("I'm learning to snowboard now"), going out with friends to restaurants and clubs.

Hates: People who litter.

Clothes: "Of course, I love clothes. I always try to look good, but I like to be casual and comfortable sometimes."

Food: Loves all food. "It's a problem. I just love going out to restaurants, all kinds."

Perfect partner: Good-looking and fun. Someone who likes sports, travel, and adventure.

Listening

5 CD1 7 Listen to Matt. Who did he choose? Why? What happened on the date? Are they going to meet again?

6 CD1 8 Listen to the woman Matt chose. What impression do you get of the couple? What kind of people are they? Do you think they will stay together? Why?

What do you think?

- Are blind dates a good idea? Why? Why not?
- Why do people go on blind dates?
- Do you know anyone who has been on a blind date? Was it successful?
- Would you like to take part in a newspaper blind date like this one?

Language work

Ask your partner about his or her best friend. Write questions to ask your partner.

Who . . . ? What . . . ? Why . . . ? When . . . ? Where . . . ? How . . . ?

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Using a bilingual dictionary

1 Look at the entry from an English/Spanish dictionary.

the pronunciation in phonetic symbols

the translation

the word used in an example sentence.

book /bʊk/ **1** *n* libro: *I'm reading a book by Cervantes at the moment.* (*notebook*) cuaderno; (*of cheques, tickets*) talonario **2** *v* (*seat, room*) reservar: *I booked a table at the restaurant for four people.*

Information in parentheses (. . .) helps you to find the right translation.

the part of speech:
n = noun
v = verb

- **booking office** /ˈbʊkɪŋ ˌɒfɪs/ *n* taquilla
- **bookseller** /ˈbʊkselə(r)/ *n* librero
- **bookshelf** /ˈbʊkʃelf/ *n, pl* **~shelves** /-ʃelvz/ estante

Other words made with **book** (compounds) are in separate entries.

2 What part of speech or verb tense are these words? Write *n* (noun), *v* (verb), *a* (adjective), *adv* (adverb), *prep* (preposition), or *pt* (past tense).

computer ___n___	wonderful _____	on _____	quickly _____
poor _____	in _____	came _____	went _____
speak _____	usually _____	enjoy _____	factory _____

3 These words have more than one meaning. Write two sentences that show different meanings. Use a dictionary.

1. book	*I'm reading a good book.*	*I booked my flight online.*
2. kind		
3. mean		
4. light		
5. can		
6. play		
7. train		
8. ring		





CD1 9 Listen and compare.

4 Here are some of the words from Exercises 2 and 3 in phonetic symbols. Read them aloud, then write them.

Phonetic symbols *p. 154*

1. /ˈwʌndəfl/ _____	6. /miːn/ _____
2. /kəmˈpjuːtər/ _____	7. /rɪŋ/ _____
3. /laɪt/ _____	8. /treɪn/ _____
4. /spiːk/ _____	9. /ˈkwɪkli/ _____
5. /keɪm/ _____	10. /ˈfæktəri/ _____

CD1 10 Listen and check.

5 What are the everyday objects in the pictures? Look around the room you are in. Find five things you don't know the words for in English. Look them up in a dictionary and check the pronunciation.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Social expressions 1

1 In everyday situations we use a lot of social expressions.

Hi, Anna. How are you?

I'm fine, thanks. How are you?

CD1 11 Listen and repeat. Which words are stressed?

Music *of* English – stress and intonation

Every language has its own "music" (stress and intonation).

1 Sentence stress

CD1 12 Listen and practice.

Thank you very much.

I'm sorry. I can't come tonight.

Can you help me with this exercise?

2 Intonation English goes higher and lower than many other languages. CD1 13 Listen and practice.

Good morning! *Excuse me!* *Can I help you?*

2 Look at the photos. What do you think the people are saying?

3 Match an expression in **A** with one in **B**. Which expressions go with the photos? Which are more formal?

A	B
1. Good morning!	a. Bye! See you later.
2. See you tomorrow!	b. Sure. No problem.
3. Sorry, I didn't catch your name.	c. That's OK. Maybe another time.
4. Thank you very much.	d. Thanks! Same to you.
5. Excuse me?	e. Good morning! Nice day today.
6. I'm sorry. I can't come tonight.	f. Yeah! About nine, in the coffee shop.
7. Can you help me with this exercise?	g. Don't worry. You're here now.
8. Can I help you?	h. You're welcome.
9. Bye!	i. No, thanks. I'm just looking.
10. Bye! Have a good weekend!	j. It's Peter. Peter Lake.
11. Sorry I'm late.	k. Cheers!
12. Cheers!	l. Yes. Can I help you?

CD1 14 Listen and check. Pay attention to the stress and intonation. Practice saying the expressions and responses with a partner.

4 Test your partner. Say an expression from **A** in Exercise 3. Can your partner give the correct response from **B**?

5 With your partner, write two short conversations that include some of the social expressions. Act your conversations to the class.



2 The way we live

- **Grammar:** Present tenses
- **Vocabulary:** Collocations in daily life

Everyday English: Making conversation (1)

STARTER

What's your morning routine?

Complete these sentences about you. Then compare with a partner.

I always . . .	I usually . . .
I often . . .	I don't . . . very often.
Sometimes I . . .	I never . . .

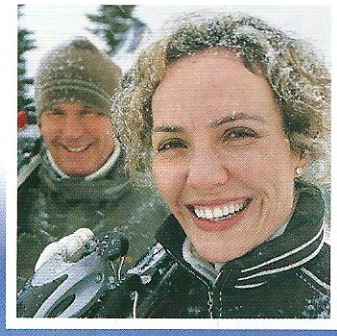
TWO DIFFERENT LIVES

Present tenses

1 Look at the pictures. Who are the people? Where are they?

2 Read the paragraphs and match them with the correct person. Write the letters *a–h* in the boxes for Anne-Marie and Lien.

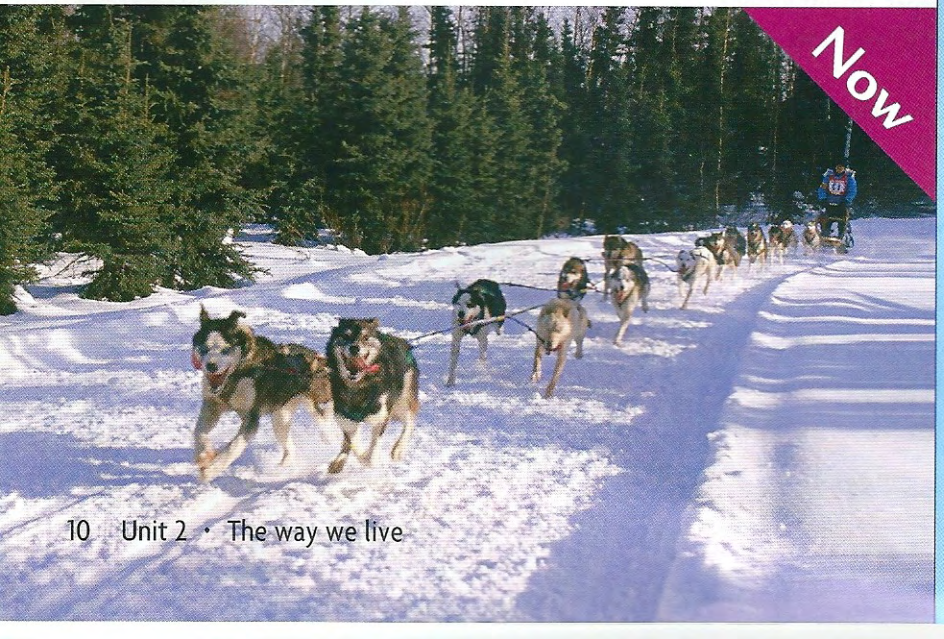
CD1 15 Listen and check.



Anne-Marie Boucher has a small family hotel with her husband, Pascal, near Quebec City, Canada.

1 ☐ 2 ☐ 3 ☐ 4 ☐





a She lives in a room with 14 other women in the factory dormitory, 700 miles from her family. The factory where she works employs 15,000 workers, nearly all of them women in their twenties.

b It's situated on the coast outside the town and near two national parks. She says, "Our hotel has wonderful views of the St. Lawrence River and the Isle of Orleans."

c She works from 8 A.M. to 7 P.M. She has just an hour for lunch. She says, "I work five and a half days a week, but I usually do overtime in the summer. It's very tiring. When I'm not working or studying, I sleep."

d Her monthly salary is about $65, enough to send a little back home to her family, and to pay for computer classes and English classes in town. She says, "I don't have any money left to buy things for me."

3 Answer the questions.

1. What are their jobs?
2. What's good about their jobs? What's not so good?
3. Who has the better job?
4. What languages do they speak?
5. What are they doing now?
6. What do they want to do?

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Which two tenses are used in the texts? Give examples of both.

2 Look at the sentences. Which refers to *all time*? Which refers to *now* or *around now*?

He works in a bank.
He's working hard for his exams.

She has a hotel.
She's having a computer lesson.

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 2.1–2.3 p. 123**

4 Read Xiaohong's and Anne-Marie's answers. Complete the questions with *you*.

1. "Do _____ job, Xiaohong?"
   "No, I don't like it much. My hands hurt all the time."
2. "What _____ right now?"
   "I'm having a computer lesson."
3. "_____ any brothers or sisters?"
   "I have a brother. He lives with my parents in Hunan province."
4. "Where _____ , Anne-Marie?"
   "Well, we don't usually go on vacation, so we're lucky to live in this beautiful place."
5. "Why _____ the dogs so hard these days?"
   "Because I want to race in a competition next year."
6. "How many _____?"
   "I have twelve! They don't live in the hotel, of course."

CD1 16 Listen and check.

Lien Xiaohong is 22. She lives and works in a toy factory in Guangdong province, China.

1 ☐ 2 ☐ 3 ☐ 4 ☐

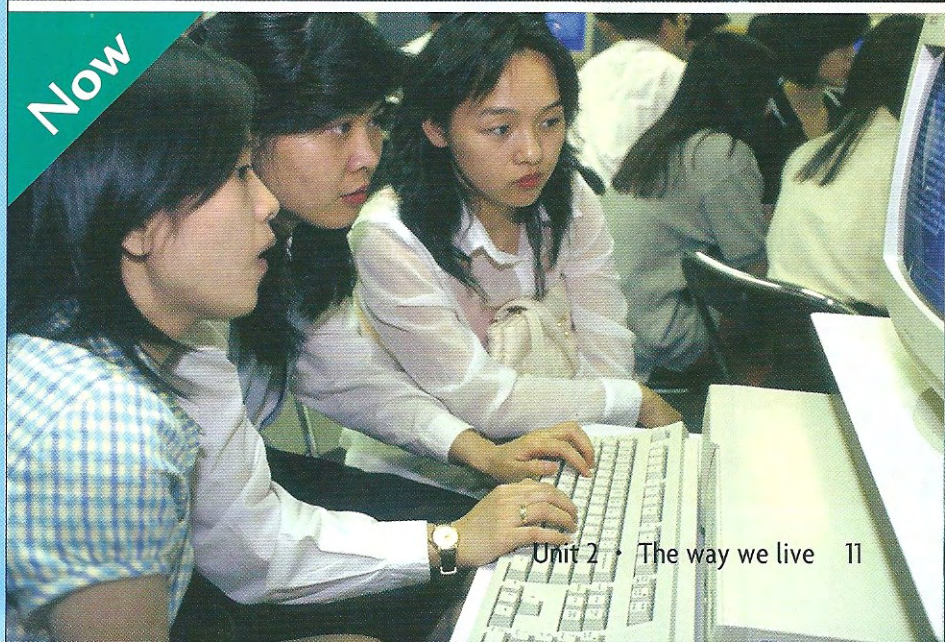


e She has visitors from all over the world. She says, "We speak French and English, and I'm studying Italian, which is very useful! Our guests keep us busy both summer and winter, so we always have lots to do."

f They don't have much free time. "But I like it that way," she says. "And I love meeting new guests." In the winter it's very cold, 14°F. Their guests go skiing or snowmobiling in Mont Sainte-Anne Park.

g It's the evening now, and she is having a computer lesson in a private school. "There are two skills that are essential these days," she says. "English and computers. One day I want to be my own boss."

h It's January now, and she is enjoying her favorite sport, dog-sledding. She has twelve dogs, and she's racing them across the snow. She says, "I'm working the dogs very hard right now. Next year I want to race in a dogsled competition. It's really exciting."



PRACTICE

Talking about you

1 Which of these statements are true for you? Correct the ones that are not true.

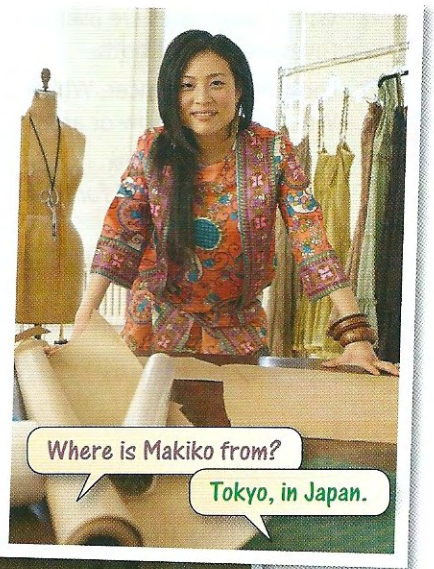
1. I come to school by bus.
   I don't come to school by bus. I always drive.
2. I'm wearing jeans today.
   _____
3. I always arrive at school on time.
   _____
4. I'm sitting at the back of the class.
   _____
5. The teacher is talking to me.
   _____

Read aloud what is true for you.

2 Use the verb in parentheses to make questions in the Present Simple or Continuous. Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

1. ___Do___ you ___like___ studying English? (like)
2. _____ you _____ any other foreign languages these days? (study)
3. _____ you always _____ in the same place in class? (sit)
4. What _____ the teacher _____ today? (wear)
5. _____ you _____ straight home after class today? (go)

CD1 17 Listen and compare answers.



Exchanging information

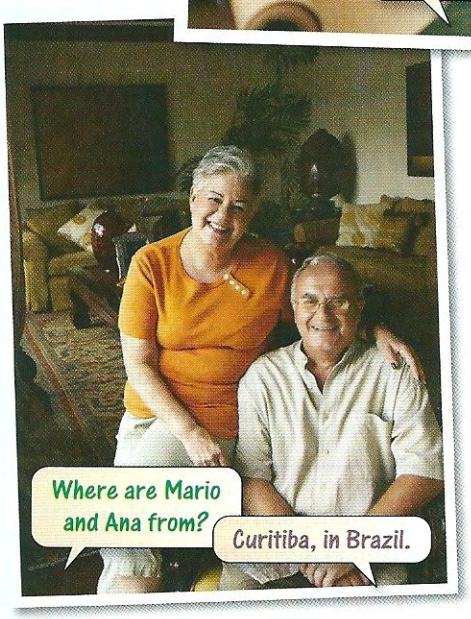
3 CD1 18 Listen to an interview with Miguel and answer the questions.

1. How old is Miguel?
2. Where is he from?
3. Who's in his family?
4. What does he do?
5. Where does he go on vacation?
6. What is he doing in Chicago?

4 Look at the photos of Makiko, and Mario and Ana. Work with a partner. Take turns asking and answering questions to complete your chart.

Student A Look at page 138.
Ask about Makiko.
Student B Look at page 142.
Ask about Mario and Ana.

CD1 19 Listen and compare.



Check it

5 Check (✓) the correct sentence.

1. ☐ Where you go on vacation?
   ☐ Where do you go on vacation?
2. I'm Joon.
   ☐ I'm coming from Korea.
   ☐ I come from Korea.
3. This is a great party!
   ☐ Everyone is dancing.
   ☐ Everyone dances.
4. ☐ I don't have a cell phone.
   ☐ I no have a cell phone.
5. "Where is Carlos?"
   ☐ "He's sitting by the window."
   ☐ "He sits by the window."
6. ☐ I'm liking black coffee.
   ☐ I like black coffee.

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

Daily life

1 Work with a partner. Match the verbs and nouns.

have	the news on TV
wash	my friends
watch	my hair
text	breakfast

take	an e-mail
clean up	the mess
do	a shower
send	the dishes

make	to music
relax	my homework
listen	some coffee
do	in front of the TV

cook	magazines
go	a meal
put on	makeup
read	to the bathroom

CD1 20 Listen, check, and repeat.

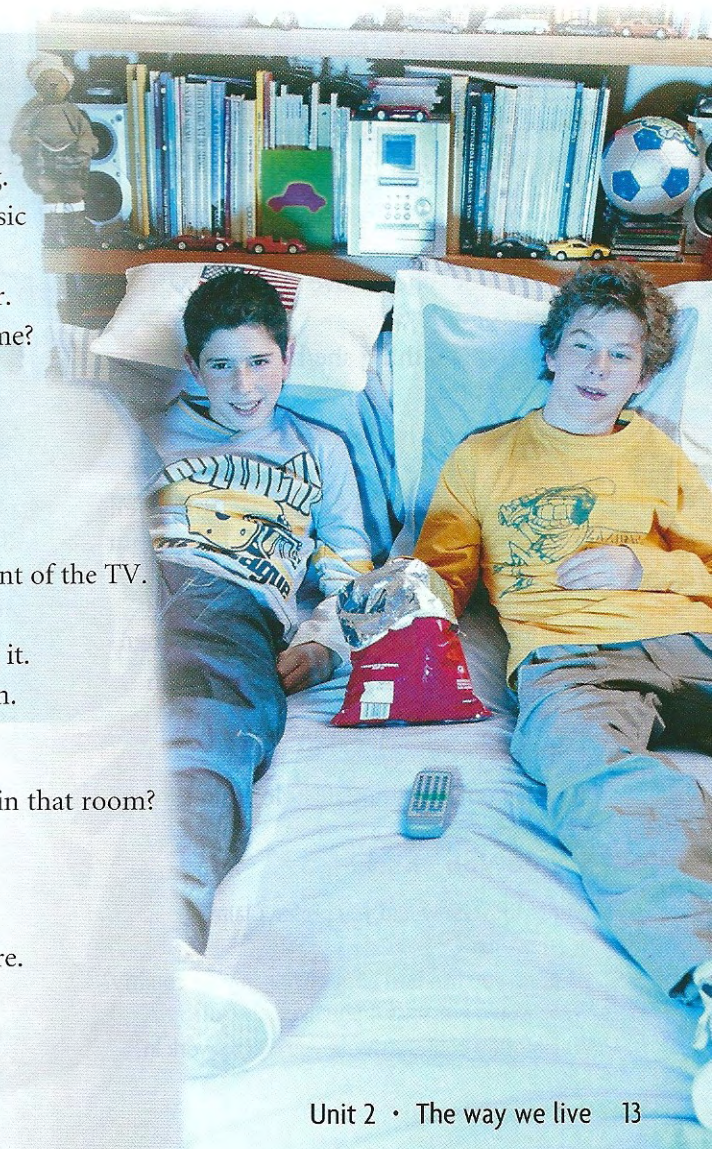
2 Where do *you* usually do the activities in Exercise 1? Write them in the chart.

Kitchen	Bathroom	Living room	Bedroom

Discuss with your partner. Then use some of the verbs and nouns in Exercise 1 to tell your partner about your daily life.

3 Complete these sentences with the correct words.

1. I never _____ breakfast on weekdays, only on weekends.
2. I take a hot _____ every morning and every evening.
3. My sister washes her _____ at least four times a week.
4. She didn't have time to _____ any makeup this morning.
5. My brother never reads books or newspapers. He only reads music _____ .
6. I don't often do the _____ because we have a dishwasher.
7. I'm going to _____ some coffee. Does anybody want some?
8. My dad always _____ the ten o'clock news on TV.
9. My mom says I text my _____ too much.
10. You made this mess, so you _____ it up!
11. Can I _____ an e-mail from your computer?
12. How can you listen to _____ while you're working?
13. I'm always so tired after work. I just want to _____ in front of the TV.
14. I cooked a _____ for ten people last night.
15. I didn't forget to _____ my homework. I forgot to bring it.
16. Can you wait a minute? I need to _____ to the bathroom.



CD1 21 Listen, check, and practice the sentences.

4 What is your favorite room? Why do you like it? What do you do in that room? Write some notes about it.

My bedroom — I have lots of posters on the walls. I listen to music and do my homework. I watch TV with my friends ...

5 Describe your favorite room to a partner and say what you do there. Don't say which room it is. Can your partner guess?

WRITING An e-mail *p. 99*

READING AND SPEAKING

Tales of Two Cities

1 Discuss the questions.

1. Do you know anyone who has lived or is living in another country? What did/do they think of it?
2. Do you know anyone who travels a lot? Is it for work? Where do they go? How long are they away?

2 Read the title and introduction to the magazine article. Why is it easier for people to have different lives these days?

3 Work in two groups.

Group A Read about Jae-won Park.
Group B Read about Claire Turner.

Answer the questions.

1. Which two countries does she/he live and work in?
2. What does she/he do?
3. How often does she/he travel? How does she/he travel?
4. What kind of house does she/he have in each country?
5. What kind of lifestyle does her/his spouse have?
6. How does she/he live differently in each country?
7. Is there anything she/he misses or doesn't like?
8. What does she/he say about language?

4 Find a partner from the other group. Tell each other about your person, using your answers to Exercise 3 to help you.

5 Answer the questions with your partner.

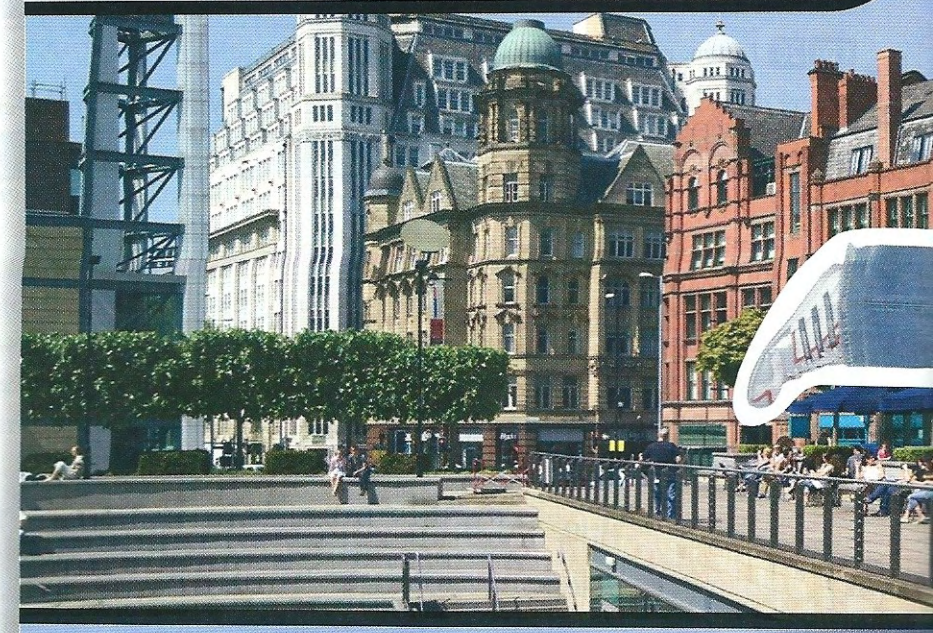
1. What things do Claire and Jae-won have in common?
2. Who travels more?
3. Who enjoys their lifestyle more? Why?

What do you think?

- Whose lifestyle would you prefer, Claire's or Jae-won's?
- What do you like best about living in your country? What would you miss if you lived abroad?
- Which other country would you like to work in?

Tales of Two Cities

Most of us have just one home, one job, one lifestyle. But in the 21st century, cheap travel and communication technology have made the world smaller and smaller, so that we can work and live almost anywhere. More and more people have two places they call "home." Claire Turner and Jae-won Park talk about their two different lives.



Korea – Chile

Jae-won Park, 36, snowboard designer

"In Chile, I miss Korea. But in Korea, I miss Chile," says Jae-won. Every June, Jae-won leaves his apartment near Seoul for a ski lodge in the Andes mountains. "June is winter in Chile, which means I can go snowboarding all year round."

It also means that Jae-won, a snowboard designer, can create new products all year long. "I design in Korea and build in China until June, then I fly to Chile to test the boards." Jae-won flew over the Pacific almost 20 times last year. He doesn't mind all the air travel, but there are disadvantages. "I always have a cold," he says. "And a 16-hour flight after two weeks of snowboarding is really hard on my knees."

He has a social life in each country. Although Jae-won speaks some Spanish, he mainly uses English in Chile. In Seoul, he lives with his wife, Mi-young. "I call her at midnight in Chile. That's around lunch time in Korea." She travels a lot in her job, too. "Sometimes I'm landing in Seoul while she's taking off."

In Chile, he rents a room in a colleague's house. "There's no Korean food at all, and I really miss that. But Chile has great seafood. I never watch TV at home, but I watch it a lot here to practice my Spanish. I love these drama programs called *telenovelas*! Even though I miss home sometimes, I'm never lonely. I have a real home here—and real friends."



the UK – the U.S.

Claire Turner, 28, gallery owner

Claire holds up her hands to show her nails. "Don't they look awful!" she cries. "I so miss New York manicures." That's not all Claire misses about her other life in the U.S. For two years she has divided her life between her home town, Manchester, in the north of England, and Brooklyn, New York. She has an art gallery—and a home—in both places. She flies once a month, and spends about a month at a time in each.

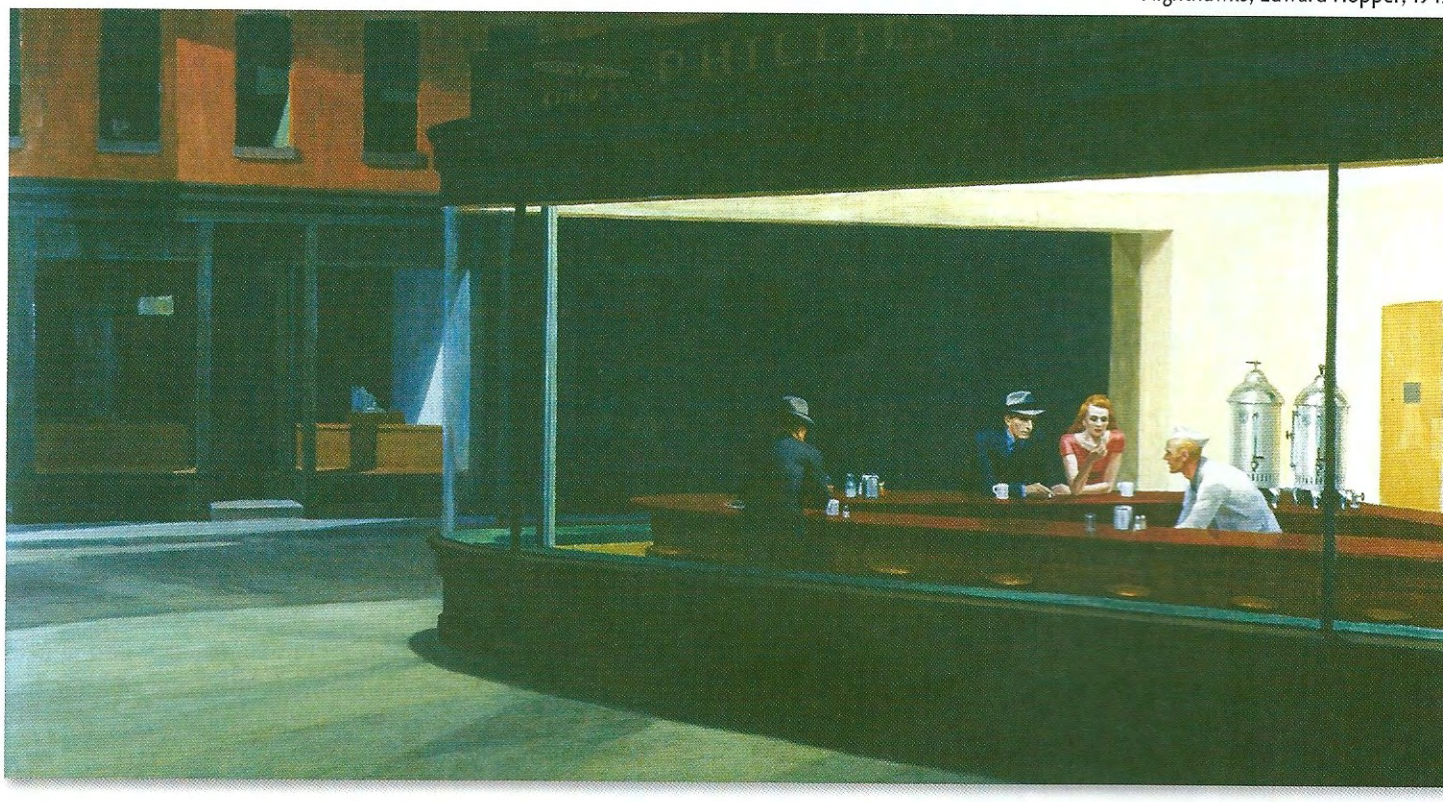
"I dress differently in New York: pearls, contact lenses, no jeans, and I wear my hair up. Americans love the English accent, so I feel I should act the part." After work in New York, she may eat sushi in a trendy restaurant, but after work in Manchester she goes to a local restaurant for fish and chips. Her two homes are similar, though. "In Brooklyn, I share a rooftop flat with an artist. I can actually see the sky!" She can see the same stars from her city-center loft in Manchester.

Claire loves her transatlantic lifestyle. Her husband travels a lot in his job, too. They met in Manchester and married in New York. "We're not always in the same country, but our lives are going in the same direction!"

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

A 24/7 society

Nighthawks, Edward Hopper, 194

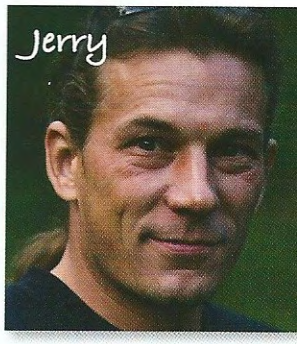


1 Look at the famous painting. Discuss the questions in groups.

1. Who painted it? What is it called?
2. What time of day is it?
3. Where are the people? Who are they?

2 Work with a partner. What is a 24/7 society? Which jobs need people to work at night? Make a list.

3 CD1 22 Listen to a radio program about four night workers: Jerry, Jackie, Doreen, and Dan. Complete the chart. Listen again and check your answers.





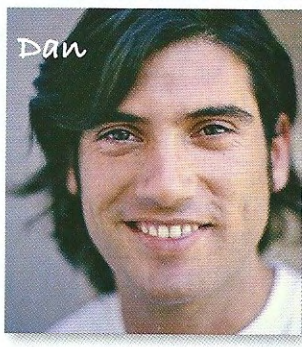
	Place of work	Hours	Why working nights?	Problems
Jerry				
Jackie				
Doreen				
Dan				

What do you think?

Discuss these questions.

- Who has the best job? Who has the worst job?
- Do you know anybody that works at night? What do they do? What do they think about it?
- Could you work at night? Why?/Why not?

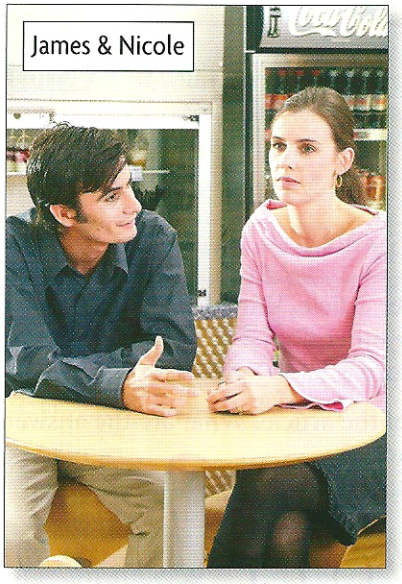


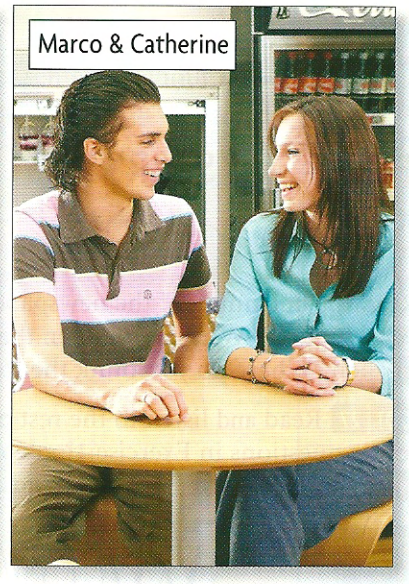


EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Making conversation 1

1 CD1 23 Listen to two conversations. Nicole and Marco are foreign students in the U.S. Their teachers, James and Catherine, are trying to be friendly. Which conversation is more successful? Why?





Music *of* English – highs and lows

Highs and lows

A flat intonation makes you sound bored. To show you're interested, your voice needs highs and lows.

1 CD1 24 Listen and compare Nicole's and Marco's answers.

N *Paris. I come from Paris.*

M *I come from Rio, the home of Carnival!*

2 CD1 25 Listen and repeat.

M *And you, Catherine, where do you come from?*

C *I'm from Vancouver, in Canada.*

M *Oh, I'd love to visit Canada one day.*

C *You should. It's really beautiful.*

2 Obviously, it is impossible to tell someone how to have a conversation, but here are some things that help.

- Ask questions.
- Don't just answer *yes* or *no*.
- Try to add a comment of your own.
- Don't let the conversation stop.
- Show that you're interested, both with words and voice.

Find examples of these in Catherine and Marco's conversation on page 112.

3 Work with a partner. Practice Catherine and Marco's conversation on page 112.

4 Match a line in **A** with a reply in **B** and a further comment in **C**.

A	B	C
1. What nice weather we're having!	I'm enjoying it a lot.	Was it a good game?
2. What terrible weather!	Yes, no problems.	That's really nice of you to offer.
3. How are you today?	Fine, thanks.	We all went to that new nightclub on Elm Street.
4. Did you have a nice night?	No, I missed it.	The plane was a little late, but it didn't matter.
5. How do you find living in Texas?	Thank you. I'm glad you like it.	I just hope this rain stops soon.
6. Did you have a good flight?	Thanks so much.	I got it on sale.
7. Did you watch the soccer game yesterday?	Yes. We had a great time.	How about you?
8. What a beautiful jacket you're wearing!	Yes, wonderful, isn't it?	It was kind of strange at first, but I love it now.
9. If you need anything, just ask me.	I know. Really awful, isn't it?	Just like summer!

CD1 26 Listen and check. Practice the conversations with a partner.

5 Think of three questions to ask your partner about each of these subjects.

- before class today
- something he/she is wearing
- studying English

Have conversations. Try to sound interested and keep the conversation going.

3 What happened next?

- **Grammar:** Past tenses
- **Vocabulary:** Adverbs
  Everyday English: Time expressions

STARTER

Here are the past tense forms of some irregular verbs. Write the infinitives.

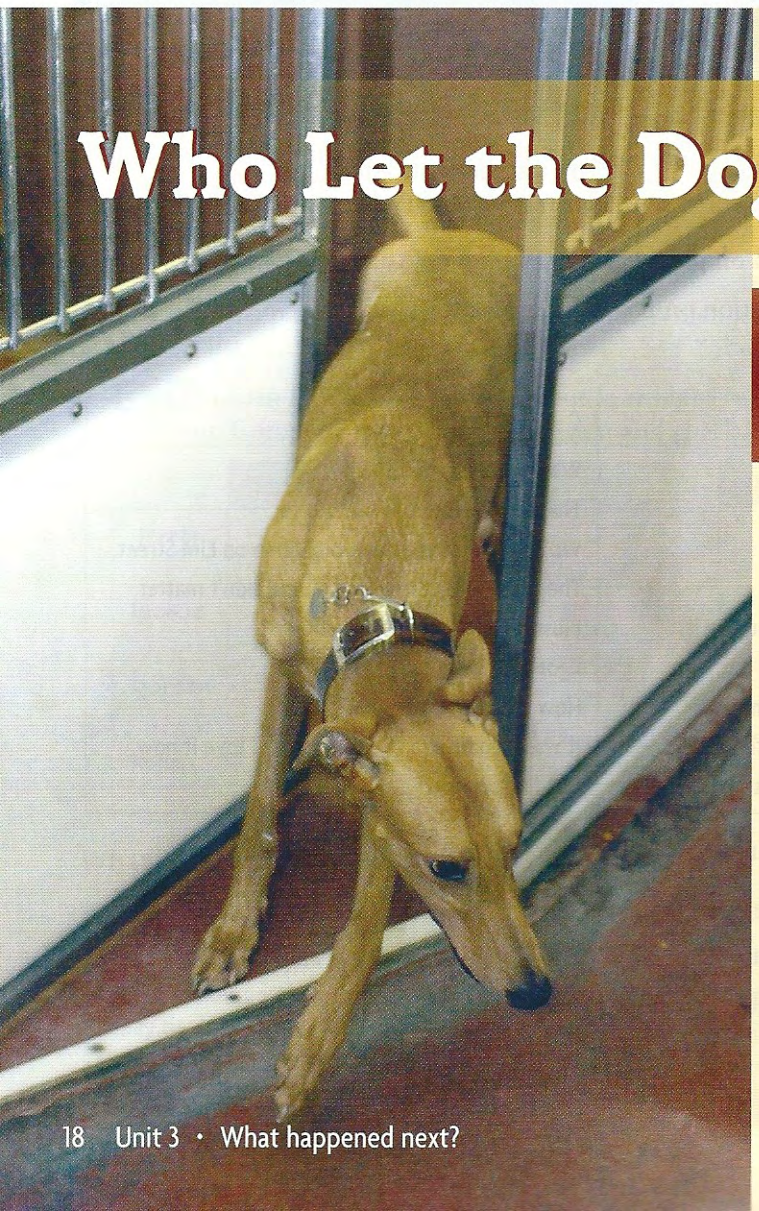
1. *be*	was	7. _____	did
2. _____	were	8. _____	got
3. _____	went	9. _____	had
4. _____	saw	10. _____	made
5. _____	thought	11. _____	came
6. _____	put	12. _____	said

WHAT A MYSTERY!

Past Simple

1 Read the beginning of the newspaper article. Who do you think is the "dark figure"? Why did he open the other doors? Why did he go to the kitchen? Where do you think the story is taking place?

2 CD1 27 Read and listen to the rest of the article. What are the answers to the questions in Exercise 1?



Who Let the Dogs Out? Woof! Woof!

It was night. A dark figure carefully unlocked the door and went out. He looked around. Was there anybody there? No, all was quiet. He ran quickly to some other doors and opened them. Then he went straight to the kitchen ...

Last month, strange things began to happen at London's Battersea Dogs' Home. Every morning when the staff arrived, they saw that a lot of the dogs were out of their cages. It was a mystery. "It happened so many times," said Amy Watson, one of the staff. "We even thought that perhaps it was the ghost of Mary Tealby." They say that Mary Tealby, who started the Home in 1860, comes back at night to haunt it. So they put cameras in all the cages and filmed what happened.

The next day the staff watched the film. They were amazed at what they saw. Red, a four-year-old lurcher*, used his teeth to open the door of his cage. Then he did the same for his friends in the next cages. All the dogs got out and had a great time. Amy told us, "They ate lots of food, had lots of fun and games, and made a big mess!"

Reporters from Japan, Germany, and the U.S. came to film Red, and 400 people called because they wanted to give him a home. Red's famous now. "He's a real celebrity!" said Amy.

*A type of dog

3 What are the past forms of the verbs from the article? Which are regular? Which are irregular?

look	_____	start	_____
run	_____	watch	_____
open	_____	use	_____
begin	_____	tell	_____
arrive	_____	eat	_____

4 CD1 28 You will hear six incorrect sentences about the story. Correct them using negative sentences. Then listen and repeat.

It happened every morning.

It didn't happen every morning. It happened every night!

5 Complete the questions.

1. What ***did Red do*** ?
   He opened all the cage doors.
2. Why _____ the doors?
   Because he wanted to go to the kitchen.
3. How often _____ ?
   Many times.
4. Who _____ Amy _____ it was?
   The ghost of Mary Tealby.
5. What _____ they _____ in the cages?
   Cameras.
6. How _____ the doors?
   With his teeth.
7. _____ a good time?
   Yes, they did. They had a great time.
8. Why _____ call the dogs' home?
   Because they wanted to give Red a home.

CD1 29 Listen and check. Ask and answer the questions with a partner.



GRAMMAR SPOT

1 What tense are nearly all the verbs in the article? How do we form the question and negative?

Spelling

2 Write the Past Simple of the regular verbs.

a. *look*	_____	c. *arrive*	_____
play	_____	*use*	_____
want	_____	*decide*	_____
b. *try*	_____	d. *stop*	_____
study	_____	*plan*	_____

- How is the regular past tense formed?
- How is the past tense formed when the verb ends in a consonant + *y* ?
- When do we double the final consonant?

Pronunciation

3 CD1 30 Listen to the verbs in Exercise 2. What is the pronunciation of *-ed* ? Is it /t/, /d/, or /ɪd/? Make three lists.

looked /t/ ***played*** /d/ ***wanted*** /ɪd/

CD1 31 Listen, check, and repeat.

Grammar Reference 3.1 p. 124
Irregular Verbs on p. 153

PRACTICE

Making connections

1 Match the verb phrases. Make sentences using both verbs in the past. Join the sentences with *so*, *because*, *and*, or *but*.

The phone rang, so I answered it.

1. ~~phone ring~~	fix it
2. feel sick	pass it
3. make a sandwich	wash my hair
4. take a shower	nobody laugh
5. lose my passport	be hungry
6. call the police	go to bed
7. printer break	say "sorry"
8. forget her birthday	find it later
9. take my driver's test	~~answer it~~
10. tell a joke	hear a strange noise

CD1 32 Listen and compare your answers.

Talking about you

2 Ask and answer these questions with a partner.

What did you do . . . ?

- last night
- last weekend
- on your last birthday
- last New Year's Eve
- on your last vacation

Ask for more information, using the Past Simple.

Who ... ? Why ... ? Where ... ? How ... ? How many ... ?

PARTNERS IN CRIME

Past Simple and Continuous

1 Check the meaning of these verbs. What are the past forms? Which two are regular?

fill	steal	hide	throw	spend
destroy	take	cut	think	

2 Look at the photos and read the newspaper story. Complete 1–9 in the story with the past forms of the verbs in Exercise 1.

3 Answer the questions.

- What did Stephane Breitweiser steal?
- Was his mother also a thief?
- Why did she go to prison?

4 Put these lines into the story (…).

a. where he **was living** with his mother
b. while he **was working** as a truck driver
c. just as they **were closing**
d. while they **were having** dinner
e. because he **was wearing** a security guard's uniform

CD1 33 Listen and check.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 What tense are the verb forms in Exercise 4?

2 How do you form the question and negative of this sentence?

He was working.

3 Look at these sentences. What are the differences?

When they arrived, she made coffee.
When they arrived, she was making coffee.

Pronunciation

CD1 34 Listen and repeat.

He was /wəz/ working.
Where was /wəz/ he living?
They were /wər/ having supper.
What were /wər/ they doing?

►► **Grammar Reference 3.2 and 3.3 p. 124**

5 Take turns reading aloud parts of the story of Stephane and his mother.

The Thief, His Mother, and $2 billion



Breitweiser leaving court

STEPHANE BREITWEISER, 33, from Alsace, in France, is the greatest art thief in Europe. For over six years, (…), he (1)_____ 239 paintings from museums in France, Austria, and Denmark. He went into the museums (…) and (2)_____ the paintings under his coat. Nobody looked at him (…).

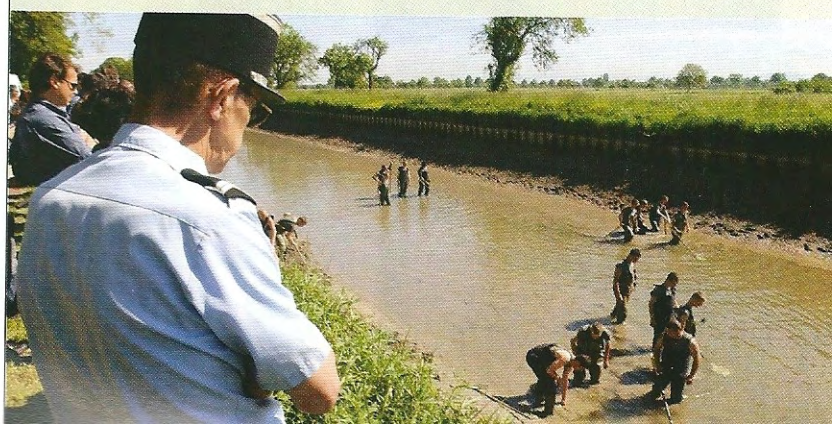
Back in his apartment, (…), he (3)_____ his bedroom with priceless works of art. His mother, Mireille, 53, (4)_____ all the paintings were copies. One day (…), the police arrived, and they (5)_____ Stephane to the police station. Mireille was so angry with her son that she went to his room, took some paintings from the walls, and (6)_____ them into small pieces. Others she took and (7) _____ into the canal. Altogether, she (8) _____ art worth two billion dollars! Both mother and son (9)_____ many years in prison.



Madeleine d'Ecosse
by Corneille de Lyon



Berger endormi (The Sleeping Shepherd)
by François Boucher



PRACTICE

Discussing grammar

1 Choose the correct verb form.

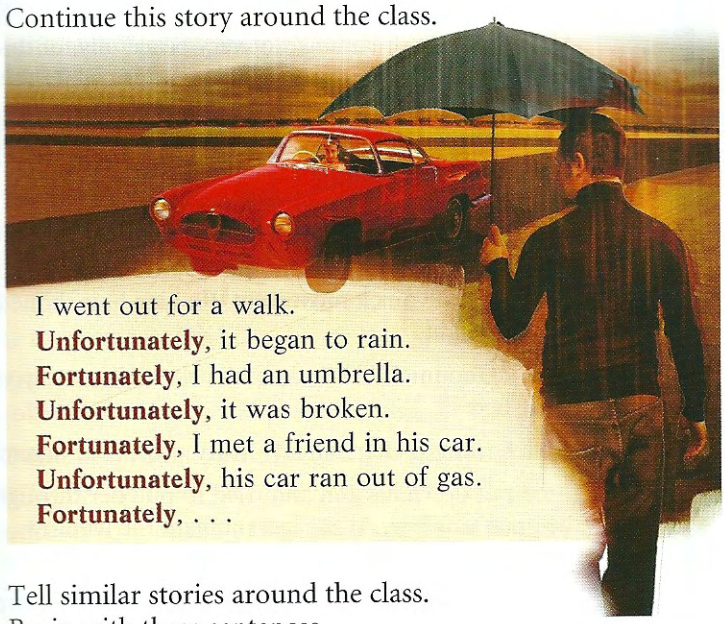
1. I *saw / was seeing* a good program on TV last night.
2. While I *shopped / was shopping* this morning, I *lost / was losing* my wallet. I don't know how.
3. Last week the police *stopped / were stopping* Alan because he *drove / was driving* at over 80 miles an hour.
4. "How *did you break / were you breaking* your leg?" "I *skied / was skiing* and I *hit / was hitting* a tree."
5. When I *arrived / was arriving* at the party, everyone *had / was having* a good time.
6. *Did you have / Were you having* a good time last night?

2 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the Past Simple or Past Continuous.

1. While I _____ (go) to work this morning, I _____ (meet) an old friend.
2. I _____ (not want) to get up this morning. It _____ (rain) and it was cold, and my bed was so warm.
3. The phone _____ (ring) just as I _____ (leave) the office.
4. When I _____ (pick) up the phone, there was no one there.
5. I _____ (say) hello to the children, but they didn't say anything because they _____ (watch) television.

fortunately/unfortunately

3 Continue this story around the class.



I went out for a walk.
Unfortunately, it began to rain.
Fortunately, I had an umbrella.
Unfortunately, it was broken.
Fortunately, I met a friend in his car.
Unfortunately, his car ran out of gas.
Fortunately, . . .

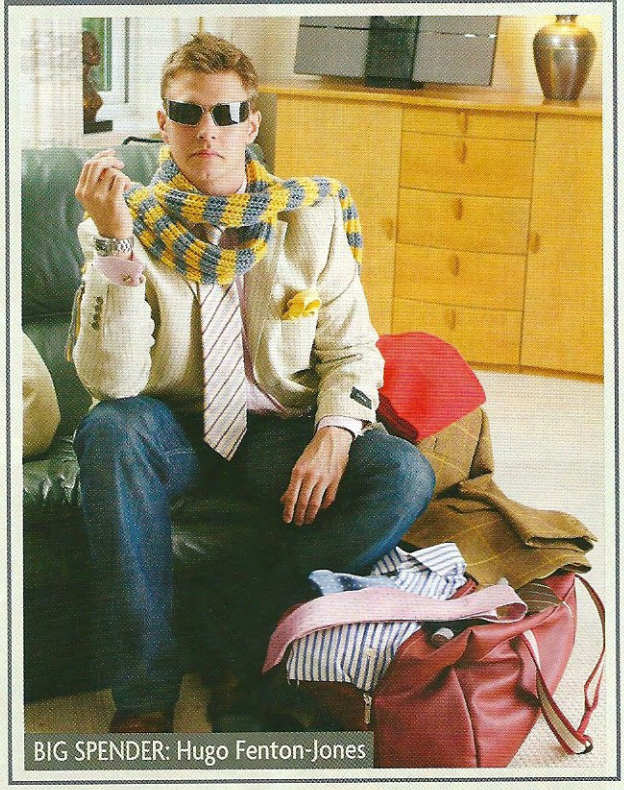
4 Tell similar stories around the class. Begin with these sentences.

- I went for a walk in the park on Sunday.
- It was my birthday last week.
- We went out for a meal last Saturday.
- There was a really good movie on TV last night.

Exchanging information

5 Read the headline and look at the photo. What did Hugo buy? What is a *spending spree*?

Teenager goes on spending spree with father's credit card



BIG SPENDER: Hugo Fenton-Jones

6 Work with a partner. You have different information. Take turns asking and answering questions. Don't look at your partner's story.

Student A

Look at the newspaper story on page 137.

Toronto teen Hugo Fenton-Jones stole . . . (*What?*) while his father was working in the yard.

Student B

Look at the newspaper story on page 141.

Toronto teen Hugo Fenton-Jones stole his father's credit card while his father was working . . . (*Where?*).

What did Hugo steal?

He stole his father's credit card.

Where was his father working?

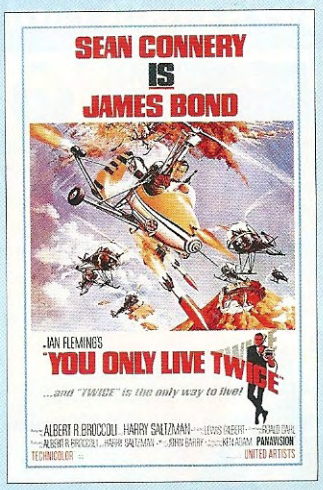
He was working in the yard.

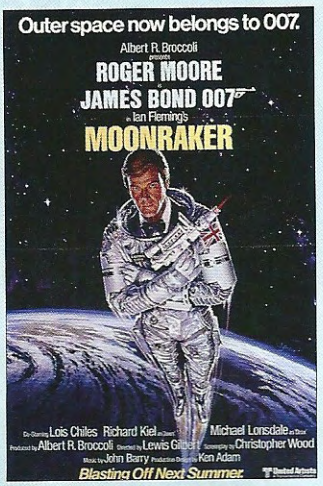
LISTENING AND READING

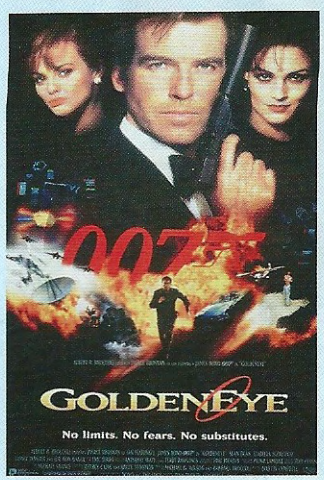
The name's Bond, James Bond

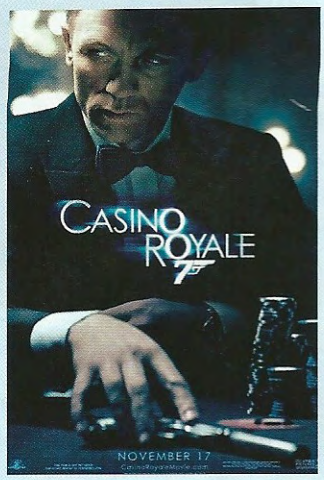
1 Who is James Bond? Write down three things you know about him and share your ideas with the class.

2 Look at the posters from some of the James Bond movies. Have you seen any of them? Do you know any more James Bond movies?







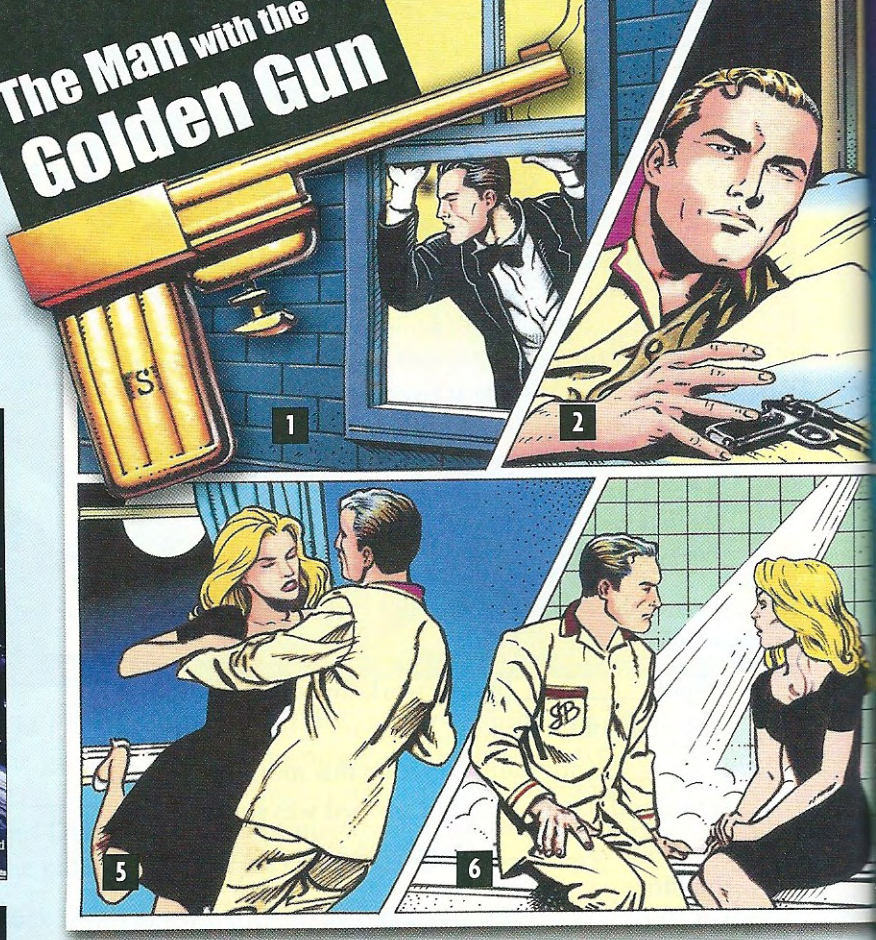


3 You are going to listen to an extract from *The Man with the Golden Gun*. Cover the story and look at pictures 1–8. What do you think is happening?

4 CD1 35 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Name the people in the pictures. Where are they?
2. How did Mary Goodnight get into the room?
3. Why did she come to find James Bond?
4. Where did they go to talk?
5. What did Scaramanga say? What did he do?

5 Read the story. Find the lines in the text that go with each picture.



JAMES BOND got back to his hotel room at midnight. The windows were closed and the air-conditioning was on. Bond switched it off and opened the windows. His heart was still thumping in his chest. He breathed in the air with relief, then he took a shower and went to bed.

At 3:30 he was dreaming, not very peacefully, of three black-coated men with red eyes and angry white teeth. Suddenly, he woke up. He listened. There was a noise. It was coming from the window. Someone was moving behind the curtain. James Bond took his gun from under his pillow, got quietly out of bed, and crept slowly along the wall toward the window. Someone was breathing heavily behind the curtain. Bond pulled it back with one quick movement. Golden hair shone in the moonlight.

"Mary Goodnight!" Bond exclaimed. "What are *you* doing here?"

"Quick, James! Help me in!" Mary whispered urgently.

Bond put down his gun and tried to pull her through the open window. At the last moment the window banged shut with a noise like a gunshot.

"I'm really sorry, James!" Mary Goodnight whispered.

"Shh! Shh!" said Bond. He quickly led her across the room to the bathroom. First he turned on the light, then the shower. They sat down together on the side of the bathtub.



"Mary," Bond asked again. "What on earth are you doing here? What's the matter?"

"James, I was so worried. An urgent message came from HQ this evening. A top KGB man, using the name Hendriks, is staying in this hotel. He knows you're here. He's looking for you!"

"I know," said Bond. "Hendriks is here all right. So is a gunman named Scaramanga. Mary, did HQ say if they have a description of me?"

"No, they don't. They just have your name, Secret Agent James Bond."

"Thanks, Mary. Now, I must get you out of here. Don't worry about me, just tell HQ that you gave me the message, OK?"

"OK, James." Mary Goodnight stood up and looked into his eyes. "Please be careful, James."

"Sure, sure." Bond turned off the shower and opened the bathroom door. "Now, come on!"

Suddenly a voice came from the darkness of the bedroom. "This is not your lucky day, Mr Bond. Come here, both of you, and put your hands up!"

Scaramanga walked to the door and turned on the lights. His golden gun was pointing straight at James Bond.

6 Are these sentences true (✓) or false (✗)? Correct the false sentences.

1. James Bond felt happy to be back in his hotel room.
2. Bond was dreaming about Mary Goodnight.
3. A man with a gun woke Bond at 3:30 A.M.
4. James was very pleased to see Mary Goodnight.
5. Bond fired his gun while he was pulling Mary through the window.
6. They talked while the shower was on.
7. Bond knew that Hendriks was looking for him.
8. James helped Mary get out of the hotel.

What do you think?

7 Work in groups. Discuss these questions and try to work out the rest of the story.

1. Who is Scaramanga? Is he …
   … an assassin hired to kill James Bond?
   … the leader of a terrorist group?
   … a poker player who lost his money to James Bond?

2. Who is Mary Goodnight? Is she …
   … James Bond's girlfriend?
   … in fact working for Scaramanga?
   … a secret agent like James Bond?

3. What happens next in the story? Does Scaramanga …
   … kill Mary and James Bond?
   … capture Mary and James Bond?
   … capture Mary and take her to a secret island?

4. What happens in the end?
   James Bond escapes but Mary is killed.
   Scaramanga is hurt but escapes with Mary.
   James Bond saves the world and marries the girl.

Read the story summary on page 145. Were your ideas right?

Language work

8 Write the past form of these verbs from the story. Which are irregular?

get	*got*	whisper	_____	breathe	_____
put	_____	wake up	_____	try	_____
take	_____	lead	_____	creep	_____
give	_____	shine	_____	stand up	_____

Telling the story

9 Tell the story to a partner in your own words. Use the pictures to help. Start:

James Bond got back to his hotel room at midnight. He was relieved to be back. He …

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

Adverbs

1 Many adverbs end in *-ly*. Match a verb in **A** with an adverb in **B**. They all come from the text about James Bond. Some have more than one possibility.

A		B	
dream	creep	quietly	heavily
wake up	get out of bed	peacefully	urgently
whisper	breathe	suddenly	slowly

2 There are also many adverbs that do not end in *-ly*. Find these examples in the text on pages 22–23.

back	still	here	again	first	together	just	straight

VOCABULARY SPOT

Position of adverbs

1 Adverbs do not usually go between a verb and its object.
You speak English ***well****.* (NOT ~~*You speak well English.*~~)
I did my homework ***quickly****.* (NOT ~~*I did quickly my homework.*~~)

2 Some adverbs can change position.
It rained all day ***yesterday****. /* ***Yesterday*** *it rained all day.*
I woke up ***suddenly****. /* ***Suddenly*** *I woke up.*

3 In which of these sentences can the adverb change position? Rewrite them.

1. *Clean up your room* ***first****. Then you can go out.*
2. *Can you* ***possibly*** *tell me the time?*
3. *We went for a walk. It started to rain* ***unfortunately****.*

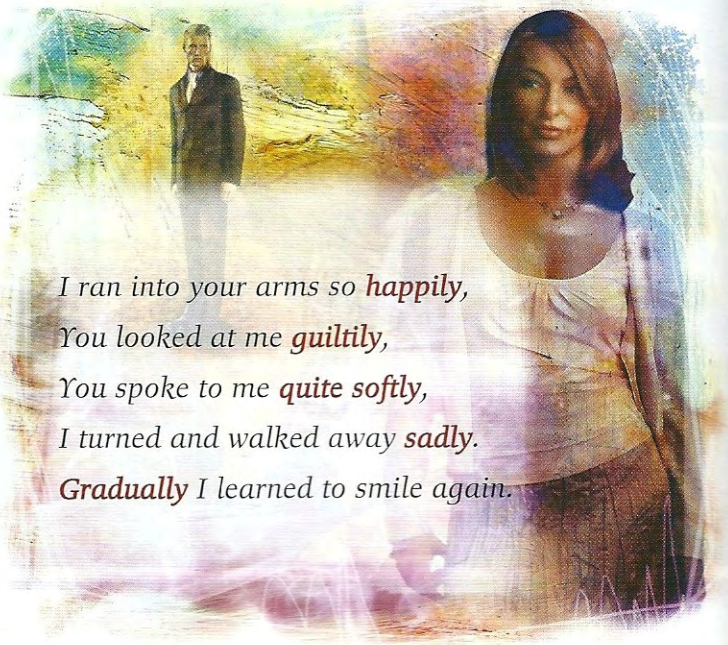
3 Rewrite the sentences with the adverbs in parentheses.

1. I was dreaming when a loud noise woke me up. (peacefully, suddenly)
2. My grandma is 75 and she goes swimming. (almost, still, regularly)
3. I unlocked the door and went into the night. (quietly, outside)
4. She whispered in his ear, "Do you love me?" "I do," he replied. (softly, really, of course)
5. I was relaxing with a good book when someone knocked on the door. (just, really, loudly)
6. Break the eggs into a bowl and mix them with the flour. (first, then, together)
7. I got up and crept to the front door. (quickly, downstairs)
8. I work and I do my homework, but I don't get good grades. (hard, carefully, still)

CD1 36 Listen and check. Practice saying the sentences.

An adverb poem

4 CD1 37 Work with a partner. Listen and then read the poem aloud, with feeling. Can you think of a title?



5 Write a similar poem with your partner. You can choose the adverbs, or use these.

slowly	quietly	tragically	angrily	carefully
nervously	urgently	lovingly	suddenly	lazily

Read your poem to the class. Whose do you think is the best?



"Once upon a time, they lived happily ever after."

WRITING Telling a story *p. 100*

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Time expressions

1 Can you say these dates?

1/8/98 7/16/85 11/25/02

CD1 38 Listen and check.

Look at the same dates written in British English. What's the difference?

8/1/98 16/7/85 25/11/02

CD1 39 Listen and check.

2 Practice these dates. They are in American English.

June 2 August 31 July 4 May 1 September 17

1/7/1868 12/28/1901 2/14/1980 11/5/2002 4/5/2010

CD1 40 Listen and check.

3 Complete the time expressions with *at, on, in,* or no preposition.

____ six o'clock	____ Saturday	____ 1989	____ Monday morning
____ last night	____ April	____ the weekend	____ yesterday evening
____ the evening	____ summer	____ January 18	____ two weeks ago

4 Do you know *exactly* when you were born? Tell the class.

> I was born on Wednesday, January eighteenth, 1995, at four o'clock in the morning.

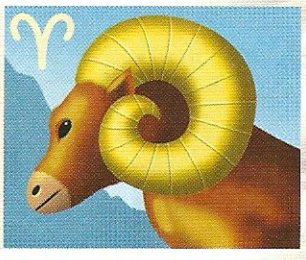
Music *of* English – word linking

CD1 41 Words often link together when we speak. This happens when one word ends with a consonant and the next begins with a vowel. Listen and repeat.

this_evening	*at_eleven_o'clock*	*last_autumn*	*four_hours_ago*
this_afternoon	*in_August*	*twenty-eight years_old*	*first_of_all*

5 CD1 42 Listen. Complete the conversation. Which words are linked?

A What star sign are you?
B I'm an Aries.
A Hey, so am I! When's your birthday?
B _____.
A I don't believe it! Same as me. What year?
B _____.
A That's amazing! We're like twins!



Listen again. Practice with your partner. Ask and answer about your birth signs and birthdays.

6 CD1 43 Listen to three more conversations. What are they about? Write the time expressions you hear.

Grammar Reference 3.4 *p. 124*

4 The marketplace

- **Grammar:** *much/many* • *some/any* • *a few, a little, a lot of* • articles
- **Vocabulary:** Shopping
  Everyday English: Prices

STARTER Play the alphabet shopping game around the class.

A Yesterday I went shopping and I bought an **a**pple.
B Yesterday I went shopping and I bought an **a**pple and some **b**read.
C Yesterday I went shopping and I bought an **a**pple, some **b**read, and a **c**ar.

AT THE SUPERMARKET

How much/How many?

1 Nick is at the supermarket. He is speaking to his wife, Sarah, on his cell phone.

CD1 44 Read and listen to their conversation.

N It just says "milk" here. How **much** milk do we need?
S A half-liter.
N And eggs? How **many** eggs?
S A dozen.
N And what about potatoes? How **many** potatoes?
S A kilo's enough.

GRAMMAR SPOT

Can we count milk (*one milk, two milks*)?
Can we count eggs (*one egg, two eggs*)?
When do we say *How much . . . ?*
When do we say *How many . . . ?*

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 4.1 p. 125**

2 Match the quantities with the other items on Nick's shopping list.

a large tube	just one loaf	three bottles
six rolls	four or five big ones	200g of cheddar

3 Continue the conversation with a partner. Use the quantities with the other items on the list.

The list says "bread." How much bread?
Just one ...



4 CD1 45 Listen and complete the rest of the conversation.

N Is that everything?
S Let's have a look. We have **some** _____ , but there aren't **any** bananas. And we have **some** _____ , but there isn't **any** coffee.
N OK, bananas and coffee. What about orange juice? Is there **any** orange juice left?
S Let's see. There's **a little**, but not **much**.
N Orange juice, then. And vegetables? Do we have **any** vegetables?
S Well, we have **some** broccoli and **a few** _____ , but there aren't **many** onions.
N Right, onions …
S Oh, and don't forget – your nephews are coming tomorrow! We need something for them.
N OK, **lots of** potato chips and _____ . Anything else?
S I don't think so. But for goodness sake, *don't* forget the diapers. Oh, and a big bunch of _____ for me!



GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Find eight count nouns (CNs) and five noncount nouns (NCs) in Exercise 4.

2 Put a check (✓) or a cross (✗) in the columns.

We use . . .	• with CNs	• with NCs	• in affirmative sentences	• in questions	• in negative sentences
some	✓	✓	✓	✓ (sometimes)	✗
any					
much					
many					
a lot/lots of	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
a few					
a little					

3 Look at the forms of *something/someone*, etc. Find three examples in the conversation in Exercise 4.

some any every	+	thing one/body where

Grammar Reference 4.1 p. 125

PRACTICE

Discussing grammar

1 Complete the sentences with *some* or *any*.

1. Do you have _____ brothers or sisters?
2. We don't need _____ olive oil.
3. Here are _____ letters for you.
4. I need _____ money.
5. Is there _____ gas in the car?

2 Complete the sentences with *much* or *many*.

1. Do you have _____ homework?
2. We don't need _____ eggs. Just half a dozen.
3. Is there _____ traffic in your town?
4. There aren't _____ students in my class.
5. How _____ people live in your house?

3 Complete the sentences with *a little*, *a few*, or *a lot of*.

1. I have _____ close friends. Two or three.
2. He has _____ money. He's a millionaire.
3. "Do you take sugar in coffee?" "Just _____ . Half a spoonful."
4. "Do you have _____ CDs?" "Hundreds."
5. I'll be ready in _____ minutes.
6. I've studied a lot of Spanish, but only _____ Chinese.

Find the differences

4 Look at the picture. What things can you see?



5 Work with a partner. You have different pictures. Take turns asking and answering questions to find the differences.

Student A	**Student B**
Look at the picture on p. 138.	Look at the picture on p. 142.

something/someone/somewhere

6 Complete the sentences with the correct word.

some any every no	+	thing one/body where

1. **A** Did you meet _____ nice at the party?
   B Yes. I met _____ who knows you!
2. **A** Ouch! There's _____ in my eye!
   B Let me look. No, I can't see _____ .
3. **A** Let's go _____ hot for vacation.
   B Yes, but we can't go _____ that's too expensive.
4. **A** I'm so unhappy. _____ loves me.
   B I know _____ who loves you. Me.
5. I've lost my glasses. I've looked _____ , but I can't find them.
6. **A** Did you buy _____ at the mall?
   B No, _____ . I didn't have any money.
7. I'm bored. I want _____ interesting to read, or _____ interesting to talk to, or _____ interesting to go.
8. It was a great party. _____ loved it.

CD1 46 Listen and check.

THE AMAZING WORLD OF eBay

Articles

1 Is eBay popular in your country? What is eBay? What do people buy and sell on it? Do you or anyone you know use it? Tell the class.

2 Read about eBay. Answer the questions.

1. How much did the jet and the football cost?
2. How many people use eBay every day?
3. Who invented eBay?
4. When and why did he invent it?

The Amazing World of ...



Where can you buy a soccer ball kicked by David Beckham, or an old Learjet? On eBay, of course—the world's first global online marketplace. The soccer ball sold for $37,000, and someone paid $4.9 million for the jet! Every day on eBay, there are 34 million things for sale, and 125 million buyers and sellers. You can buy everything—stamps, jewelry, art, clothing, old cars, and anything strange and interesting. All you need is a computer and a little time.

Pierre Omidyar, a French-Iranian computer scientist, invented eBay in California in 1995. He wanted to create a website for everybody to buy and sell things, not just big businesses. He started the website as a hobby, but now it is the biggest business in the world!



GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Find examples of the definite article (*the*) and the indefinite article (*a/an*) in the text.

2 Find examples of when there is no article.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 4.2 p. 126



PRACTICE

1 Complete the sentences with *a/an*, *the*, or nothing(-).

1. I bought _____ unusual soccer ball on _____ eBay. David Beckham kicked it in _____ 2004 European Cup!
2. There was _____ old Learjet for sale! _____ famous movie star paid _____ lot of money for it.
3. _____ movie star who bought _____ Learjet collects _____ airplanes.
4. eBay is _____ great idea. It's _____ biggest market in _____ world.
5. I don't go out to _____ work. I work at _____ home on my computer.
6. I do all my shopping on _____ Internet. What _____ great way to shop!

I bought it on eBay!

2 CD1 47 Listen to three people talking about what they bought on eBay. Complete the chart.

	Linda	Megan	Charlie
What did he/she buy?			
How much did it cost?			
Does he/she like using eBay?			
Does he/she use eBay often?			

Compare answers with a partner. Listen again and check.

Discussing grammar

3 Work with a partner. Find *one* mistake in each sentence.

1. He's mailman, so he has breakfast at 4 A.M.
2. The love is more important than money.
3. I come to school by the bus.
4. I'm reading one good book right now.
5. "Where's Jack?" "In a kitchen."
6. I live in center of town, near the hospital.
7. My parents bought the house in the country.
8. I don't eat the bread because I don't like it.

4 Make two sentences, one with the definite article *the*, and one without, using the words in the box.

ice cream	money	chocolate	cats

I think ice cream is delicious!

The ice cream in this cafe is delicious.

READING AND SPEAKING

Markets around the world

1 Look at the pictures and discuss the questions.

1. What is the difference between a shopping mall and a market?
2. Do you ever go shopping in markets? Where?
3. Is there a market where you live? What can you buy there? Can you bargain for things?

2 Read the introduction to an article about three markets in very different parts of the world. Why are markets more interesting than shopping malls?

Markets around the world

Modern shopping malls, with their global brands and international designer names, look the same all over the world. So if you want to buy goods that are different, visit a market. There you can buy fine products made and grown locally.

3 Work in three groups.

Group A Read about Bangkok.
Group B Read about Provence.
Group C Read about Marrakech.

4 Answer the questions about your market.

1. Where exactly is the market?
2. What days and times is it open?
3. What food does it sell? Give some examples.
4. What other things does it sell?
5. What do you learn about the people who work there?
6. Describe the market. Find some adjectives.
7. What can you do after the market?
8. What do you learn about the town?

5 Find a partner from each of the other two groups. Use the photos to introduce your market. Then compare the three markets, using your answers in Exercise 4.

What do you think?

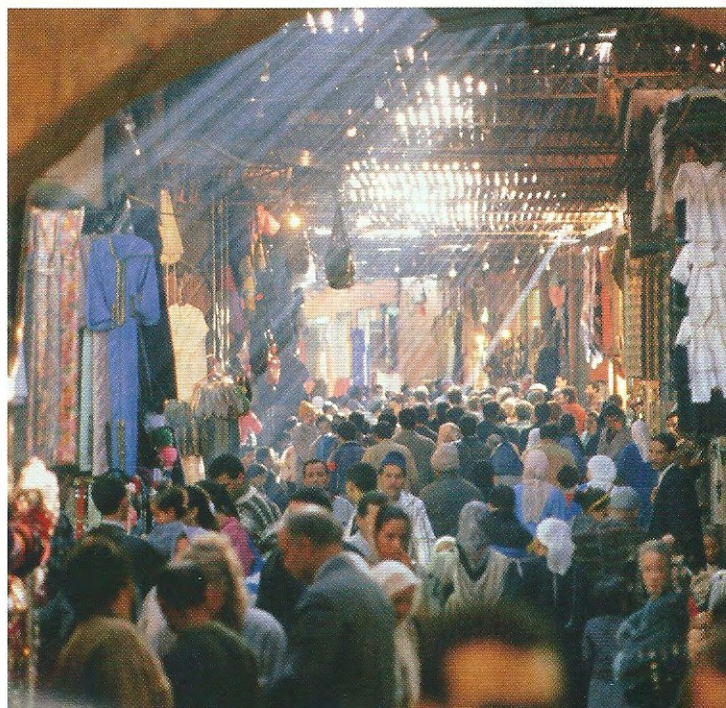
Answer the questions with your group.

- Which of the markets would you like to visit most? Why?
- Have you visited a market in another country? If yes, describe it.
- Close your books and close your eyes. Imagine you are at the market you read about. Tell your partners what you can see.

▶▶ **WRITING** A postcard *p. 101*







The Floating Markets of Bangkok



Bangkok, the capital of Thailand, is a city of contrasts. The tall glass buildings look like any other modern city. But behind them is a place where life hasn't changed for over 100 years—the canals. Built in 1866 by the King of Thailand, these canals are home to many Thai people who still live and work there today. There are four floating markets around Bangkok, and the oldest and most popular is in the town of Damonen Saduak.

This market opens every day at 6:30 A.M. It's best to shop early and go by water taxi. After 9 A.M. the tourist buses arrive, and it's much too busy.

It's a colorful, noisy, fascinating place. Old ladies with huge hats sit in small boats, filled with tropical fruit and vegetables, fresh coconut juice, and local food. Did you miss your breakfast? Then just call a seller for a bowl of hot soup. He'll get it from a stove at the back of his boat!

But the boats don't just sell food. Would you like a traditional hat? A silk dress? A flowered shirt? Then just call and point. After the noise and excitement of the market, continue along the canal. Soon you'll see the wooden houses, orchards, and floating flowers of the canal villages. It's a lovely, peaceful way to finish your trip.



A Perfect Day in Provence

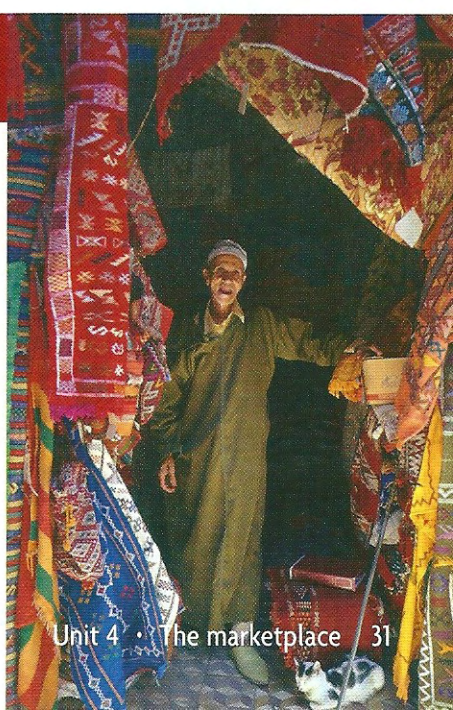


Every Sunday in a small town called Isle-sur-la-Sorgue in southern France there is a truly amazing market. Isle-sur-la-Sorgue is like Venice. The River Sorgue runs in and out of the old narrow streets and under the many bridges, and on market day every street and bridge is packed with stalls. From early morning, this sleepy little town becomes a noisy, busy place, with sellers calling to you in the singing accent of the south.

You can choose from an amazing selection of olives, hundreds of cheeses, and delicious roast chickens. But it is not just a food market. Antique sellers fill the sidewalks with beautiful old French furniture, and there are tables covered with antique lace and cloth. Flower sellers invite you to pick from their brightly colored bunches of flowers. The air is filled with the smell of soaps, herbs, and lavender, all made and grown in Provence. Do you need a sun hat? Did you forget your beach towel? Your choices are endless.

Travelers fill their backpacks with delicious things for Sunday lunch: olive bread, tomatoes, ham, melon, and more. At one o'clock everything closes, and everyone goes home. Then it's time to find a cool place next to the river for a perfect picnic on a perfect day in Provence.

The Souks of Marrakech



Marrakech in Morocco looks like a Hollywood movie set. It is a city of ancient, sand-colored buildings and palm trees in the middle of the desert.

In the center is the main square, Jemaa el Fna. Here you can see dancing snakes and drink Moroccan coffee. But behind the square is the real heart of the city. This is the *souk* (the Arab word for market). Hundreds of little shops and stalls are open from early morning till lunchtime, and again in the evening. The souk, with its narrow, busy streets, is divided into lots of smaller souks. There's the aromatic spice souk, the noisy meat souk, the colourful clothing souk, the gold and silver souk, and many more.

Finally, there's the carpet souk. Here, hundreds of handmade Moroccan rugs and carpets cover the sidewalks. No two rugs are the same. In Mr. Youssaf's rug shop, he invites you to sit down among all the beautiful carpets. A silver teapot arrives with little glasses, and Mr. Youssaf talks about the different rugs, while his assistants roll them out one by one. Two hours later, after many glasses of traditional mint tea and lots of bargaining, you finally choose your rug and leave much poorer. Then it's time to return to the main square to watch the snakes and count your money.

VOCABULARY, LISTENING, AND SPEAKING

Shopping



1 Look at the pictures. Where are the people? What can you buy or do in each place? Compare your ideas with the class.

2 Complete the table with the things in the box.

a T-shirt	a book of stamps	deodorant	tissues	a coffee
a tie	a bottle of water	aspirin	scales	envelopes
a belt	a leather jacket	a doughnut	a package	shaving cream

a drugstore	a cafe	a post office	a clothes store



CD1 48 Listen, check, and repeat. Mark the main stress on each word or phrase. Practice saying them.

3 CD1 49 Listen to the four conversations. Answer the questions about each one.

1. Where is the conversation taking place?
2. What does the customer want?
3. Can the sales assistant/cashier help?
4. What does the customer buy?

Music *of* English – sounding polite

1 CD1 50 Listen to two people asking for a coffee. Who sounds more polite? Practice the polite way of asking.

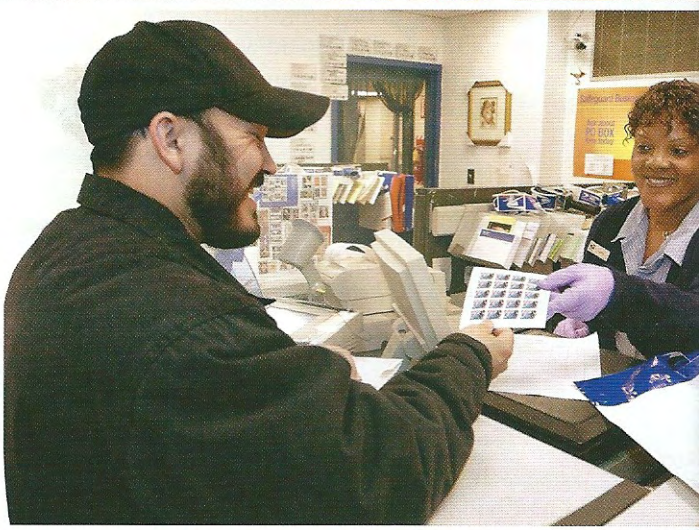
Good morning! Can I have a coffee?

2 CD1 51 Listen and practice these polite requests.

Could I have some tissues as well, please?

I wonder if you could help me?

Can I try it on?



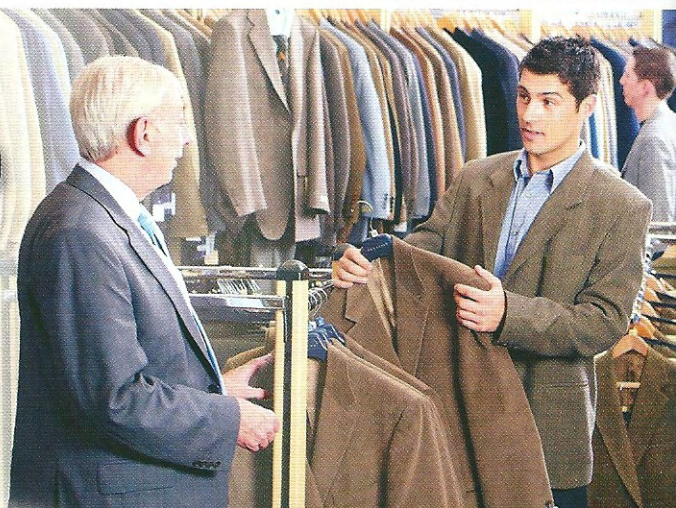
Shopping in your town

4 Do you often go shopping? What do you like going shopping for? What *don't* you like going shopping for?

5 Work in small groups. Make a list of the different stores in your area and what they sell. Talk about the different stores.

There are two supermarkets. There aren't any ...

There are a few good clothes stores. There aren't many ...



6 Which stores do you go to regularly? Which do you never go to? Why? Compare your lists and shopping habits with the class.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Prices



1 Look at the way we write and say prices. Practice saying them.

Written	Spoken
$1	a dollar
50¢	fifty cents
$1.99	a dollar ninety-nine
$16.40	sixteen-forty/sixteen dollars and forty cents
£1	a pound
50p	fifty p
£1.99	one pound ninety-nine
£16.40	sixteen pounds forty

2 What's the exchange rate between U.S. dollars and your currency?

There are about five ... to the dollar.

In your country, how much is ... ?

- a liter of gas
- a movie ticket
- a cup of coffee
- a loaf of bread
- a pair of jeans
- a DVD

3 CD1 52 Listen to the conversations. What are they about? Write the numbers you hear.

Open extented hours 7 days a week
CHANGING the way you change money
Please keep your receipt
MTM Money **www.mtm.com**

Date: 02/20/10 Time: 10:30 Cashier: 144

SELL NOTES		BUY NOTES	
Product:	DOLLAR ($)	Product:	POUND (£)
Amount:	150.00	Amount:	79.97
Rate:	1.8757	Rate:	–
Commission:	2.00	Commission:	0.00
Subtotal:	79.97	Subtotal:	79.97

Payment: **Visa**
Amount: **$152.00**

Thank you for your business!

4 Complete the conversations below with the lines from the box.

How much is it?	Thanks, your change is $2.40.
That's $24.50, please.	I'm sorry. That's $7.40, then.
And can I cash a traveler's check for £100?	
That's $375, plus $2 commission.	
$8 for adults, $4.50 for children under 12.	

1. **A** Hello. I'm looking for this month's issue of *Vogue*.
   B Over there. Middle shelf. Next to *Marie Claire* and *Cosmopolitan*.
   A Thanks. _____
   B $2.60.
   A Here you are.
   B _____
   A Wait a minute! I gave you a $10 bill, not a $5 bill.
   B _____



2. **A** I'd like to change these pounds into dollars, please.
   B OK. How much is here?
   A £200.
   B _____
   A OK, thanks. _____
   _____
   B Certainly. Do you have your passport?
   A Yes, here it is.



3. **A** Hello. How much is it to get in?
   B _____
   A OK. Two adults and three children, please.
   B Then it's cheaper if you have a family pass. _____
   A Thank you very much.



5 CD1 53 Listen and check. Practice the conversations.

5 What do you want to do?

- **Grammar:** Verb patterns • future forms
- **Vocabulary:** *-ed/-ing* adjectives
- **Everyday English:** How are you feeling?

STARTER Complete these sentences with ideas about you.

- One day I want to …
- On Sundays, I love …
- Right now, I'd like to …
- This weekend I'm going to …
- I enjoy … because I like …

HOPES AND AMBITIONS

Verb patterns

1 Match the people in the photo with their hopes and ambitions.

1. ___ I'd like to be a vet. I have three pets—two rabbits and a kitten named Princess.
2. ___ I'm going to study hard and get really good grades on all my tests.
3. ___ I'm thinking of changing jobs, because I'm tired of traveling all the time.
4. ___ I'm looking forward to going on a world cruise with my friend, Margaret.
5. ___ I'd love to be in a rock band. I want to play lead guitar.
6. ___ I hope to go back to college and study to be a primary school teacher.

CD2 2 Listen and check.

2 Listen again and complete the chart.

	Ambitions/Plans	Reasons
Ella		
Joe		
Juliet		
Hannah		
David		
Edie		

3 Underline the examples of verb + infinitive and verb + *-ing* in Exercise 1.

I'd like to be a vet … .

Look at the audio script on page 114. Find more examples.



GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the sentences with the words *go abroad*. Put the verb *go* in the correct form.

I want *to go abroad.*
I'd like . . .
I'm looking forward to . . .
I hope . . .
I enjoy . . .
I'm thinking of . . .
I love . . .
I'd love . . .

2 What's the difference between these sentences?

I like going to the movies.
I'd like to go to the movies tonight.

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 5.1 p. 127**
▶▶ **Verb Patterns on p. 153**



PRACTICE

Discussing grammar

1 In these sentences, one or two verbs are correct, but not all three. Check (✓) the correct verbs.

1. I _____ to live in a hot country.
   a. ☑ *want* b. ☐ *enjoy* c. ☑ *'d like*
2. We _____ going to Thailand for our vacation.
   a. ☐ *are hoping* b. ☐ *'re thinking of* c. ☐ *like*
3. I _____ going shopping on the weekend.
   a. ☐ *want* b. ☐ *like* c. ☐ *love*
4. I _____ to see you again soon.
   a. ☐ *hope* b. ☐ *'d like* c. ☐ *'m looking forward*
5. Do you _____ studying English?
   a. ☐ *want* b. ☐ *enjoy* c. ☐ *like*
6. We _____ having a few days off soon.
   a. ☐ *'re thinking of* b. ☐ *'d love to* c. ☐ *'re looking forward to*

Make sentences with the other verbs.

I enjoy living in a hot country.

Making questions

2 Work with a partner and write **B**'s questions. Read the conversations aloud.

1. **A** I hope to go to college.
   B (What/want/study?) _____ ?
2. **A** One of my favorite hobbies is cooking.
   B (What/like/make?) _____ ?
3. **A** I get terrible headaches.
   B (When/start/get/them?) _____ ?
4. **A** We're planning our summer vacation right now.
   B (Where/think/go?) _____ ?
5. **A** I'm bored.
   B (What/like/do/tonight?) _____ ?

CD2 **3** Listen and check. What are **A**'s answers? Practice the conversations again. Pay attention to stress and intonation.

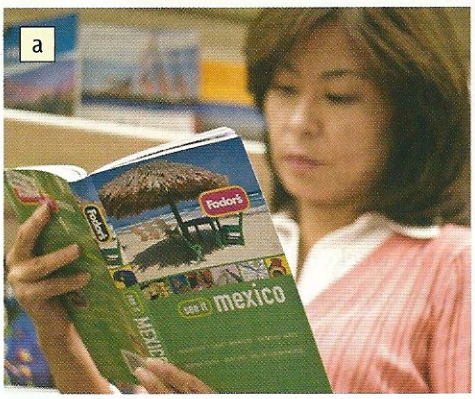
Talking about you

3 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

- Do you like studying English?
- Would you like to learn another foreign language?
- What are you thinking of doing on Saturday morning?
- What do you enjoy doing in the evenings?
- Do you want to get married one day?
- How many children do you hope to have?

FUTURE INTENTIONS

going to, *will* and Present Continuous for future

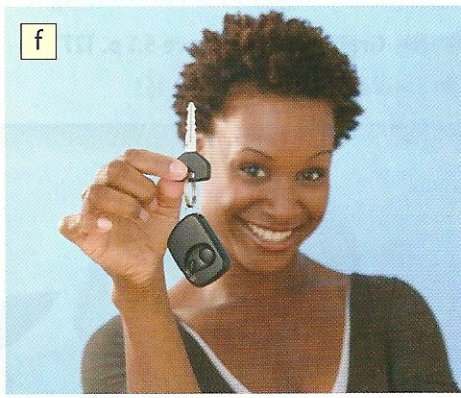












1 Match the photos and sentences.

1. d They're going to buy a bigger house.
2. ☐ I'll give you a ride to the station if you want.
3. ☐ She's going to travel around Mexico.
4. ☐ It's OK. I'll answer it.
5. ☐ Don't worry. I'll lend you some.
6. ☐ I'm going to stay in and watch baseball on TV.

2 Use the sentences opposite to add one line **before** and one line **after** each sentence in Exercise 1.

Why are Peter and Jane saving all their money?

1. *They're going to buy a bigger house.*

Really? Does that mean they're having another baby?

3 CD2 4 Listen and check. Practice the conversations with a partner.

before

I don't have enough money.
What's Annie doing this summer?
The phone's ringing.
Oh no! I'm late. I'm going to miss my train.
What are you doing tonight?
~~Why are Peter and Jane saving all their money?~~

after

That's great. Can we go now? It leaves at five after ten.
Well, if it's Susan, say I'm not in.
Thanks. I'll pay you back tomorrow. I won't forget. I promise.
Lucky her!
~~Really? Does that mean they're having another baby?~~
Oh, of course. Boston and New York are playing, aren't they?

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 All the sentences in Exercise 1 express future intentions.
Which two future forms are used?
Which form means you've already decided?
Which form means you're deciding as you speak?

2 Notice the forms of *will*.
I'll = short form *I won't* = negative short form

3 The Present Continuous can express a future arrangement.
*What **are** you **doing** tonight?*
*Boston **is playing** New York tonight.*

Grammar Reference 5.2 p. 127

PRACTICE

Discussing grammar

1 Choose the correct verb form.

1. That bag looks heavy. *I'll carry* / *I'm going to carry* it for you.
2. I bought some warm boots because *I'll go* / *I'm going* skiing.
3. **A** Tony's back from vacation.
   B He is? *I'll give* / *I'm going to give* him a call.
4. **A** What *will you do*/ *are you doing* tonight?
   B *We'll see* / *We're going to see* a play at the theater.
5. You can tell me your secret. *I won't tell* / *I'm not telling* anyone.
6. Congratulations! I hear *you'll get married* / *you're getting married.*
7. **A** I need to mail these letters.
   B *I'll go* / *I'm going shopping* soon. *I'll mail* / *I'm going to mail* them for you.
8. **A** What *will we have* / *are we having* for dinner?
   B *I'm going to make* / *I'll make* lasagna.

CD2 5 Listen and check.

2 CD2 6 Close your books. Listen to the beginnings of the conversations from Exercise 1. Complete them.

Check it

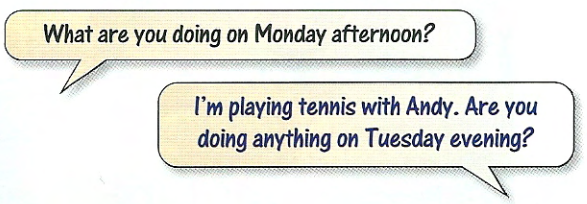
3 Correct the sentences.

1. "What you like to drink?" "I have a coffee, please."
2. Where are the fitting rooms? I like try on these jeans.
3. I can't go out because a friend of mine will come to see me.
4. I'm looking forward to see you again soon.
5. I think to change jobs soon.
6. Call me tonight. I give you my phone number.
7. I see the doctor tomorrow about my back.

What are you doing tonight?

4 Work in pairs. You need to arrange a time to meet over the next few days. Talk together to find a time when you are both free.

Student A Look at your calendar on page 139.
Student B Look at your calendar on page 143.



WRITING Filling out a form *p. 102*

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

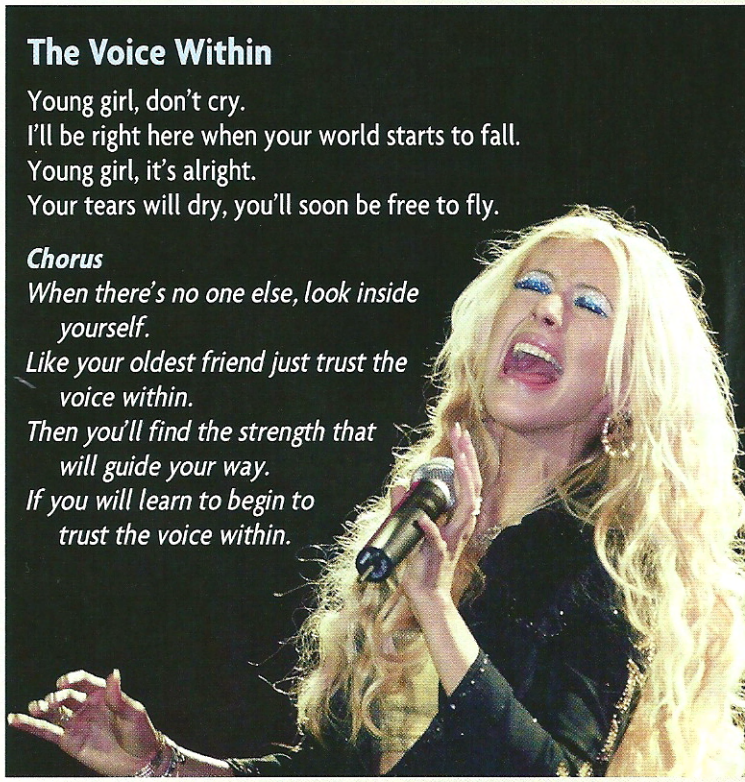
Song – "The Voice Within"

1 What are typical problems that young people have? Write down three and compare your ideas with a partner. Who can help with the problems? Is it always best to talk to other people?

2 CD2 7 Close your books and listen to a song by Christina Aguilera called "The Voice Within." What do you think the problem is? Who is talking to who?

A parent to a child
A boyfriend to a girlfriend
A friend to a friend

3 Read the first verse and the chorus of the song.



The Voice Within

Young girl, don't cry.
I'll be right here when your world starts to fall.
Young girl, it's alright.
Your tears will dry, you'll soon be free to fly.

Chorus
When there's no one else, look inside yourself.
Like your oldest friend just trust the voice within.
Then you'll find the strength that will guide your way.
If you will learn to begin to trust the voice within.

Discuss the questions.

1. Do you think the person giving advice is older or younger? Why?
2. What does the person promise to do?
3. What is the advice in the chorus?
4. What does she mean by "the voice within"?

4 CD2 7 Look at the song on page 145. Choose the best word in italics to complete the song. Listen again and compare.

Talking about you

- When do you ask others for advice? For what kinds of problems? Who do you ask?
- When do you decide on your own?

READING AND SPEAKING

Brat camp

1 The teenage years can be difficult for both children and parents. Why, do you think? What can go wrong? Why do teenagers feel the need to rebel against their parents?

2 Work in small groups. Read the actions in the box. Decide which are bad and which are very bad behaviors for a teenager. Complete the chart.

telling lies	skipping school	arguing with adults
swearing	fighting and bullying	cheating on exams
stealing	staying out all night	getting in trouble with the police

bad	very bad

3 Read the introduction and the first half of the article about Ned, Emily, and Jamie. Which of the activities in Exercise 2 were they guilty of?

4 Answer the questions.

1. The brat camp is also called a "behavior camp"and a "tough therapy camp." Why?
2. Why are the parents so desperate? What do they hope will happen?
3. What does Ned's mother think is going to happen to him? Who does she blame?
4. Which of the teenagers …?

- is selfish
- has a negative opinion of life
- sees hope in the future

5 Look at the pictures. What do you think happens at the camp?

6 Read the rest of the article. Did you guess what happens at the camp?

7 Answer the questions.

1. In what ways is life at the camp different for the teenagers? What can't they do?
2. What do they learn to do?
3. When can they go home?
4. What were the teenagers' first experiences of life in the camp?
5. How did life in the camp change them?
6. What are their hopes and ambitions now?

What do you think?

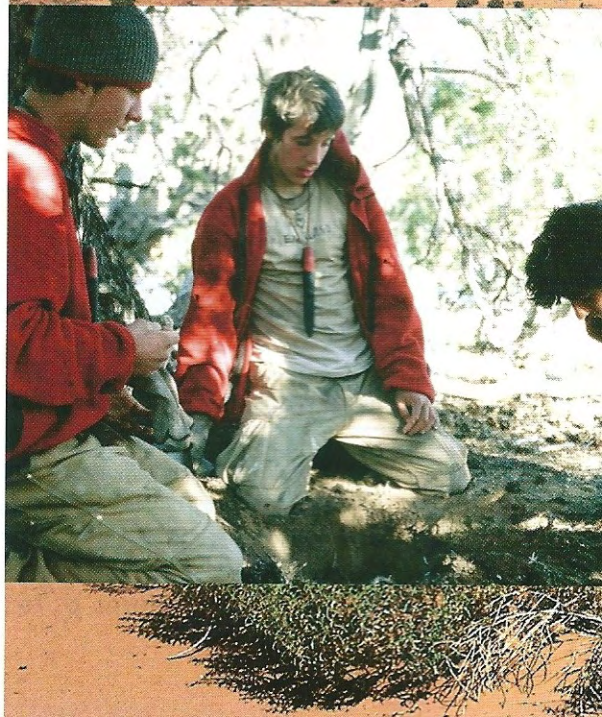
- Why do you think the teenagers have to give up the things from their old lives?
- Why is physical activity so important?
- Do you feel sorry for the teenagers? Or more sorry for the parents?
- Why do you think these teenagers had problems?

BRAT CAMP

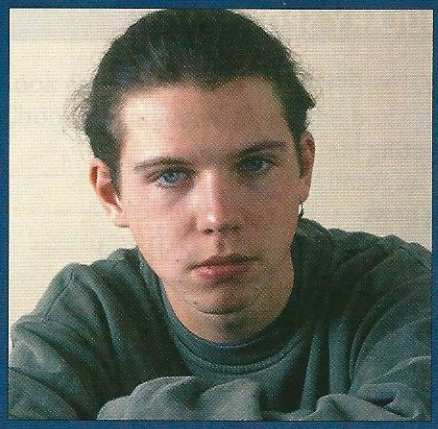
What do you do with a teenager that swears at you, steals, lies, fights, stays out all night, and is completely out of control?

Desperate parents from all over the world are sending their difficult teenagers to behavior camps in the Utah mountains, hoping that they will come back as the children they once knew and loved. Meet these three troubled teenagers. Will the tough therapy camp help them or will they return home the same rebellious brats?





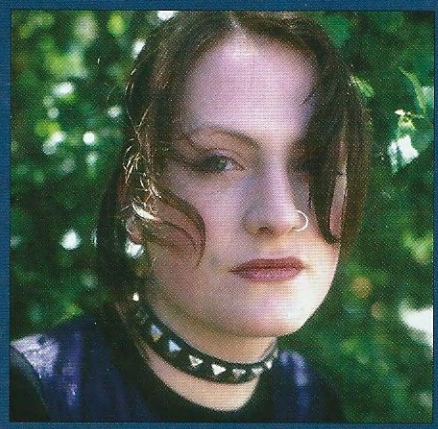
Ten weeks. Three teenagers. One last chance.



Ned, 16

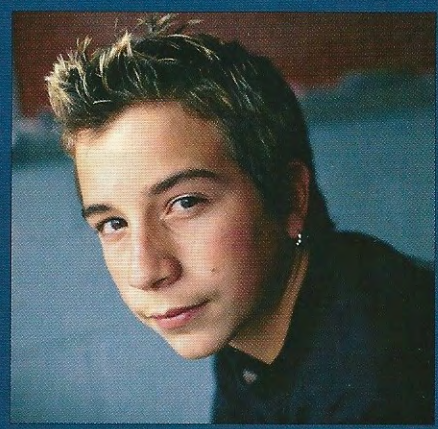
Ned has always argued with his mother and no longer lives at home. "I lie, steal, and cheat. I've been in trouble with the police," he says. "I hate everything." His dad died when he was nine.

His mother says, "He's going to end up in prison, and it'll be my fault."



Emily, 15

Emily was a happy girl who did well in school. Now she skips school all the time. Her behavior changed at 13, when her mother remarried. She sleeps all day, stays out all night, and bullies her mother. "It's my life and I can do what I want," she says.



Jamie, 17

Jamie is a very intelligent boy, but five schools asked him to leave in just three years. His parents are divorced. "I fight a lot," he says. "I'm going to end up in prison or seriously hurt if I don't go to this camp. I hope it helps."



Far away from the outside world, the teenagers have to give up all the things from their old lives, including body piercings, e-mail, music, cell phones, and their fashionable clothes. There are a lot of rules to follow and physical activity is very important. They go on long hikes through the mountains, and sleep in tents at night. They learn to look after themselves and each other, and be responsible. They discuss their problems with the camp psychologist, who decides when they are ready to go home. The average time is ten weeks.

Ned felt very sick at first because he had to do so much exercise. "It was tough, but I feel better now. I don't feel depressed anymore. I'm really looking forward to seeing my family. I'd love to live at home again," he says.

Emily had to take out all of her 18 body piercings. She was shocked by camp life and cried all the time. "I hated camp, but I've learned that everything I do affects other people. I'm sorry I was so horrible to my mom. I hope I can go back to school. I want to be a nurse."

At first Jamie had terrible problems following orders from the camp staff. But then he began to enjoy the outdoor life. He says, "It was an incredible experience. I have more self-control now. I'm going to join the army."

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

-ed/-ing adjectives

1 Complete the sentences to describe these situations and experiences. Use an adjective from the box.



frightening	surprising	exhausting
relaxing	annoying	depressing

1. I heard footsteps in the middle of the night.
   "That's really ..."
2. The bus was full. I had to wait for the next one, so I was late for work.
   "That's so ..."
3. I saw Andy eating a burger! I thought he was a vegetarian.
   "That's very ..."
4. I was lying on the beach in the sun all day yesterday.
   "How ..."
5. On my vacation it rained every day.
   "That's just so ..."
6. I ran my first full marathon on Sunday.
   "How ..."

CD2 8 Listen and check.

2 Imagine you were in the situations. How did you feel?

I heard footsteps in the middle of the night. I was really frightened.

CD2 9 Listen and compare.

VOCABULARY SPOT

1 *-ing* adjectives describe a situation, person, or thing.

an **interesting** life
a **boring** weekend
shocking news

2 *-ed* adjectives describe how people feel.

I'm very **interested** in modern art.
We were **bored** during the movie.
We were **shocked** by his bad behavior.

3 Complete the sentences. Use one of the adjectives.

shock- bor- excit- confus- disappoint- frighten- annoy- fascinat-	-ed -ing

1. **A** I watched a horror movie on my own last night.
   B Were you _____ ?
2. **A** I spent four hours going around a museum.
   B Oh, no! Was it _____ ?
   A Actually, it was really _____ . I loved it.
3. **A** Did you see the way she behaved?
   B Yes, it was _____ . Don't invite her next time!
4. I had a second interview but I didn't get the job. I'm so _____ .
5. The teacher was _____ because all the students were late.
6. My daughter is very _____ because it's her birthday tomorrow.
7. I don't know how this camera works! The instructions are really _____ .

CD2 10 Listen and check.

4 What have you seen on television, DVD, or at the movies recently? What books have you read? What did you think of them? Tell the class.

I read a spy story. It was very exciting.

I saw a program about DNA on TV last night. I was fascinated.

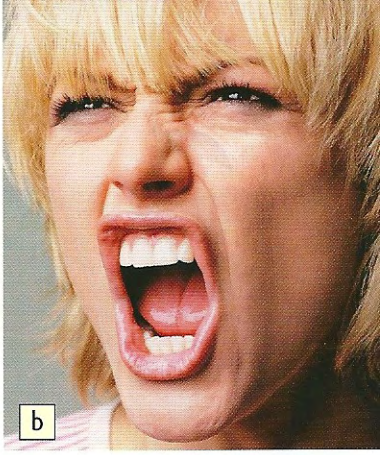
EVERYDAY ENGLISH

How are you feeling?

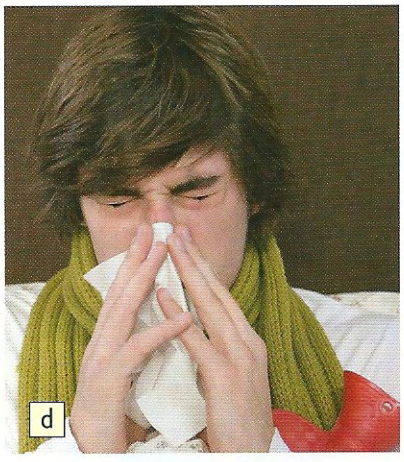
1 Look at the pictures. How are the people feeling? Choose an adjective from the box.

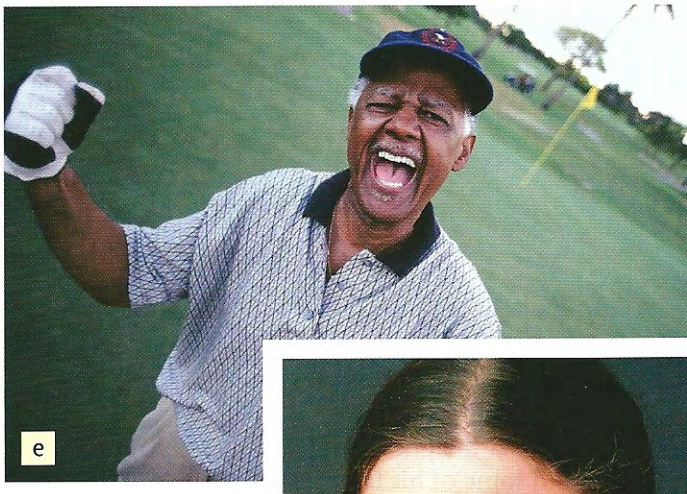
1. ___b___ angry
2. _____ excited
3. _____ worried
4. _____ fed up
5. _____ nervous
6. _____ sick


a


b


c


d


e


f

2 All the lines in **A** answer the question *How are you feeling?* Match a line in **A** with a line in **B**. Read them aloud with feeling.

A	B
1. I feel a little nervous.	It's so wet and miserable.
2. I don't feel very well.	I'm going on vacation to Australia tomorrow!
3. I'm feeling a lot better, thanks.	We're in love!
4. I'm so angry!	I think I'm getting a cold.
5. I'm really excited!	My grandfather's going into the hospital for tests.
6. I'm fed up with this weather.	I have a test today.
7. I'm a little worried.	I don't think I have many friends.
8. We're really happy!	I got a parking ticket this morning. Sixty dollars!
9. I sometimes feel a little lonely, actually.	Not quite back to normal, but nearly there.

3 Choose a reply to the pairs of lines in Exercise 2.

a. Cheer up! You have me. I'm always here for you.
b. Oh no! Why don't you go home to bed?
c. No way! Didn't you get one last week, too?
d. I know. We really need some sunshine, don't we?
e. That's good. I'm so glad to hear that.
f. Lucky you! Have a good time!
g. That's fantastic! I'm so happy for you both!
h. Good luck! Just do your best. That's all you can do.
i. I'm sorry to hear that! I'm sure he'll be all right.

CD2 | 11 Listen and check.

Music *of* English – intonation

1 CD2 | 12 Listen and practice the intonation patterns in the exclamations.

Cheer up! *Oh no!* *No way!* *I know.*

That's good. *Lucky you!* *That's fantastic!*

Good luck! *I'm so glad to hear that!*

2 Choose some of the conversations in CD2 | 11 on p. 115. Practice them with your partner.

4 Have conversations with a partner about these things:

- a party
- a headache
- a visit to the dentist
- problems with parents
- winning $1,000
- the weather

6 Places and things

- **Grammar:** *What ... like?*
  - Comparatives and superlatives
- **Vocabulary:** Synonyms and antonyms

Everyday English: A long weekend

STARTER **1** What is your favorite . . . ?

- town
- sport
- film
- food
- song
- building

2 Write your answers and compare with a partner.

MY FAVORITE THINGS

What's it like?

1 Look at the photos of the singer Leroy and some of his favorite things. What are they?

2 Which of these adjectives do you think go with the pictures? Discuss with a partner.

sad	awesome	creative	talented
spicy	shocking	funny	exciting
fantastic	delicious	amazing	

CD2 13 Listen to Leroy. What adjectives does he use to describe his favorite things?

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Match the questions and answers.

Do you like hip-hop music?	*It's sad. / It's beautiful.*
What's hip-hop music like?	*Yes, I do. / No, I don't.*

2 Which question in 1 means *Tell me about hip-hop music*?

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 6.1 p. 128**



PRACTICE

What's Houston like?

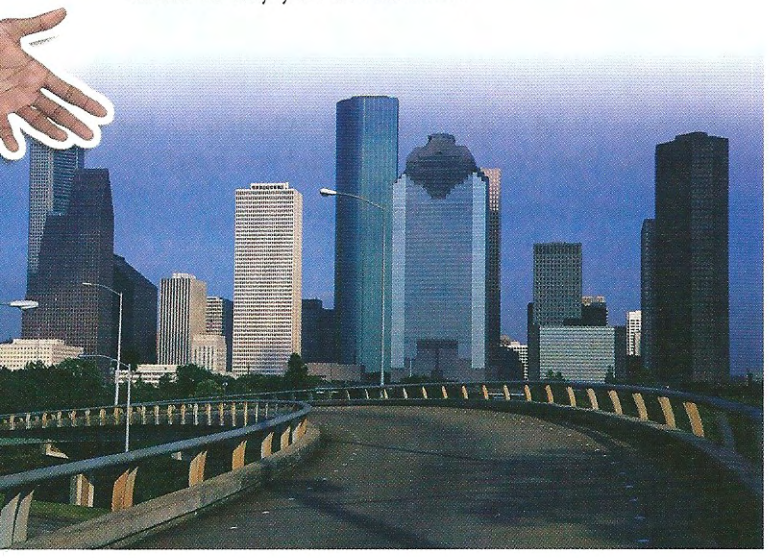
1 Leroy is answering questions about his home town, Houston. Complete the questions with *is* or *are* and the correct words from the box.

~~Houston~~	the restaurants	the people
the buildings	the nightlife	the weather

1. Q What *'s Houston* _____ like?
   A Well, it's a really exciting city! There's so much going on all the time.
2. Q What _____ like?
   A It's warm all year round, and really hot in the summer.
3. Q What _____ like?
   A They're very interesting and friendly. A lot of people there speak both Spanish and English
4. Q What _____ like?
   A Fantastic! Lots of them are big new skyscrapers, but there are some wonderful historic buildings, too.
5. Q What _____ like?
   A They're great! You can find food from every country in the world.
6. Q What _____ like?
   A Oh, it's amazing! There are so many clubs and theaters, and, of course, the music scene is fantastic!

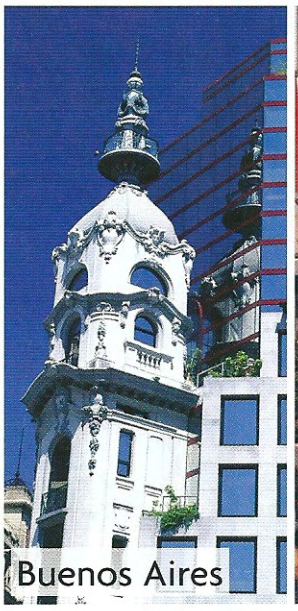
2 CD2 14 Listen and check. Practice with a partner.

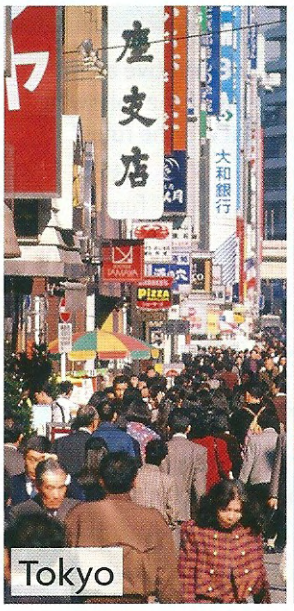
3 Ask and answer the same questions about the town or city you are in now.

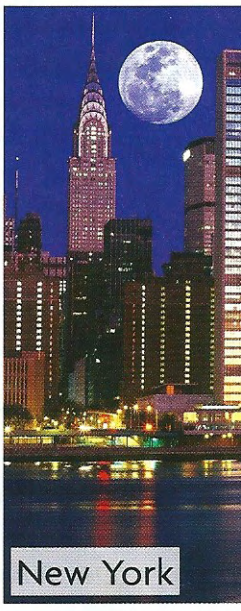


GOOD, BETTER, BEST!

Comparatives and superlatives







1 Last year Leroy sang in these three cities. What do you know about them?

CD2 15 Read and listen to Leroy (L) and the interviewer (I). Complete the interview.

I Do you travel a lot, Leroy?

L Oh yeah. I sing all over the world. Last year I was in Buenos Aires, Tokyo—oh, and of course, New York.

I And what are they _____?

L Well, they're all big, busy cities. Tokyo's the biggest and the _____. It's _____ bigger _____ Buenos Aires.

I And is it _____ interesting?

L Well, they're all interesting, but, in fact, for me the _____ interesting is New York.

I Really? Why?

L Well, in some ways, perhaps it might not be as interesting _____ the other two cities—it doesn't have any *really* old buildings, or beautiful, old Japanese temples—but you know, New York is the birthplace of hip-hop music and that's everything to me.

I Hmmm, I see. So New York's best for music. And what about food? Which is the _____ city for food?

L Ah, the food. For me there's no question, Tokyo definitely has the _____ delicious food—I just love Japanese food!

I I see. Is it even better _____ chicken satay?

L Ah, I don't know about that!

PRACTICE

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 What are the comparative and superlative forms of the following adjectives? What are the rules?

a. old
new

b. big
sad

c. busy
funny

d. interesting
delicious

2 These adjectives are irregular. What are the comparative and superlative forms?

good	bad

3 Adjectives also combine with *as . . . as*. Look at these sentences.

"Is Berlin as big as Detroit?" "No, it isn't."

Detroit isn't as big as Tokyo.

Which city is the smallest?

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 6.2 p. 128**

2 Work with a partner. Compare some cities in your country.

Pronunciation

3 CD2 16 Listen and repeat the sentences. Pay attention to the /ə/ sound.

/bɪgər ðən/
Tokyo's bigger than Buenos Aires.

/əz bɪg əz/
Buenos Aires isn't as big as Tokyo.

4 Practice these sentences with a partner.

Is Peter as old as you?
He's older than us, but younger than you.
Their teacher's funnier than ours.
Our classes are more interesting than theirs.

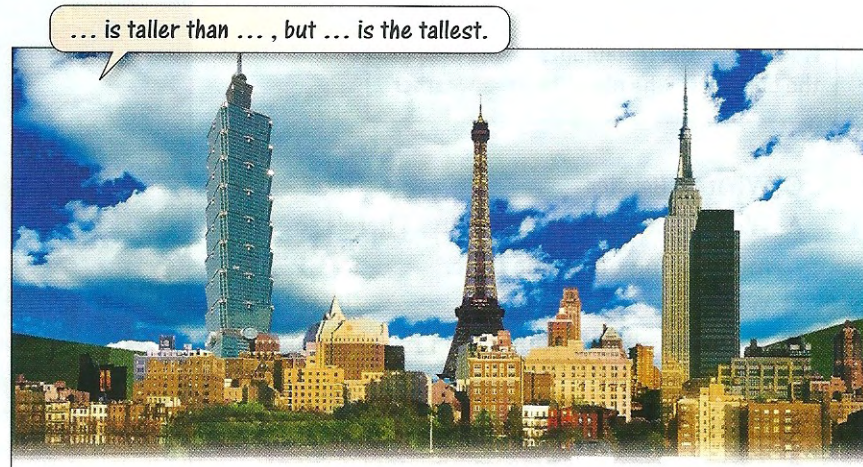
CD2 17 Listen and check.

5 CD2 18 Learn this poem by heart. Say it as a class.

"Good, better, best.
Never, never rest
'til your good is better,
and your better best."

Test your general knowledge

1 Work in teams. Compare the things using the comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives.



1. **tall**	Taipei 101 (Taipei) The Eiffel Tower (Paris) The Empire State Building (New York)
2. **small**	Singapore Vatican City Iceland
3. **big**	Atlantic Ocean Arctic Ocean Pacific Ocean
4. **fast**	horse human elephant
5. **expensive**	Porsche Ferrari Rolls-Royce
6. **dangerous**	lion shark hippopotamus



2 CD2 19 Read your answers aloud. Listen and check. Which team has the most correct answers? What extra information did you hear?

3 In your team, write one more general knowledge question comparing three things. Ask another team.

Talking about you

4 Work with a partner. Compare the things. Which do you like best?

Type of vacation
- skiing
- beach
- sightseeing
- camping

Type of movie
- comedy
- thriller
- science fiction
- romance

Type of music
- jazz
- rap
- classical
- rock

Conversations

5 Work with a partner. Complete and then continue the conversations.

1. **A** I just moved to a new apartment.
   B Oh, really? What's it like?
   A Well, it's *bigger* than my old one but *it isn't as modern, and* . . .

2. **A** I hear Alice and Henry broke up.
   B Yeah. Alice has a new boyfriend.
   A Oh, really? What's he like?
   B Well, he's _____ than Henry, and . . .

3. **A** We have a new teacher.
   B Oh, really? What's she like?
   A Well, I think she's the _____ teacher we've ever had . . .

4. **A** Is that your new car?
   B Well, it's a used car, but it's new to me.
   A What's it like?
   B Well, it's _____ than my old car, . . .

Choose a conversation. Learn it by heart. Act it out for the class.

CD2 20 Listen and compare.

Check it

6 Correct these sentences.

1. He's more older than he looks.
2. Jessica's as tall than her mother.
3. **A** What does New York like?
   B It's really exciting!
4. Tokyo is more expensive that Rio.
5. McGill University is one of oldest universities in Canada.
6. He isn't as intelligent than his sister.
7. This is more hard than I expected.
8. Who is the most rich man in the world?
9. Everything is more cheap in my country.
10. Beijing was hotter that I expected.

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

The best things in life are free

1 What pleasures are there in life that don't cost anything? Think of three things you love that are free. Compare your ideas with a partner, then the class. Make a list.

2 CD2 21 Listen to five people talking about the best things in their lives that are free. Put these photos in the order you hear them. Compare them with your list. Are any of them the same?



3 CD2 21 Listen again and complete the chart. Compare your answers with a partner.

	What?	Why?	Is it free?
Ben, 15			
Mary, 55			
Michael, 36			
Laura, 8			
Kelly, 24			

4 Choose one of your favorite free things. Make some notes about the reasons why you like it.

Work with a partner. Now talk about it for one minute without stopping. Your partner will time you.

READING AND SPEAKING

London: the world in one city

1 What is the capital city of your country? Write down two things that you like about your capital and two things that you don't like. Tell the class.

> *I like the shopping, but I don't like all the traffic.*

2 Describe your capital city. What is it like? How big is it? Is it old or modern? Is it very cosmopolitan? What countries are the people from?

3 Read the introduction to the article on this page. Are these sentences true (✓) or false (✗), according to the article?

1. London is more cosmopolitan than Toronto.
2. New York is the most diverse city ever.
3. Londoners don't work as hard as people in other cities.
4. Immigrants want their children to learn English.
5. Londoners are the friendliest people in the world.
6. Londoners only like eating English food.
7. Most Londoners want to leave the city eventually.

4 Work in two groups to answer the questions about your texts.

Group A Read texts 1 and 3.
Group B Read texts 2 and 4.

1. Who are the people in the photo?
   Where are they?
   What are they doing?
2. What country are they from?
3. Write the names of . . .
   the owner / manager
   the store / cafe / restaurant
   the area of London where it is
4. What other nationality is mentioned?
5. Are / Were there any problems between people from different immigrant groups?
6. What food is mentioned?
   What's it called?
   What's it like?

5 Work with a partner from the other group. Compare the communities, using your answers to Exercise 4.

What do you think?

- Why do people from so many countries move to London?
- Are there any groups of foreigners living in your town? Where do they come from? What do they find different? Do they mix with other groups, or keep themselves apart?

WRITING Describing a place *p. 103*

London:



Leo Benedictus spent months interviewing the immigrant communities that give the city of London its vitality and, more importantly, its food!

New York and Toronto may think they are more cosmopolitan, but London in the 21st century is certainly the most diverse city ever. This is one of the reasons why it was chosen to host the 2012 Olympic Games. More than 300 languages are spoken by the people of London, and it has 50 nationalities with populations of more than 10,000.

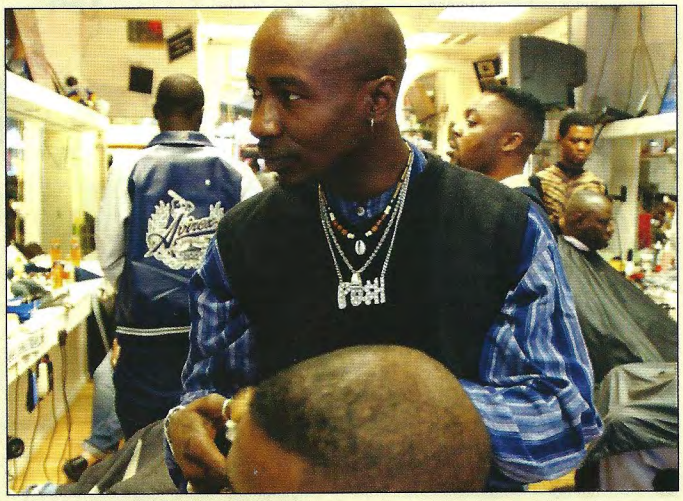
Why is this? Firstly, London is a place of business. Londoners have the fewest holidays in Europe and work the longest hours. People come for jobs and money. But that is not why they stay. Language is one reason. Fluency in English is a great gift for their children. Another surprising reason is the character of the London people. They are not as friendly as people in other countries. But this has advantages—people leave you alone, and you are free to live your own life. Finally, the most delicious reason is food. You can have food from more than 70 different countries any night of the week. Londoners' enthusiasm for foreign food creates thousands of jobs for new communities.

All Londoners, old and new, have the same principles. They work hard, love their children, and move out of the city center as soon as they can afford it!



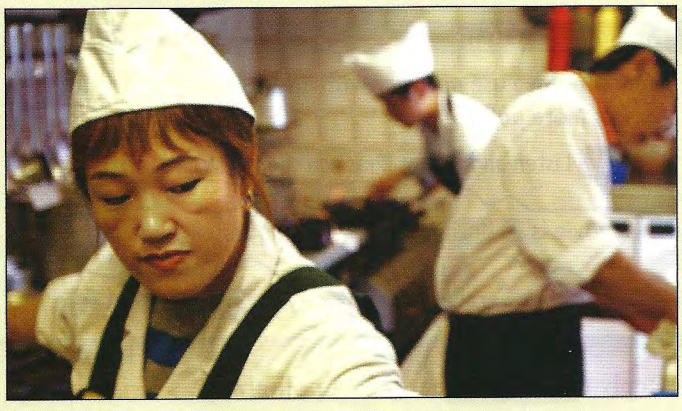
The World in One City

1 Posh Daddy from Nigeria



Posh Daddy is the manager of Big Choice Barbers on Peckham High Street. It is a West Indian and African hairdresser's. These two black communities haven't always gotten along well together. "When I first came here, we just wanted to be accepted by the West Indian community, but they weren't very friendly," he says. "Now it is getting better. These days most of my West Indian brothers in the barbershop like eating African food like me, pepper soup and *kuku paka*, which is chicken with coconut—very hot and spicy."

2 Staff in the kitchen of the Asadal



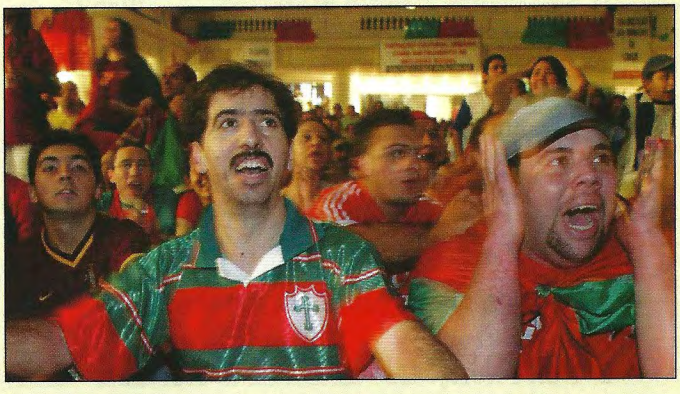
"This restaurant was a little bit of Korea brought into a very English town," says Young-il Park, the manager of the Asadal restaurant in New Malden. The Asadal is famous for its *kimchi*—salty, spicy chilli peppers and vegetables. Young-il's father opened the Asadal in 1991—the first Korean restaurant in the town. Young-il was the only Korean in his school. "The thing I noticed most was that people stared," he says. "Now you see a lot of Koreans here."

3 The staff in the Yasar Halim Bakery



Yasar Halim, a Turkish grocery store and bakery, is known all over London. It was started in Green Lanes in 1981 by Mr. Halim, a Turkish Cypriot. At that time, no one was selling food from his homeland. Now the shop is famous for its *baklava*, a sweet cake made with nuts and honey. The shop is very busy, and the staff working there—both Turkish and Greek Cypriots—look like they're having a great time together. In their homeland of Cyprus, there are still problems between the two communities. But in this area of London, they live together as good neighbors.

4 Portuguese soccer fans in the FC Porto Fan Club in Stockwell



"Soccer is a passion for us," says José Antonio Costa, the president of the Porto Fan Club which meets in Stockwell. "Many people come for friendship—you know, in a foreign country, you feel more comfortable with your own people."

Eric Santos, the owner of Santos's cafe near the club, says, "People come for my wife's *bacalhau*—salted cod, made with potatoes and onions. Delicious!" There is a pretty big Portuguese-speaking community here, from Portugal, Brazil, and Madeira, but they do not always stick together. "Everyone looks after their own interests." The Portuguese and the Madeirans, in particular, are very separate groups in London, because Madeira wants independence from Portugal.

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Synonyms and antonyms in conversation

Synonyms

1 CD2 22 We often use synonyms in conversation because we don't want to repeat words. Listen and repeat. Practice with a partner.



2 Complete the conversations, using a synonym from the box.

generous	tired of	fantastic	messy	rude	modern

1. **A** Look at all these **new** buildings!
   B Yes. Beijing is much more _____ than I expected.
2. **A** Wasn't that movie **great**?
   B Absolutely! It was _____ . We loved it.
3. **A** Your bedroom's really **dirty**. Again!
   B What do you mean? It doesn't look _____ to me.
4. **A** I couldn't believe it! Their son was so **impolite** to me.
   B Don't worry. He's _____ to everyone.
5. **A** Dan doesn't earn much, but he's always so **kind**.
   B He is, isn't he? He's one of the most _____ people I know.
6. **A** I'm **bored** with this exercise!
   B I know. I'm _____ it, too!

CD2 23 Listen and check. Practice the conversations with your partner. Pay particular attention to stress and intonation.

Antonyms

3 CD2 24 We can also use antonyms in conversation to avoid repeating words. Listen and repeat.



4 Write a synonym and an antonym for the adjectives.

Adjective	Synonym (same)	Antonym (opposite)
bored	*tired of*	*interested*
wonderful		
modern		
impolite		
dirty		
generous		
cold		
miserable		

Music *of* English – stress and intonation

Sometimes we use *not very* with an antonym because it sounds more polite.

CD2 25 Listen and repeat. Practice the stress and intonation.

This movie is so boring. I know. It isn't very interesting at all.

You look so miserable. I'm not very happy, that's for sure.

5 Reply to these sentences in a polite way.

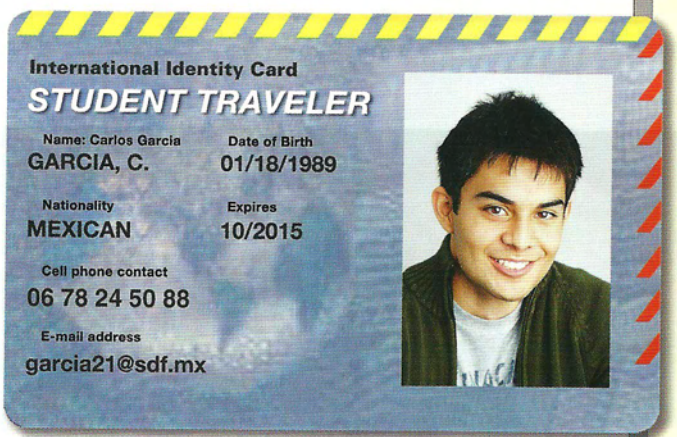
1. Tokyo's such an expensive city.
2. Paul and Sue are so stingy.
3. Their house is always so messy.
4. That sales assistant was so rude!
5. Jim looks really miserable.
6. This exercise is so boring!

CD2 26 Listen and check. Practice the conversations with your partner.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

A long weekend

1 Carlos has booked a long weekend for three nights with his friend, Gabriel. Look at the pictures and complete the online booking form.



Metropole Hostel Online Booking

Booking details

Check in date: July 12
Number of nights: ☐
Number of people: ☐

Please select a room

Price per person per night
6 bed dorm $25 ☐
Private room $100 ☐

Customer details

First name: Carlos
Last name:
e-mail:
Phone number:
Gender M ☐ F ☐
Nationality:

Credit card details

Card holder's name:
Credit card number: 257868
Card type: Visa
Expiration date: 07/15 MM/YY

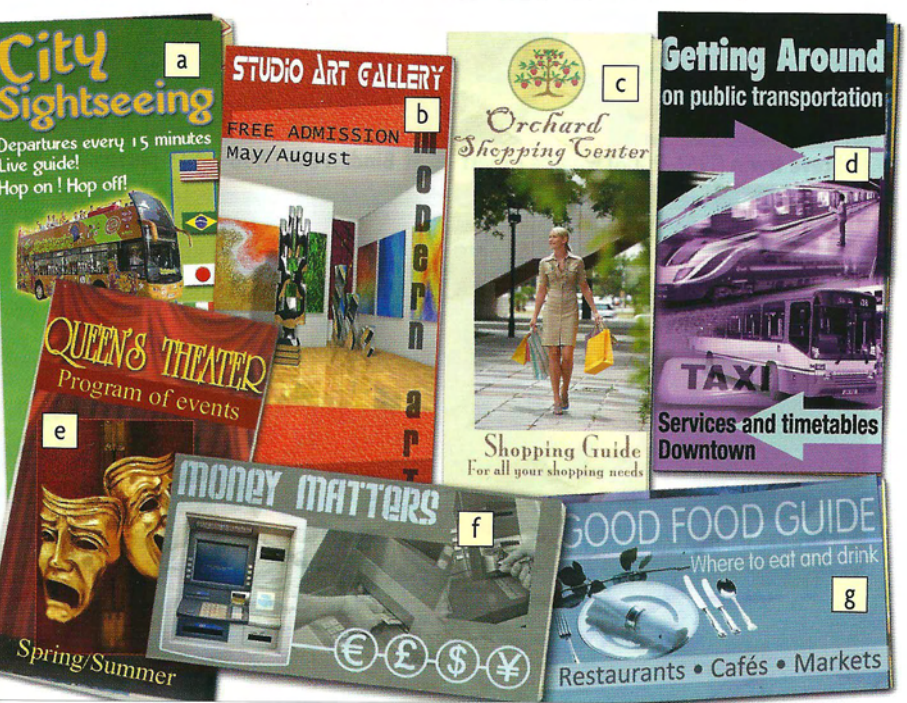
Total cost of rooms: $
Booking fee: 10 $
Total: $

I have read and accept the Terms and Conditions ☐

2 Carlos and Gabriel are in the tourist office. Make questions from columns **A** and **B**. Match a question with a leaflet.

Where can I buy a new backpack? *Orchard Shopping Center – c*

A	B
Where	can I buy a new backpack?
How much	exhibitions are showing this week?
What time	's the nearest ATM?
How long	does the subway stop running?
What	can I get something to eat?
	does the tour take?
	play is on this week?
	is a subway pass for a week?
	can I get a battery for my camera?
	is there a club with live music?



3 CD2 27 Listen to a conversation among Carlos, Gabriel, and someone who works in the tourist office. What do Carlos and Gabriel want to do and see? What problems are there?

4 CD2 27 Listen again and complete the lines of conversation with the exact words.

1. Excuse me. _____ help me?
2. _____ a trip on one of those buses . . .
3. _____ does the tour _____ ?
4. How much _____ ?
5. . . . it's best _____ advance.
6. I _____ for my mother.
7. Is there a _____ here?
8. There's a good _____ .

5 In pairs, ask and answer the questions in Exercise 2 about your town or city.

Where's the nearest ATM?

Go out of the building and turn left. Walk to the post office. It's about five minutes.

Planning a weekend

6 Plan a weekend for someone coming to your town. Include information on:

- Where to stay/eat/shop . . .
- What to see/do . . .
- How to get around

7 Fame!

- **Grammar:** Present Perfect • *for* and *since*
- **Vocabulary:** Word endings
  Everyday English: Making conversation (2)

STARTER

What is the Past Simple and the past participle of these verbs? Are they regular or irregular?

write	be	make	marry	have
come	fight	get	speak	become

Irregular Verbs on p. 153

FAMOUS FAMILIES

Present Perfect and Past Simple

1 Look at the photographs. How do you think the people are related?

2 Who are the sentences referring to? Write the names.

1. _____ started wrestling crocodiles at the age of nine.
2. _____ had two sons, Princes William and Harry.
3. _____ has hosted TV shows and is a "tourism ambassador" for Australia.
4. _____ wrote songs with fellow Beatle, Paul McCartney.
5. _____ has worked for CNN, NBC, and other TV networks.
6. _____ has not had as much success as a songwriter as his father.
7. _____ was the youngest U.S. president.
8. _____ has been in the army since he was 20.

CD2 28 Listen and check.

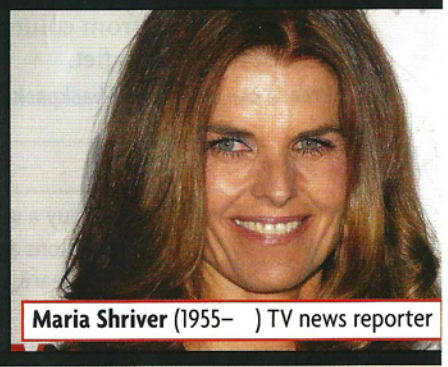


John Lennon (1940–1980) musician

Julian Lennon (1965–) musician



John F. Kennedy (1917–1963) politician



Maria Shriver (1955–) TV news reporter



Steve Irwin (1962–2006) wildlife expert



Bindi Irwin (1998–) TV personality



Princess Diana (1961–1997)



Prince Harry (1984–)

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Find examples of the Past Simple in the sentences in Exercise 2. Find examples of the Present Perfect.

2 Why are the different tenses used in these sentences?

*John Lennon **made** a lot of records.*
*Julian Lennon **has made** a lot of records.*

Why is this sentence wrong?

John Lennon has played with the Beatles for twelve years.

3 *For* and *since* are often used with the Present Perfect. Look at the examples. When do we use *for*? When do we use *since*?

***for** two hours/six weeks/ten years*
***since** six o'clock/yesterday/last week/1997*

Grammar Reference 7.1 and 7.2 pp. 129–130

3 Put the verbs in the Present Perfect or Past Simple.

1. **John Lennon** *started* (start) his first band when he was 15. His eldest son, **Julian**, *has been* (be) in the music business since he was 19. He _____ (make) seven albums so far. His last album, *Conscious*, _____ (come out) in 2008.
2. **John F. Kennedy** _____ (become) President of the United States in 1960 and _____ (be assassinated) in Dallas, Texas, in 1963. His niece, **Maria Shriver**, _____ (work) as a TV journalist since the 1980s and _____ (write) six books. In 1986 she _____ (marry) the actor Arnold Schwarzenegger, who _____ (become) governor of California in 2003.
3. **Steve Irwin** _____ (be) the star of the Australian TV show *The Crocodile Hunter*. In 2006 he _____ (be killed) by a stingray. His young daughter, **Bindi Irwin**, _____ (speak) at his funeral. Bindi is a TV star like her father. She _____ (have) her own wildlife show, *Bindi the Jungle Girl*, since she was two and she _____ (appear) on many other TV shows around the world.
4. Lady Diana Spencer _____ (marry) Charles, Prince of Wales, when she was just 20 and _____ (become) **Princess Diana**. However, in 1996, after 14 difficult years of marriage, they _____ (divorce). In 1997 she _____ (die) in a car crash in Paris. Her younger son, **Prince Harry**, often _____ (get) into trouble as a teenager. However, he _____ now _____ (join) the army and a few years ago he _____ (fight) in Afghanistan.

CD2 29 Listen and check.

4 Write questions using the prompts. Ask and answer with a partner.

1. When / John Lennon / start his first band?
2. How long / Julian Lennon / be in the music business?
3. When / John F. Kennedy / become president?
4. How many books / Maria Shriver / write?
5. How / Steve Irwin / be killed?
6. How long / Bindi Irwin / have her own wildlife show?
7. Who / Princess Diana / marry?
8. Where / Prince Harry / fight?

CD2 30 Listen and check.

PRACTICE

Discussing grammar

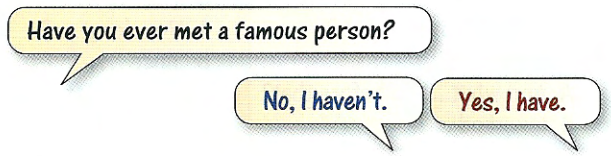
1 Choose the correct verb form.

1. *Have you ever been / Did you ever go* to a rock concert?
2. I *saw / have seen* U2 last week.
3. I love rock music. I *like / have liked* it all my life.
4. U2's concert *was / has been* fantastic.
5. I *have bought / bought* every record they *have made / made*.
6. U2 *have been / are* together since 1976.

Speaking

2 Choose a number between one and ten. Then turn to page 146 and match your number to a sentence that begins *Find someone who … .*

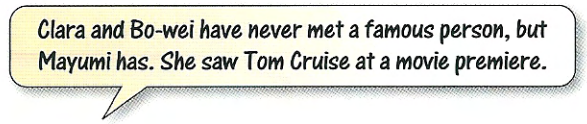
Decide on the question, beginning *Have you ever … ?* Stand up, and ask everyone in the class.



Ask questions to find out more.



3 Report back to the class.



for and *since*

4 Complete the time expressions with *for* or *since*.

1. _____ a year	4. _____ nine o'clock	7. _____ months
2. _____ August	5. _____ I was a student	8. _____ 2002
3. _____ a couple of days	6. _____ half an hour	9. _____ years

5 Match the lines in **A**, **B**, and a sentence in **C**. There is more than one answer. Read them aloud to a partner.

A	B	C
1. I've known my best friend	from 2005 to 2009.	It's not bad. I really like it.
2. I last went to the movies	for an hour.	I went camping with some friends.
3. I've had this watch	two weeks ago.	We met when we were 10.
4. We've used this book	since 2004.	I really need a cup of coffee.
5. We lived in Montreal	since the beginning of school.	My dad gave it to me for my birthday.
6. We haven't had a break	for years.	We moved because I got a job in Toronto.
7. I last had a vacation	for three years.	The movie was terrible.
8. This building has been a school	in 2008.	Before that it was an office.

CD2 31 Listen, check, and practice. Make similar sentences about you using the lines in **A**.

Asking questions

6 Complete the conversation. What verb tenses are the three questions?

A Where _____ live, Anna?
B In an apartment on Green Street.
A How long _____ there?
B Only for, um, ... three months. Yes, since June.
A And why _____ move?
B Well, we wanted to live near the park.

CD2 32 Listen and check. Practice the conversation with a partner.

7 Make more conversations, using the same verb tenses.

1. **A** What ... do? **B** I work .... **A** Really? How long ... ? **B** For .... **A** And what ... do before that? **B** I worked	2. **A** ... have a car? **B** Yes, we .... **A** How long ... ? **B** Since .... **A** ... pay a lot for it? **B** Not really. It was	3. **A** ... know Alan Brown? **B** Yes, I .... **A** How long ... ? **B** For .... **A** Where ... meet him? **B** We ....

CD2 33 Listen and compare.

8 With a partner, ask and answer questions beginning *How long ... ?*

How long have you lived / worked / known / had ... ?

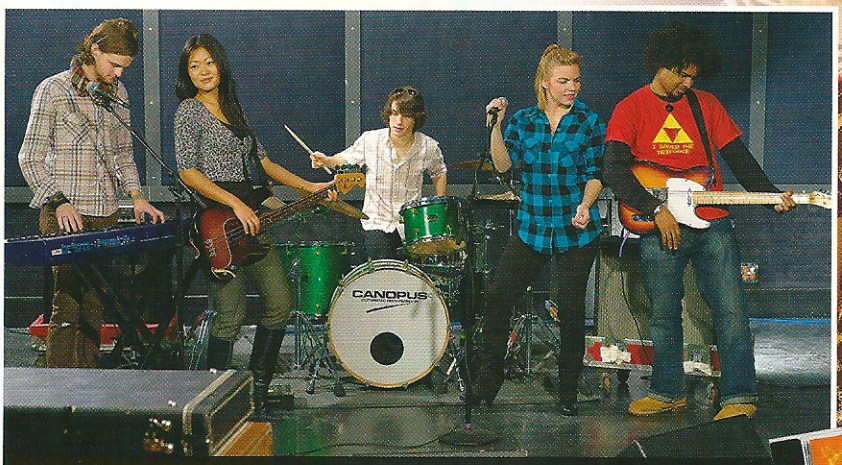
Then get some more information.

Why did you move? *What did you do before ... ?* *Where did you meet ... ?*

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

The band Cherry Hill

1 What kind of music do you like? Who are your favorite bands and singers? If you could meet them, what would you ask them? Write some questions.



From left to right: Jack, Jin-hee, Diego, Rachel, and Gabe

2 Look at the photos. What kind of music do you think Cherry Hill plays? What musical instruments can you see?

3 Read the questions for Cherry Hill. Are any of them similar to your questions from Exercise 1?

1. Which two members of the band are brother and sister? How long have they played together?
2. How long has Cherry Hill been together as a band?
3. How did Rachel's musical career begin?
4. Who has influenced the band? In what ways?
5. Why was touring Europe such an amazing experience?
6. How many albums have they made since 2007?
7. What are their future plans?

CD2 34 Listen to an interview with the members of the band and answer the questions.

4 CD2 34 Listen again. Check (✓) the correct boxes. Check answers with a partner.

Instruments they play	Bands/musicians they have played with	Places they have visited
☐ guitar	☐ Silent Bob	☐ Europe
☐ piano	☐ Neil Young	☐ Canada
☐ bass	☐ The Flaming Lips	☐ South America
☐ violin	☐ Bob Dylan	☐ South Africa
☐ trumpet	☐ The Fiery Furnaces	☐ Hong Kong
☐ keyboards	☐ Nine by Ten	☐ Korea
☐ saxophone		☐ Japan
☐ drums		☐ Australia

Language work

5 Make sentences about Cherry Hill with the time expressions.

Rachel and Jack have had a band since they were teenagers.

A	B
since they were teenagers	in 2004
Rachel/recently/Bob Dylan	Gabe and Diego/2007
South America twice so far	Jin-hee/two years ago
Europe a few times	Rachel/when she was 16
just finished/*Ozone Park*	Korea and Japan/last year

Which tense are all the verbs in **A**? Which tense are they in **B**? Why?

Role play

6 Work in groups of four. Three of you are members of a band. One is a journalist. Look at page 146.

READING AND LISTENING

Davina Moody, Drama Queen

1 Write down the names of two celebrities who are in the news right now. Read the names aloud around the class. Say why they are in the news. What have they done?

2 Look at the photos and the title of the article about a famous film star. What is a "drama queen"? Which of these adjectives do you think describe her?

temperamental	easygoing	moody	spoiled	selfish
bad-tempered	kind	thoughtful	talented	

3 Read the first part of the article.

1. How did Davina travel?
2. Who did she travel with?
3. Is Davina the first famous star to stay in the hotel?
4. Did the hotel staff enjoy looking after her?

4 Look at the headings for the series of disasters. Work with a partner. What do you think the five disasters were? Share ideas with the class.

5 Read the article quickly. Whose ideas were most like the disasters? What were they?

6 Read the article again. Are these sentences true (✓) or false (✗)? Correct the false sentences.

1. Davina Moody has booked 40 rooms in the hotel.
2. The hotel manager has had a nervous breakdown.
3. She has been a star for many years.
4. She always wears yellow dresses.
5. She didn't like the lighting in her room.
6. She was very angry when the staff woke her up.
7. She met hundreds of important people at the reception.
8. Her film was not successful.
9. She fired her manicurist.

What do you think?

What is your opinion of this movie star? Why does she behave like this?

CD2 35 Listen to Davina talking to a reporter about the article. What does she say? Who do you believe?

Project

Find an article about a celebrity from a newspaper or magazine. Is it a kind or an unkind article? Bring it into class and tell the class about it.

WRITING A biography *p. 104*

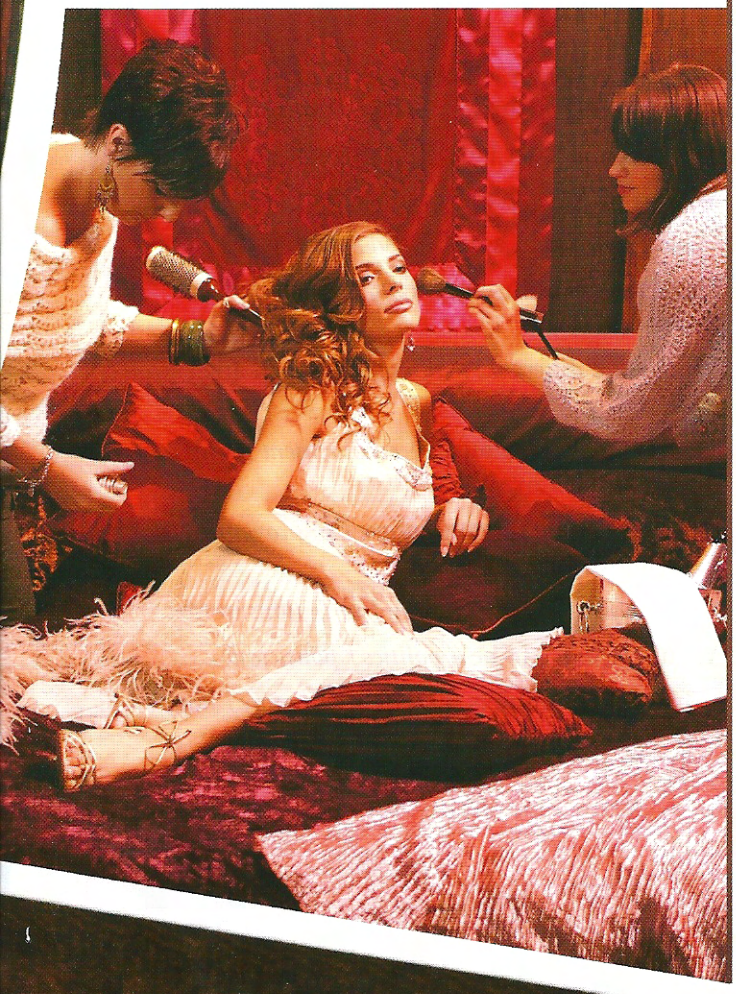


Davina Moody
Drama Queen

Los Angeles
Wednesday, February 8th

She arrived by private jet on Sunday morning with a 20-strong entourage, including her PA (personal assistant), the PA to the PA, her hairdresser, makeup artist, manicurist, chef, dietician, masseuse, personal trainer, chauffeur, six bodyguards, and, of course, a vet for her six-month-old King Charles Spaniel, Pooksie.

By Sunday evening the staff at California's Hollywood Hills Hotel, who have met and looked after some of the world's most famous and most temperamental movie stars, felt that this star deserved an Oscar for her off-screen performance. Davina Moody was very moody, the moodiest of them all.



A Series of Disasters

Miss Moody is in Hollywood to attend the premiere of her latest movie. She has booked 17 rooms in the hotel at a cost of $40,000 a night. Unfortunately, since her arrival, there have been a series of disasters. These have given the usually calm and patient Arnold Baglioni, hotel manager, a near nervous breakdown and played havoc with the normal running of his hotel.

1 No red carpet!

The first disaster came very soon after her arrival. Davina climbed out of her white stretch-limousine onto ... the sidewalk. There was NO RED CARPET and Miss Moody NEVER walks on sidewalks. She hasn't walked on a sidewalk since she became a child star nearly 30 years ago.

2 No white roses!

Worse was to follow. The corridor leading to her rooms was lined with roses. Davina loves roses but these were yellow roses. She wanted *white* roses. She hates yellow roses. In fact Miss Moody hates anything yellow. She has never worn anything yellow in her life.

3 The wrong lighting!

Davina travels with a "lighting director." He has the job of arranging the lighting in any room to show her face to its best advantage. She likes pink lights. She looks younger with pink ones. The lights in her hotel room were ... yellow! Miss Moody has now moved rooms and fired the lighting director.

4 Fire! Fire!

A real disaster! At midnight on Monday there was a fire in the hotel kitchens. The fire department arrived and ordered everyone to leave the building. However, the hotel staff was too afraid to wake Miss Moody. They decided to let her sleep. Fortunately the fire was small. After ten hours' sleep, Miss Moody woke in a bad mood. No one has had the courage to inform her of the danger she was in.

5 The worst disaster of all!

Tuesday was the big day—the premiere of *The Lady Loves To*. Before it, there was a special reception. Hundreds of important people from the movie industry were invited to greet the beautiful star. They came and they waited ... and waited. Three hours later, Miss Moody's PA to the PA rushed into the room. The explanation? Davina was too upset to attend—she had a broken fingernail and nobody could find the manicurist.

A happy and not so happy ending!

Davina Moody missed the premiere. Perhaps this was fortunate. This morning's newspaper headlines read: DAVINA'S $10,000,000 MOVIE DISASTER. So her movie has flopped, and apparently the manicurist and Mr. Baglioni have quit their jobs and are planning to sell their story to the press.

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

Word endings

1 Look at the common noun endings.

-er	-or	-ist	-ian	-ant

Find a job with each ending in the text on page 55.

2 Use the endings to make more jobs from these words. Sometimes the spelling changes.

art	politics	music	account	decorate	photograph
reception	interpret	science	library	electric	law

CD2 36 Listen, check, and repeat.

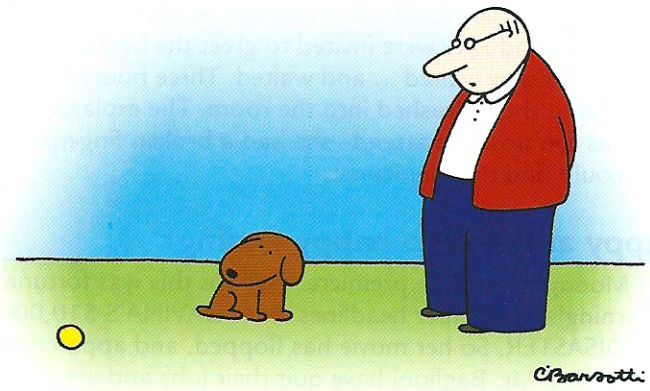
3 Look at the noun and adjective endings.

nouns	-ation	-sion	-ment	-ness	-ence	-al
adjectives	-y	-ly	-ous	-ful	-less	-al

Complete the charts. There are some spelling changes.

Noun	Verb
arrival	_____
trainer	_____
invitation	_____
_____	organize
_____	explain
decision	_____
_____	employ
improvement	_____
discussion	_____
_____	agree
_____	imagine
_____	advertise

Noun	Adjective
mood	_____
friend	_____
fame	_____
_____	patient
_____	happy
_____	kind
_____	different
danger	_____
disaster	_____
beauty	_____
use	_____
help	_____



It's OK. I'm not really in the mood, either.

Pronunciation – word stress

4 CD2 37 Read the groups of nouns, adjectives, and verbs aloud. After each group listen, check, and repeat. Pay attention to the word stress.

1. Two-syllable **nouns** and **adjectives**. Where is the stress?

nouns	beauty	kindness	lawyer	artist	difference
adjectives	noisy	friendly	famous	different	

2. Two-syllable **verbs**. Where is the stress?

arrive	invite	explain	improve	discuss	employ	agree

3. **Nouns** ending in *-tion* and *-sion*. Where is the stress?

invitation	explanation	information
ambition	decision	discussion

4. What is the difference in stress on these pairs of words? Say them aloud.

imagine / imagination	demonstrate / demonstration
politics / politician	photograph / photographer

Talking about you

5 Work with a partner. Circle the correct word in the questions. Ask and answer the questions.

1. Does your teacher have a lot of *patience* / *patient*?
2. Who is the most *patience* / *patient* person you know?
3. What puts you in a bad *mood* / *moody*?
4. Have you ever done anything very *danger* / *dangerous*?
5. What's the *difference* / *different* between an exam and a test?
6. Does your school *employ* / *employment* many teachers? How many?
7. Have you made much *improve* / *improvement* in your English over the last year?
8. What is your main *ambition* / *ambitious* in life?
9. Would you like to be a *politics* / *politician*?
10. What do you think is the secret of *happy* / *happiness*?

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Making conversation 2 – short answers

1 CD2 38 Listen to the conversations. Which answer sounds more polite? What are the differences?

Music *of* English – sounding polite

1 To sound polite, don't just answer *Yes* or *No*. Use the short answer.

CD2 39 Listen and repeat. Pay attention to stress and intonation.

Do you like cooking? *Yes, I do.*

Have you ever been to China? *No, I haven't.*

2 It's also a good idea to add more information.

CD2 40 Listen and repeat.

Do you like cooking? *Yes, I do, especially Italian food.*

Have you ever been to China? *No, I haven't, but I'd love to go one day.*

2 Complete the short answers. Practice with a partner.

1. "Are those new jeans you're wearing?" "No, they _____."
2. "Have you been in the U.S. a long time?" "No, I _____."
3. "Can you play any musical instruments?" "Yes, I _____ actually."
4. "Do you like studying English?" "Yes, I _____."

CD2 41 Listen and check. Did you hear other information? Choose some of the conversations and practice with your partner.



3 Complete the short answers. Then continue the conversation with the correct line from the box.

1. **A** Is it still raining?
   B No, _____ . _____ .
2. **A** Did you see the football game last night?
   B Yes, _____ . _____ .
3. **A** Do you have change for a dollar?
   B No, sorry, _____ . _____ .
4. **A** Have you tried the new pizza place?
   B Yes, _____ . _____ .
5. **A** Are you ambitious?
   B Yes, _____ . _____ .
6. **A** Are you doing anything tonight?
   B No, _____ . _____ ?

I only have a ten-dollar bill
Why? What are *you* doing
It was a great game
It's just stopped
I went there last weekend with Frank
I want to have my own business one day

CD2 42 Listen and check. Choose one of the conversations. Continue it with a partner. Act it out to the class.

4 Think of questions to ask each other. Use these ideas to help you.

- Do you . . . like/play/go/have . . . ?
- Can you . . . ride/speak/run/use . . . ?
- Did you . . . go/have/win/do . . . last night?
- Have you ever . . . been/seen/tried/had . . . ?
- Are you . . . good at/afraid of . . . ?
- Do you have . . . a car/an MP3 player/a pet . . . ?

5 Stand up and ask your questions. Use short answers and give more information in your replies.

8 Dos and don'ts

- **Grammar:** *Have to* • *should* • *must*
- **Vocabulary:** Words that go together

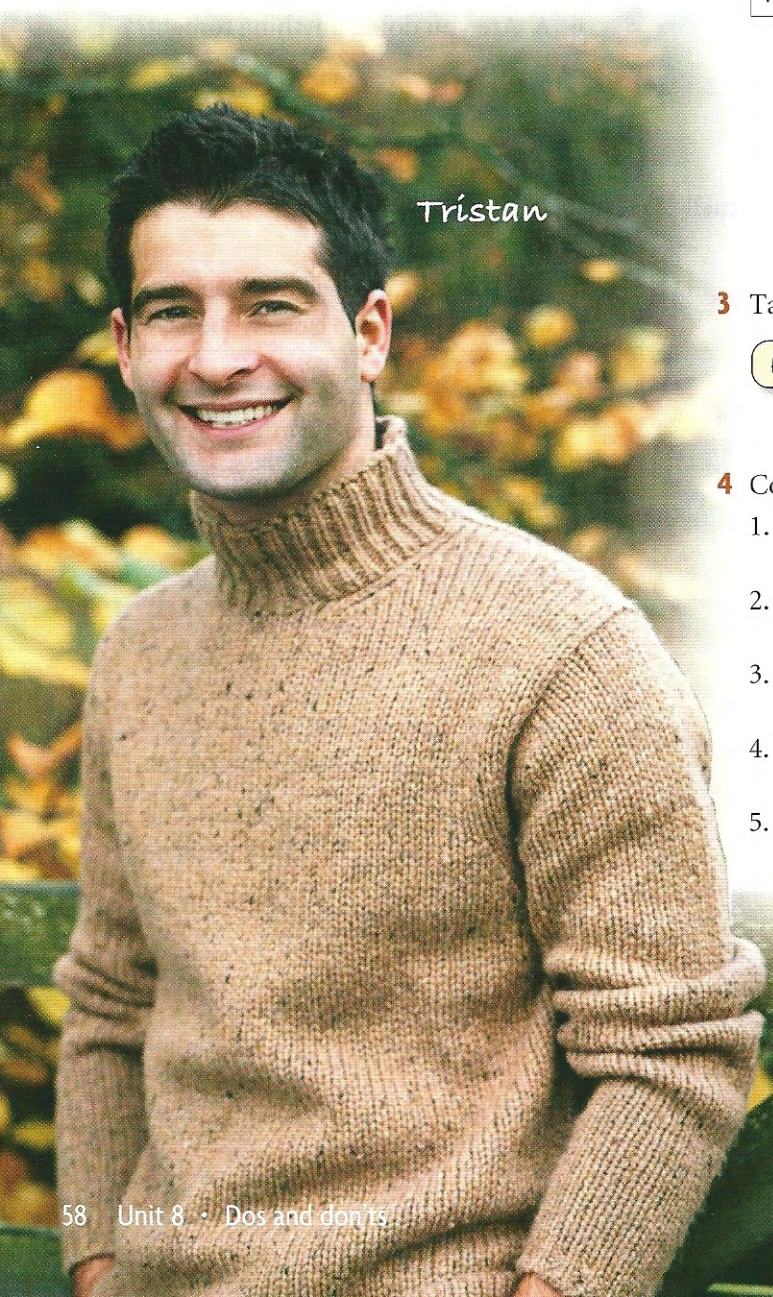
Everyday English: At the doctor's

STARTER

What's true for you? Make sentences about your life.

I have to . . .
- get up early every morning
- work on the weekend
- pay bills

I don't have to . . .
- do the housework
- go to school
- do homework



WHAT'S HIS JOB?

have to

1 CD2 43 Listen to Tristan talking about his job. What do you think his job is? Does he work in the city or the country? Does he like his job?

2 Complete the lines from Tristan's interview with words from the box.

have to	don't have to	Do you have to	had to	didn't have to

I sometimes _____ work at night.
_____ work on weekends?
When I'm on call, I _____ stay in the clinic.
I _____ study for five years.
I _____ look for a job.

3 Talk about Tristan. Change the sentences in Exercise 2 using *he*.

He sometimes has to work at night.

Does he . . . ?

4 Complete the questions and answers about Tristan.

1. "How long _____ he have to _____ ?"
   "About eight to ten hours a day."
2. "_____ he _____ work at night?"
   "Yes, he does."
3. "How long did he _____ to study?"
   "Five years."
4. "Why was he lucky?"
   "Because he didn't _____ look for a job."
5. "What other things _____ Tristan _____ do?"
   "He has to _____ ."

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 *Have* + noun can express possession.

*I **have** a good job.*
*Do you **have** any children?*

2 *Have* + *to* + infinitive expresses obligation.

*He **has to work** odd hours.*
*Do you **have to work** on weekends?*

3 Write the question and negative.

*I **have to** get up early.*

What time _____ you _____ get up?

I _____ get up early.

Put the sentence in the past.

Yesterday I _____ get up early.

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 8.1 p. 131**

PRACTICE

Pronunciation

1 CD2 44 Listen to these sentences. Notice the different pronunciations of *have, has,* and *had.*

1. I **have** /həv/ a good job.
   I **have** /həf/ to work hard.
2. He **has** /həz/ a nice car.
   She **has** /həs/ to get up early.
3. I **had** /hæd/ a good time.
   I **had** /hæt/ to take a test.

Talking about jobs

2 Work with a partner. Choose a job from the box, but don't tell your partner. Ask and answer *Yes/No* questions to find out what the job is.

architect	taxi driver	dentist	farmer	lawyer	nanny
photographer	accountant	optometrist	mechanic	soldier	
hairdresser	chef	politician	nurse	homemaker	plumber

Use these questions to help you.

Do you . . . ?	Do you have to . . . ?	Did you have to . . . ?
• work inside • earn a lot of money • work with people • use a computer	• wear a uniform • work long hours • use your hands • get up early • speak English	• go to college • do a lot of training

Do you have to wear a uniform? — No, I don't.

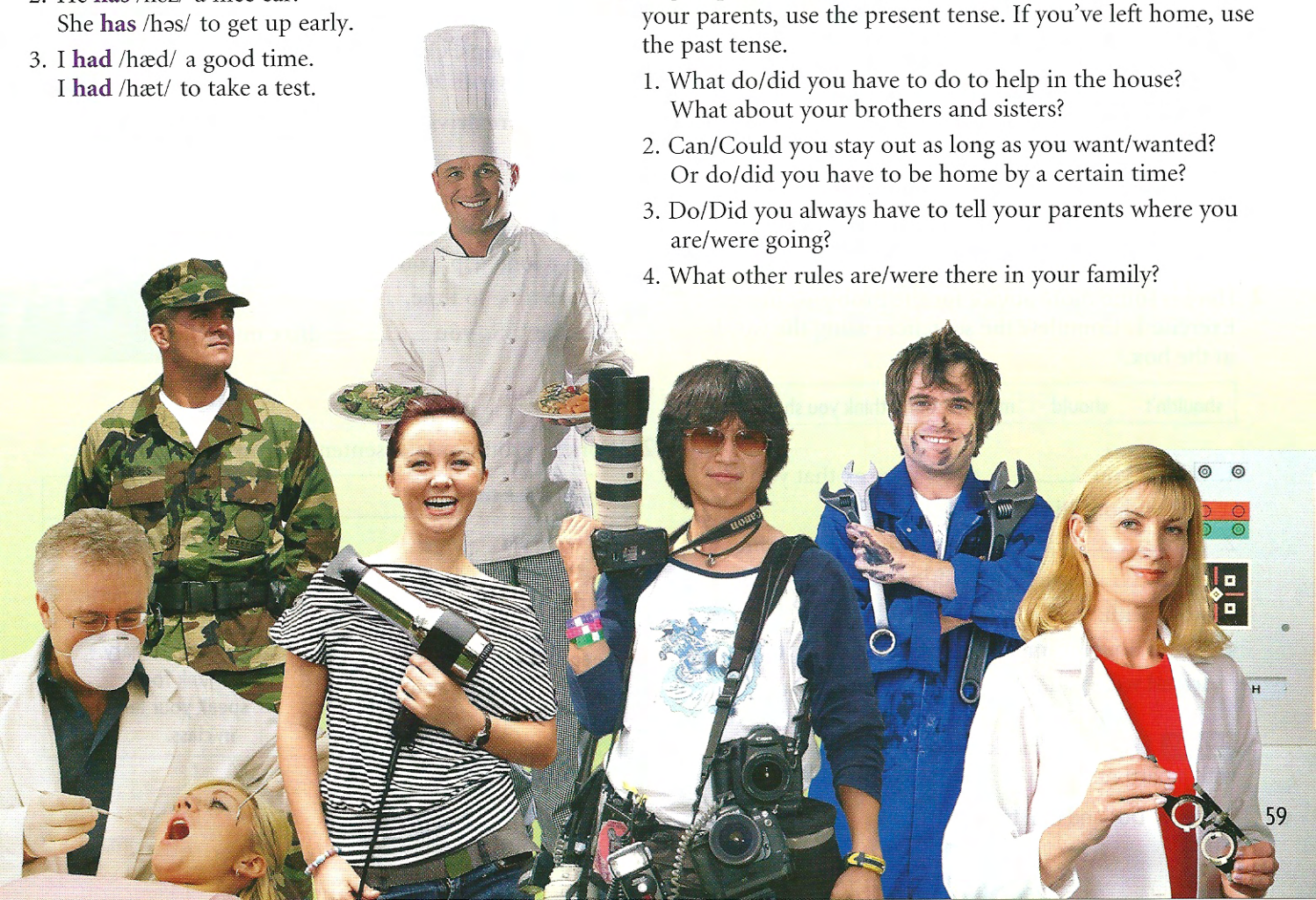
3 Which of the jobs *wouldn't* you like to do? Why?

I wouldn't like to be a farmer because they have to work outside all year.

Talking about you

4 In groups, discuss the questions. If you live at home with your parents, use the present tense. If you've left home, use the past tense.

1. What do/did you have to do to help in the house? What about your brothers and sisters?
2. Can/Could you stay out as long as you want/wanted? Or do/did you have to be home by a certain time?
3. Do/Did you always have to tell your parents where you are/were going?
4. What other rules are/were there in your family?



PROBLEMS, PROBLEMS

should/must

1 Read the problems from a magazine advice column. Match the problems and advice. What other advice would you give?

Problems

1. My ex-boyfriend is going to my best friend's wedding. He was horrible to me. Should I go?
2. There's a group of bullies at school. They're making my life miserable.
3. I've fallen in love with my colleague. Should I tell him?
4. I'm 19. I chat with a guy on the Internet. He wants to meet me. Should I go?

Advice

a. No, you shouldn't. It will only cause problems at work.

b. Of course you should. But look happy and wear a fantastic dress!

c. I don't think you should. You have no idea what he's really like.

d. You must tell your parents and your principal about this.

2 Here is some more advice for the problems in Exercise 1. Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

shouldn't	should	must	don't think you should

1. I think you _____ show your ex that you're fine without him.
2. You _____ let these cowards ruin your life.
3. I _____ have relationships with people you work with.
4. If you do go to meet him, you _____ take a friend with you. This is really important.

CD2 45 Listen and check. Practice the conversations with a partner.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Look at the sentences.

*You **should** go to the wedding.* *You **must** see a doctor.*

Which expresses strong obligation *(it's really necessary)*?
Which expresses a suggestion *(I think it's a good idea)*?

2 *Should* and *must* are modal verbs.

***Should** I go?* *You **shouldn't** see him.* *He **must** be careful.*

Do we use *do/does* in the question and negative?
Do we add *-s* with *he/she/it*?

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 8.2–8.4 p. 131**

3 Work in groups. Read aloud the problems and give advice.

- I can't sleep at night.

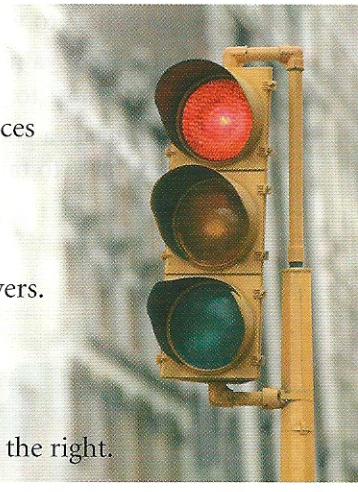
You must exercise more.

You shouldn't drink too much coffee.

- I think I've twisted my ankle.
- I have a big test next week, and I'm really nervous.
- I like my job, but I don't like the people I work with.
- My computer's behaving very strangely.
- I argue a lot with my parents.
- My car's making a funny noise.

PRACTICE

***must* or *should*?**



1 Work in groups. Complete the sentences and phrases with *must* or *should*.

When you're driving, ...

1. you _____ stop at red lights.
2. you _____ be kind to other drivers.
3. you _____ wear a seat belt.
4. On a long trip, you _____ rest from time to time.
5. In the U.S., you _____ drive on the right.

What do you think?

2 Work in groups. Make sentences from the chart.

If you want to ...		
learn English, do well in life, keep fit,	you have to you don't have to you should you shouldn't you must	work hard. play a sport. learn the grammar. go to college. buy a dictionary. eat junk food. speak your language in class.

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Leaving home

1 Discuss the questions.

1. When do young people in your country leave home?
2. What problems are there for young people living away from home for the first time?
3. Look at the photos. Who are the people? Why do you think Ian Mitchell looks worried?

2 CD2 46 Listen to Ian Mitchell, who lives in a small town. He is talking about his daughter, Evie, who has left home to live in New York. Answer the questions.

1. How old is Evie? When did she move to New York?
2. Is she enjoying living there? What does she think of New York?
3. Why did she move there?
4. Where is she living?
5. Who is she living with?
6. What does her boyfriend do? What's his name?
7. What does she do on the weekends?
8. Why does she have to earn extra money?
9. How often does she call home?
10. What does she say to her parents?

3 CD2 47 Listen to Evie talking about her life in New York and answer the questions. Which of her answers are different?

What do you think?

- Should Evie's father be so worried about his daughter?
- Was Evie right to leave home at 18?
- What advice can you give to Evie and her father?

Role play

Work in two groups.

Group A: Parents
Discuss your worries about Evie.

Group B: Evie
Discuss what to tell your parents about your life in New York. What can you say to make them stop worrying?

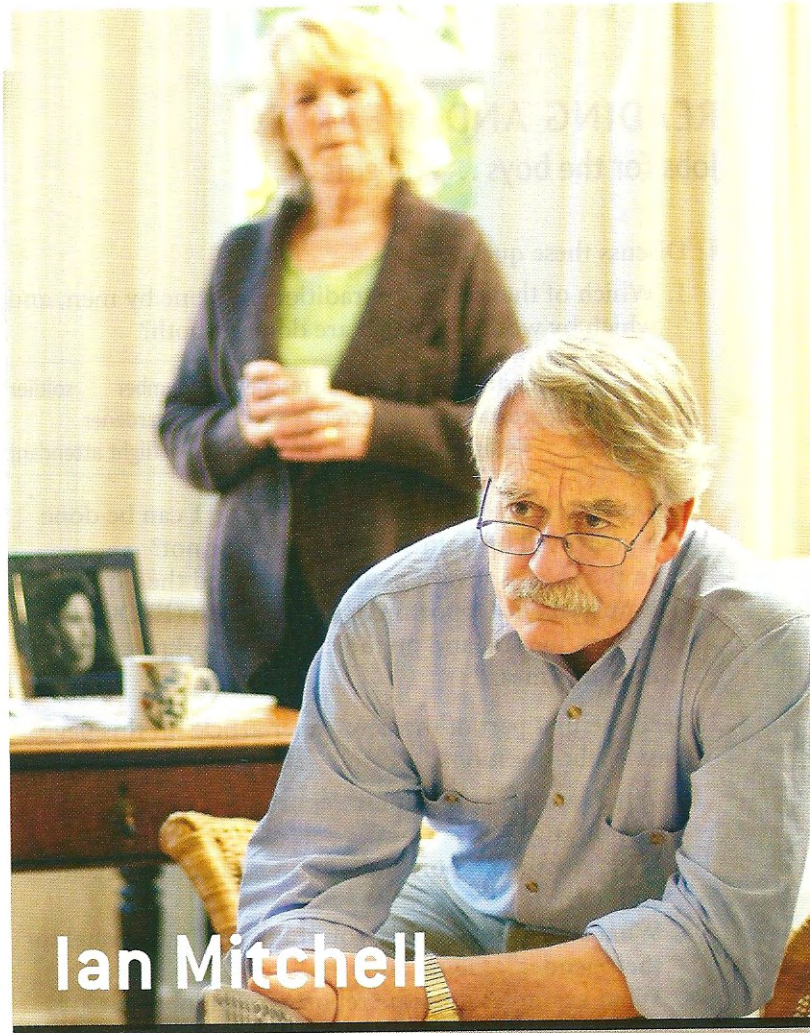
Find a partner from the other group. Role-play a conversation. Start:

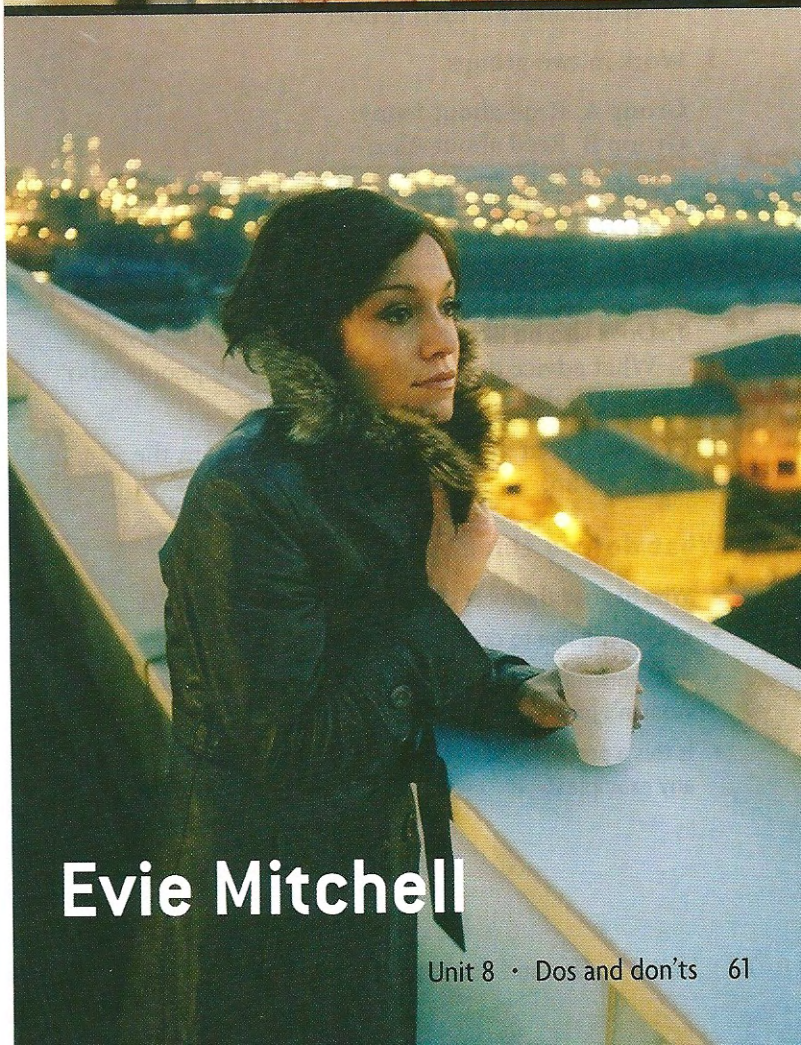
Evie, it's so good to have you home again. We've been so worried about you.

I'm fine. Living in New York is great. You shouldn't worry.

But ...

▶▶ **WRITING** Letters and e-mails *p. 105*





READING AND SPEAKING

Jobs for the boys ... and girls

1 Discuss these questions.

1. Which of these jobs are traditionally done by men, and which by women? Which are done by both?

nurse	construction worker	teacher	plumber	soldier
computer programmer	secretary	chef	gardener	
painter	firefighter	detective	nanny	flight attendant

2. Do you believe *all* the jobs in Exercise 1 can be done equally well by both sexes? If not, why not?
3. In the U.S., a government agency called the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (EEOC) fights sexism, racism, and prejudice in the workplace. What does this mean?

2 Read the first part of the newspaper article on this page. Answer the questions.

1. What was the government report called? What does this mean?
2. What does the report say schools and employers are still doing?
3. What school subjects do you think are "traditional for their gender"? Give examples.
4. What examples does the report give of jobs that are "traditional for their gender"?

3 Work in two groups.

Group A Read about Jenny.
Group B Read about Alex.

4 Answer the questions about your person.

1. What did she/he study?
2. What is she/he doing now? Why?
3. Who has she/he had problems with? Why?
4. Does she/he like the career she/he finally chose?
5. What advice does she/he give to other people who want to do the same thing?

Compare your answers with a partner from the other group.

What do you think?

- Who has had the more difficult time? Jenny or Alex?
- Would you like to do what they did?
- Is it more difficult for women to do men's jobs or men to do women's jobs?
- Is this a problem in your country? Why?/Why not? Can you give any examples?

Jobs for the boys ... and girls

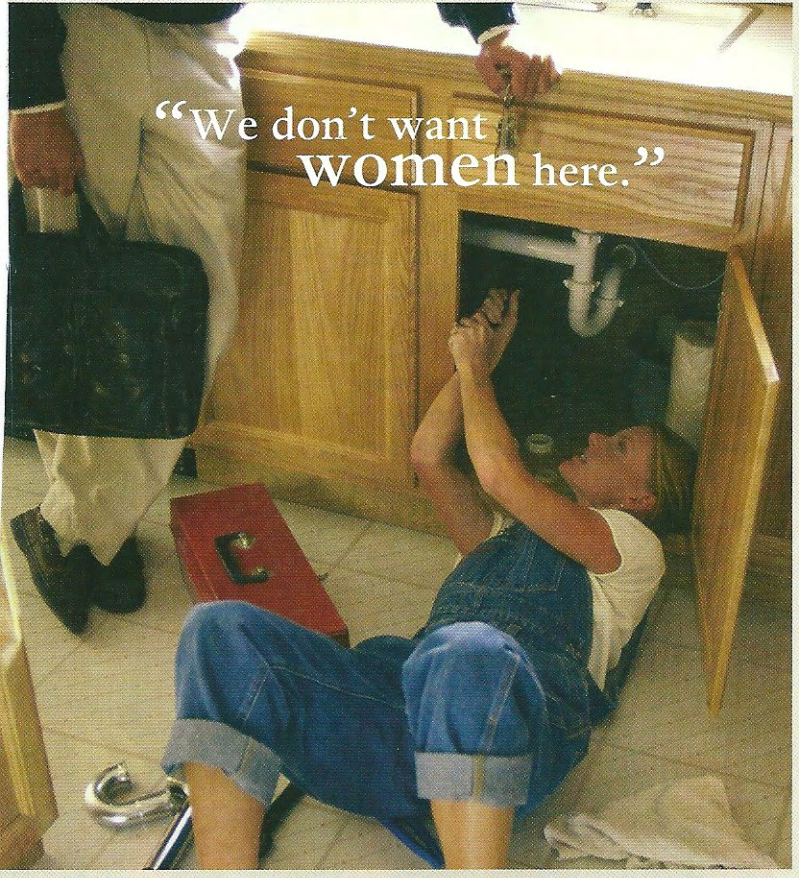
Can you imagine calling a plumber and a woman arriving at the door? Or paying a man to look after your children? Does this seem unusual?

Sally Rice, social affairs correspondent, investigates.

A recent government report called "Free to Choose" says that schools and employers are still recommending some careers only for boys and others only for girls. The government has to take action on this, says the report.

At school, boys and girls continue to study subjects that are traditional for their gender, and they continue to get poor career advice. Employers for some jobs still choose young people because of their gender, not their ability.

For example, less than 3% of men work in childcare in the U.S., and only 1% of women work in construction, engineering, and plumbing. So what's it like for someone to cross the gender gap at work?



Jenny Boland – plumber

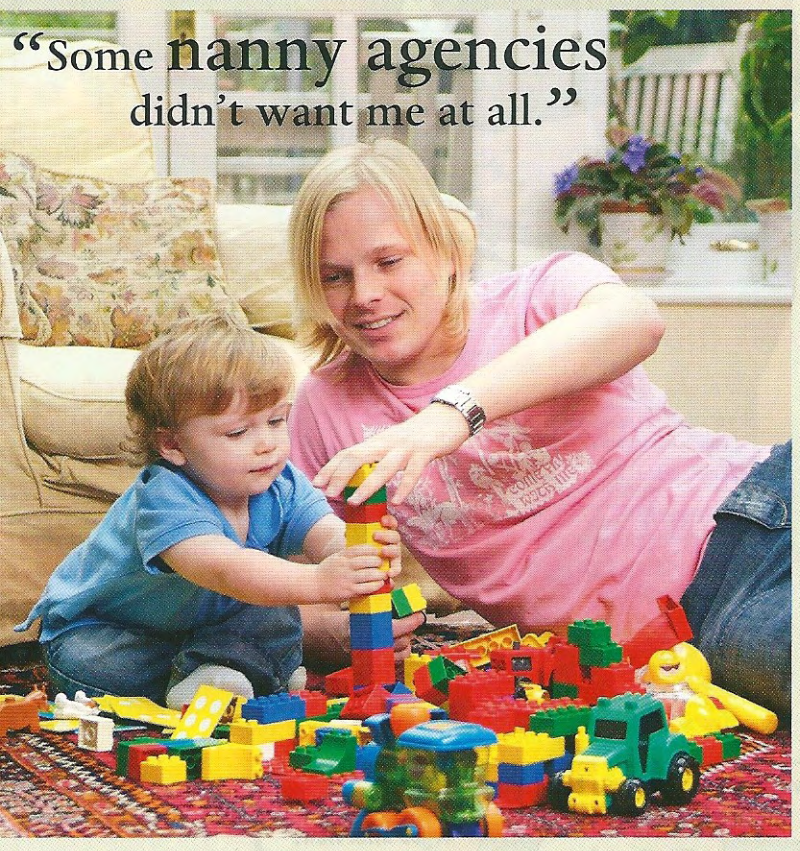
Jenny, a plumber from Detroit, says she has to fight sexism and prejudice every day in her job.

A few years ago, while Jenny was studying psychology in college, she had a problem in her bathroom and had to call a plumber. "I watched the plumber while he was working, and I was fascinated. I wanted to learn how to do it." But she has had a lot of problems with male plumbers from the very beginning.

Jenny says, "Some of them have been really horrible. It's been so difficult to change their negative opinion of me. They are so sure that I can't do plumbing just because I'm female. One employer told me, 'This is a job for big strong men. We don't want women here.'"

But what do the customers think? "Oh, the customers have been great!" she says. "A lot of them actually prefer a female plumber!" Jenny loves her job. "I get so much satisfaction from plumbing. I just love fixing things!"

What is her advice to other women who want to try non-traditional careers? "You should definitely try it, but you have to be tough," she says.



Alex Karlsson – nanny

Alex was an engineering student in New Zealand until three years ago. But he found it boring and decided to come to the U.S. and change careers.

He has always loved children, and now he is a qualified male nanny (or "manny"!) to 18-month-old Jack. But he has had some problems. "There is prejudice. A lot of people don't think that a man can take care of a child as well as a woman. Some nanny agencies didn't want me at all," he said. "Some parents didn't want a man taking care of their children. I had to wait nearly a year for my first job."

But does he like his new career? "I love it!" says Alex. "Jack was 10 weeks old when I started taking care of him. I don't think it's strange to feed him and change his diaper—it's my profession. It's wonderful to be part of his development. I love playing with him, and teaching him things, too."

What is his advice for other men who want to work in childcare. "You should go for it!" he says. "Ignore the prejudice. Just show them you can do it!"

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Words that go together – applying for a job

1 Verbs often go together with certain words and phrases.

apply *for a job*
give *somebody advice*
go *on an interview*

Work with a partner. Match the verbs in **A** with the phrases in **B**. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

A	B
interview	hard
study	engineering
earn	somebody for a job
take care of	a lot of training
have	careers
change	children
work	time with someone
spend	a lot of money
get along	together/with somebody

2 CD2 48 Alex has applied for the job of nanny to baby Jack. Jack's mother, Rachel, is interviewing him. Listen and answer the questions.

1. Why did Alex choose a career as a nanny?
2. How long did he have to study?
3. How many men were in his training course?
4. What did he learn from the course?
5. What does Rachel want Alex to do before she offers him the job?
6. What question does Alex ask?

3 Listen again. Use the phrases from **A** and **B** in Exercise 1 to talk about Alex with your partner.

Rachel is interviewing Alex for the job of ... **Alex was studying ...**



Compound nouns

4 Two nouns can go together to make a new noun.

child + care = childcare

Music *of* English – word stress

CD2 49 Listen and mark the stress. Is it on the first or second word?

childcare *job interview* *training course*

Listen again and repeat.

5 Match the nouns from **A** with nouns from **B** to make compound nouns. They are all from this unit.

A		B	
hair	flight	message	ticket
country	home	column	attendant
text	plane	maker	side
advice	fire	fighter	dresser

CD2 50 Listen, check, and repeat.

6 Choose a compound noun and give a definition to the class. Can they guess the word(s)?

This is what you have to have before you get a job.

That's right.

A job interview.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

At the doctor's

1 Match these illnesses with the pictures.

a sore throat	diarrhea
a cold	the flu
food poisoning	a twisted ankle





2 Read the symptoms and complete the illnesses.

Symptoms	Illnesses
1. I can't stop sneezing and blowing my nose.	I have _____ .
2. I keep throwing up, and I have diarrhea.	I have _____ .
3. It hurts when I walk.	I've _____ .
4. I have a stomachache, and I keep going to the toilet.	I have _____ .
5. My glands are swollen, and it hurts when I swallow.	I have _____ .
6. I have a temperature, my whole body aches, and I feel awful.	I have _____ .









CD2 51 Listen and practice saying the symptoms and illnesses in pairs.

3 CD2 52 You will hear a conversation between Manuel, a student from Chile, and a doctor. Answer the questions.

1. What are Manuel's symptoms?
2. What is the doctor's diagnosis?
3. What advice does she give him?
4. What does she prescribe?

4 CD2 52 Listen again and complete the lines of conversation with the exact words you hear.

1. What _____ the matter?
2. I haven't _____ for a few days.
3. I have _____ temperature, ...
4. I've _____ a few times.
5. Let me _____ at you.
6. Have you _____ which might have disagreed with you?
7. Well, you _____ get some rest, ...
8. Drink _____ liquids, and just take _____ for a while.
9. You _____ the prescription to a _____ .



Compare answers with a partner.

5 Look at the audio script on page 118. Practice the conversation with a partner.

6 Make similar conversations with other symptoms.

9 Going places

- **Grammar:** Time clauses • *if*
- **Vocabulary:** Hot verbs *make, do, take, get*
- **Everyday English:** Directions

STARTER Make sentences about you using the phrases in the box. Tell the class.

If the weather is nice this weekend,	I think I'll . . .
If the weather isn't nice this weekend,	I'll probably . . .
When I get home tonight,	I'm going to . . .

A YEAR ABROAD

Time and conditional clauses

1 James and Jessie, both 18, are going to take a year off before they go to college. Look at the photos. What are their plans?

2 CD3 2 Listen to James. Match the sentence halves.

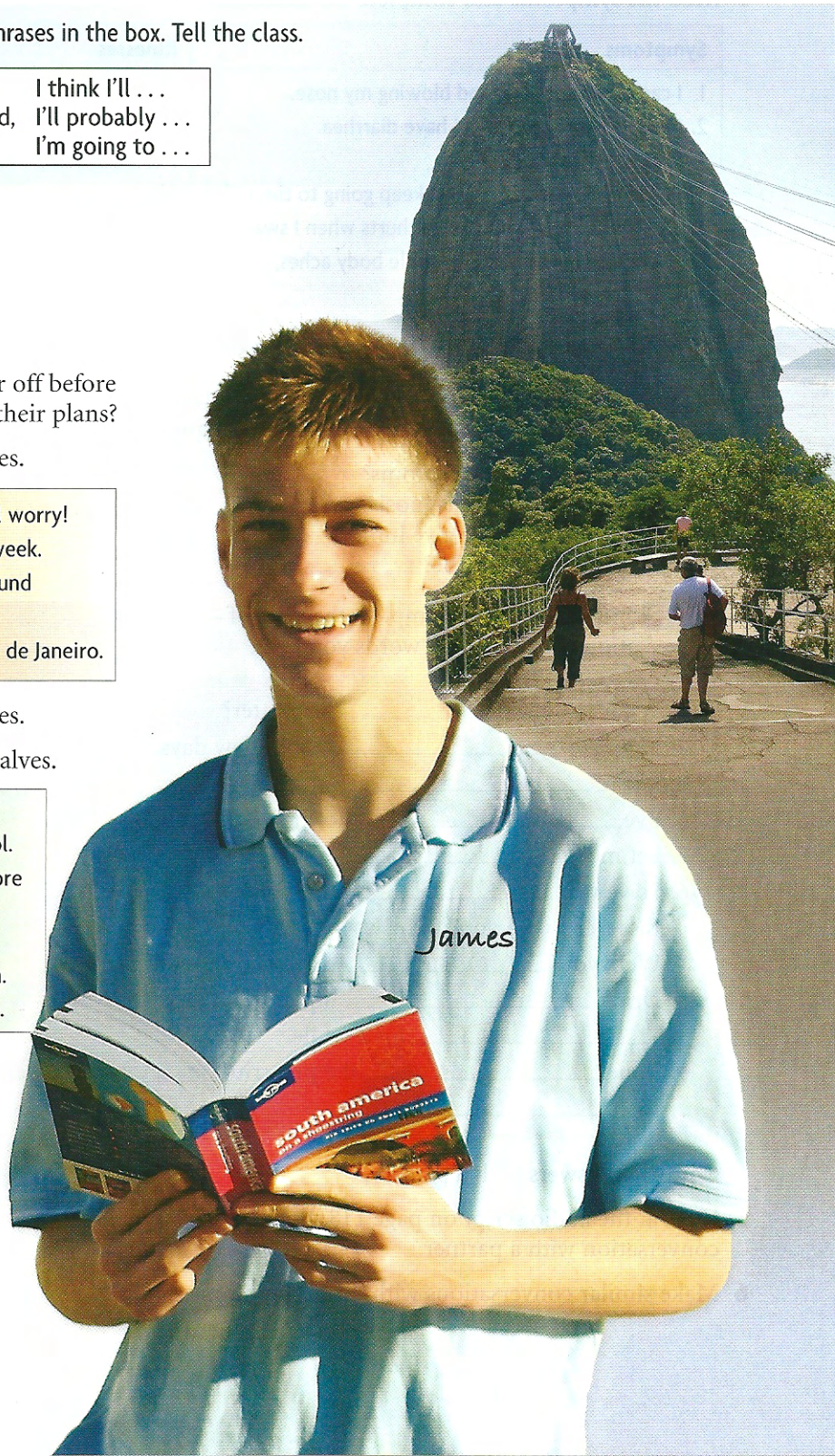
1. Before I go to college,	I know my parents will worry!
2. As soon as I have enough money,	I'll call home twice a week.
3. When I'm traveling around,	I'm going to travel around South America.
4. If I don't keep in touch,	I'll book a flight to Rio de Janeiro.

3 Cover the **orange** box. Try to say the full sentences.

4 CD3 3 Listen to Jessie and match the sentence halves.

1. I'm going to work in an old people's home	after the job ends.
2. I'll also live in the home	as soon as I finish school.
3. I'll work	if I have a vacation before school starts!
4. I'm going to Florida with some friends	until I've saved enough money for a vacation.
5. I won't be tired	while I'm working there.

5 CD3 2 and CD3 3 Listen again to James and Jessie and check.



GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Underline the words that introduce the clauses in the green boxes.

Before I go to college
after the job ends

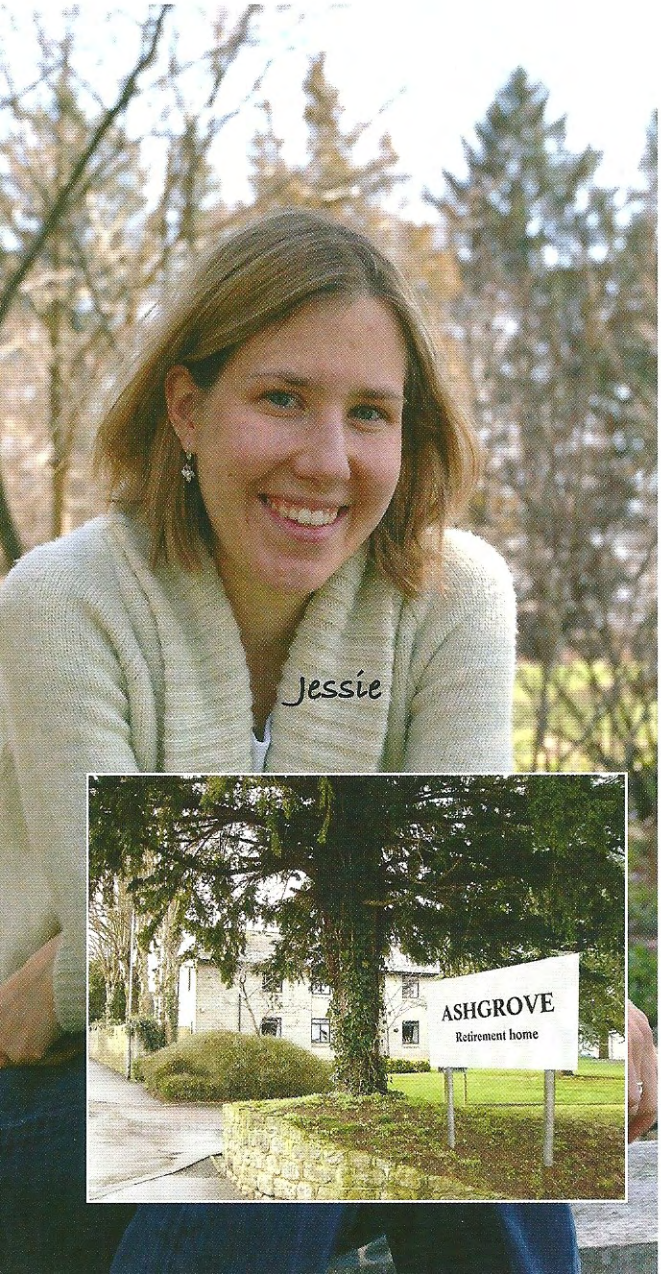
2 Which tenses are the verbs in the green boxes? Do they refer to the present or the future?

3 What are the different future forms in the orange boxes?

4 What's the difference between the sentences? Which is sure? Which is possible?

***When** I go traveling, I'll send you lots of postcards.*
***If** I go traveling, I'll send you lots of postcards.*

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 9.1–9.3 p. 132**

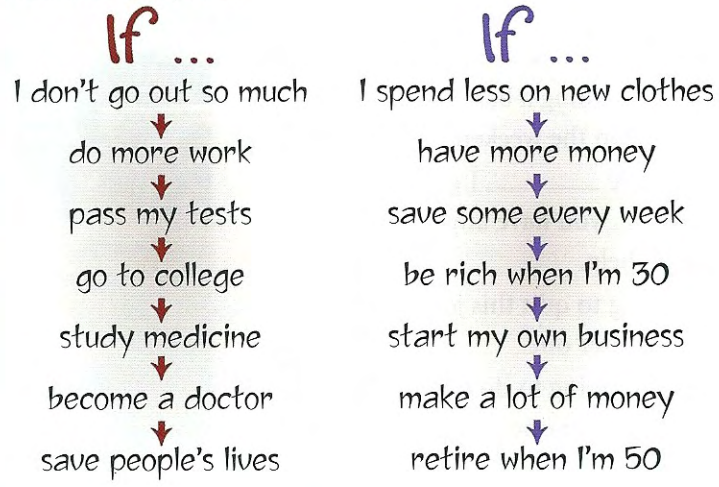


PRACTICE

What if . . . ?

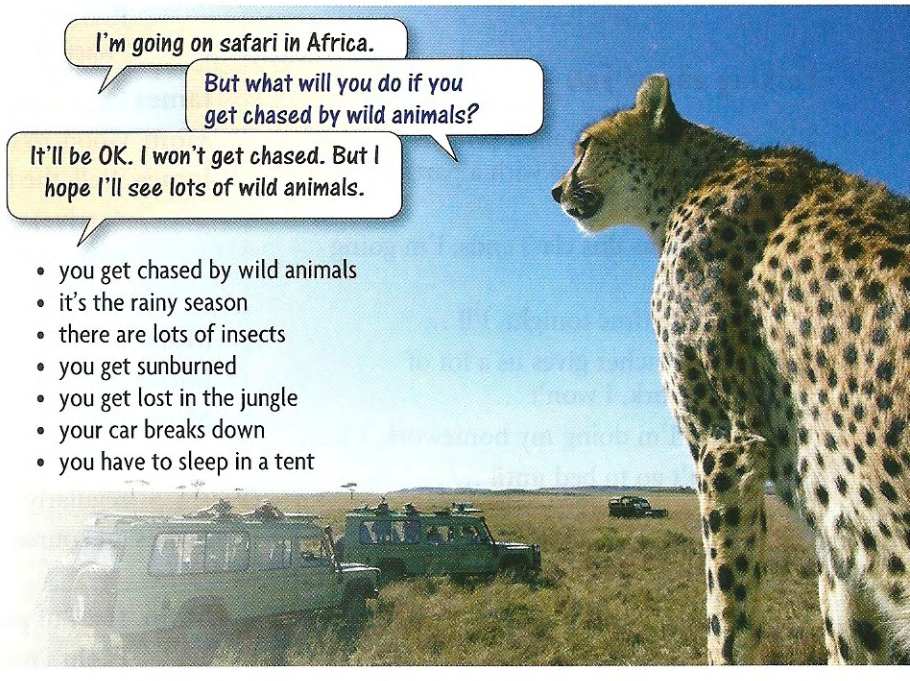
1 Look at these hopes for the future. Make sentences using *If . . . , I'll . . .*

If I don't go out so much, I'll do more work.
If I do more work, I'll . . .



What will you do if . . . ?

2 Work with a partner. One of you is going on safari in Africa. The other sees lots of problems. Use the ideas below to help you.



- you get chased by wild animals
- it's the rainy season
- there are lots of insects
- you get sunburned
- you get lost in the jungle
- your car breaks down
- you have to sleep in a tent

CD3 4 Listen and compare. Look at the audio script on page 118 and practice the conversation with a partner.

3 Make a similar conversation about one of these topics.

learning to snowboard	going mountain climbing
quitting your job to travel the world	joining the army

Discussing grammar

4 Complete the sentences with *when, if, before, as soon as,* or *until.* Sometimes more than one answer is possible. Compare answers with a partner.

1. I'll take a bath _____ I go to bed.
2. I'm coming to Chicago tomorrow. I'll call you _____ I arrive.
3. We're planning a barbecue _____ it's nice on the weekend.
4. Wait here _____ I get back.
5. _____ you have any problems, just ask for help.
6. I'm going to quit this job _____ I find a better one.
7. I'm only going to do this job _____ I find a better one.
8. I want to get home _____ it gets dark.
9. I'm going to study English _____ I'm completely fluent.
10. Don't forget to give me your address _____ you leave.

Talking about you

5 Complete the sentences with your ideas. Compare your ideas with a partner, then with the class.

1. As soon as this class ends, I'm going to ...
2. If I have time tonight, I'll ...
3. If our teacher gives us a lot of homework, I won't ...
4. While I'm doing my homework, I'll ...
5. I won't go to bed until ...
6. If I go on vacation this summer, I'll probably ...
7. When my English is fluent, I'm going to ...
8. As soon as I'm earning a good salary, I'll ...
9. Before I get old, I'm going to ...
10. When I'm old, I won't ...

When I get to Rio ...

6 James (from page 66) is leaving for Rio de Janeiro. He's saying good-bye to his mother. Put the verbs in parentheses in the correct tense. Put *if, when, while,* or *as soon as* into each box.



Mom Bye, sweetie. Have a good flight to Rio. Remember, we're expecting (expect) a phone call from you [when] you get there!

James I _____ (call) you [ ] I arrive at Paolo's house.

Mom Good. What time will you get there?

James Well, the flight takes twelve hours. [ ] the plane _____ (arrive) on time, I _____ (be) there about 11:30—Rio time, of course. [ ] you _____ (be) asleep when I call, I _____ (leave) a message.

Mom I won't be asleep!

James OK! OK! Don't worry, Mom. I'll be fine.

Mom All right. But [ ] you _____ (travel) around the country, _____ you _____ (remember) to call us regularly? Make sure you call twice a week.

James Of course! And I _____ (call) you [ ] I _____ (run out of) money!

Mom Ha! But please take care of yourself. Give my best wishes to Paolo's parents, and don't forget to give them this present [ ] you _____ (get) to their house.

James Don't worry. I won't. Oh, my flight _____ (board)! Love you, Mom. Bye!

Mom Love you, James. Take care!

CD3 5 Listen and check. Practice the conversation with a partner.

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

Hot verbs – *make*, *do*, *take*, and *get*

Make, *do*, *take*, and *get* are common verbs in English. Read these examples from Exercise 6 on page 68.

What time will you **get there**?
... the flight **takes twelve hours**.
Make sure you call twice a week.
Take care!

make and *do*

1 Add the words and phrases to the correct columns.

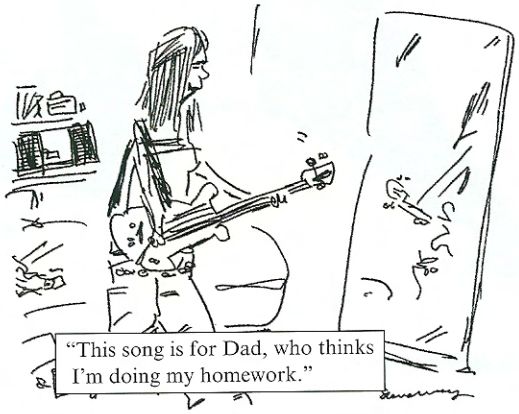
~~friends~~	the dishes	up your mind	
me a favor	my best	a fortune	noise

MAKE	DO
friends	

2 Complete the sentences with a phrase and *make* or *do* in the correct form.

1. I _____ last night. It's your turn tonight.
2. Please tell the children not to _____. I'm trying to work.
3. I _____, but I still failed the test.
4. I don't know if I want the chicken or the fish. I just can't _____.
5. My sister's very popular. She _____ very easily.
6. Could you _____ and give me a ride to the station? Thanks.
7. My grandfather _____ in business. He's a rich man.

CD3 | 6 Listen and check.



take and *get*

3 Add the words and phrases to the correct columns.

~~a photo~~	a cold	angry	a long time	care	better
two tablets a day		along well with		ready	a degree

TAKE	GET
a photo	

4 Complete the sentences with a phrase and *take* or *get* in the correct form.

1. Everybody smile! I want to _____ of you all.
2. I know my bedroom's a mess, but don't _____. I'll clean it soon.
3. Bye-bye! See you soon. _____ of yourself.
4. Achoo! Oh dear. I think I'm _____.
5. The doctor told me to _____ until I _____.
6. I like Ines very much. I _____ her.
7. It _____ to become really fluent in a foreign language.
8. If you don't hurry up and _____, we'll be late for the party.
9. I'm going to _____ in Spanish before I move to Mexico.

CD2 | 7 Listen and check.

Talking about you

5 Complete the questions with the correct form of *make*, *do*, *take*, and *get*.

1. How long does it _____ you to _____ ready in the morning?
2. What time did you _____ to school today?
3. Do you always _____ your homework?
4. Do you sometimes _____ mistakes in English?
5. When did you last _____ angry?
6. Who usually _____ the dishes in your family?
7. Did you _____ many photos on your last trip?
8. Do you know anyone who has _____ a lot of money?
9. Is your English _____ better?
10. Would you like to _____ a degree in another language?

CD3 | 8 Listen and check. Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Give true answers.

READING AND SPEAKING

Travel addicts

1 Write down three reasons why people travel abroad. Compare ideas with the class. Do you think traveling can become addictive?

2 Read the title and the introduction to the article. When do people usually take a year off? Why do you think it's hard to come home after a year away?

3 Read the article. Put these lines in the right space *a–d.*

1. until we find a way to escape
2. As soon as I have enough, I'll be off on my next trip around the world
3. If I see just one travel brochure,
4. And when I've finished that, I'll start Portuguese

4 Work with a partner. Read about Ben and his friends. Underline the mistakes in the summaries. Correct them.

BEN

Ben returned from his travels just three months ago and now he wants to go traveling again. He spent two years traveling with his wife, Jane. They visited 31 countries, including Australia, Fiji, and Vietnam, and got married on a beach in Thailand. It was the best time of their lives but now they are happy to settle down back home.

SANDIE and IAN

Ben met Sandie and her husband, Ian, when he was in Sydney. They are hoping to marry next year and spend a year traveling again on their honeymoon. They both have stressful jobs as lawyers but they enjoy their work.

REBECCA

Ben met Rebecca when she was working for a computer company in Australia. Now she's back home and looking for work. She's enjoying telling all her friends and family about her time abroad.

What do you think?

- Why do people become travel addicts? Do you think they are looking for something or running away from something?
- Why are travelers' friends and family often not interested in their experiences?

Discussion

1. Make a list of five places in the world you'd like to go to. Say why.
2. In groups compare your lists. Discuss as a class which are the most popular places.



TRAVEL ADDICTS

"Spending a year abroad isn't just for young people. But before you give up your job, remember that coming home is the hardest part," says travel addict **Ben Williams**.

My name is Ben. I am 32 years old and I am a travel addict. I've been back home now for almost six months, but I know that I will always be an addict. (a)_____ I know I will want to go away again.

Two years ago I was on an island in Fiji, at the start of a year-long break that took me and my wife, Jane, to 14 countries. We watched fireworks over the Sydney Opera House on New Year's Eve, saw the sun rise over the temples of Angkor Wat in Cambodia, and spent my 31st birthday on a Thai beach.

It was without doubt the best year of our lives. No work, no boss, no worries. No grey skies of Seattle, just carefree months going into the distance. True, there wasn't much money, but it didn't matter.

We loved having the freedom to go where we wanted, when we wanted. If we liked a place, we stayed. If not, we just got the next bus out. We only had one worry in the world. We knew we had to return to the U.S.

"We loved having the freedom, but coming back was awful."

Coming back was awful. We had huge debts, and we had to find work. The routine of getting up, going to work, going home, eating, sleeping, and getting up again is just about killing me. I'm finding it difficult to do what other people tell me to do.

Before I went traveling, I worried about earning more money, buying a bigger car, a house, etc. Now that I'm back, I don't care about those things any more. I'm living like a student again, and saving all my money. (b)_____.

Sandie & Ian's story ...

While I was traveling, I met other people like me. Sandie, 28, and Ian, 33, got married and spent a year traveling on their honeymoon. We met on a beach in Thailand. They were both IT consultants with stressful jobs. Now that they are home, they are making big changes to their lives. "Work just isn't so important anymore," says Sandie. "But I suppose we'll have to stay in these jobs (c)_____."

Rebecca's story ...

I met Rebecca, 26, in Australia during her round-the-world trip. Now she's back home, and she's also having trouble re-adjusting to life. "It's terrible," she says. "During the first couple of weeks back at work, I couldn't sit at my computer. Nobody understands. My parents and friends just aren't interested in my experiences. I don't know why. It was such an important time in my life. I keep looking at my photos, so that I won't forget."

For me too, I wonder if life back home will ever feel normal again. Next week I'm starting a class at night to learn Spanish. (d)_____. They'll be very useful languages in South America!

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Going nowhere

1 Do you know anybody that *doesn't* like traveling abroad? Who? Why? In groups write a list of reasons why people don't want to travel.

Some people are afraid of flying.
People who have pets don't want to leave them.

2 Look at the photos. Why do you think these people don't want to travel?

CD3 9 Listen to a radio program called *People and Places*. Answer the questions.

1. Were any of their reasons on your list?
2. What main reason does each person give?

3 Who gives these reasons? Write R (Roger), A (Ana), or J (Jean-Claude).

_____ 1. Tourism is destroying our planet.

_____ 2. Going away is too much trouble. It's not worth it.

_____ 3. I would be hungry all the time.

_____ 4. You can see everything on TV these days.

_____ 5. I don't like being a tourist.

_____ 6. When you get home you have a mountain of mail.

_____ 7. My country can give me everything.

_____ 8. Traveling by plane is bad for the environment.

_____ 9. I love Europe for its history and traditions.

CD3 9 Listen again and check.

4 Answer the questions.

1. Which places abroad have they been to? When and why? What did they think of them?
2. What do their partners think about their unwillingness to travel?

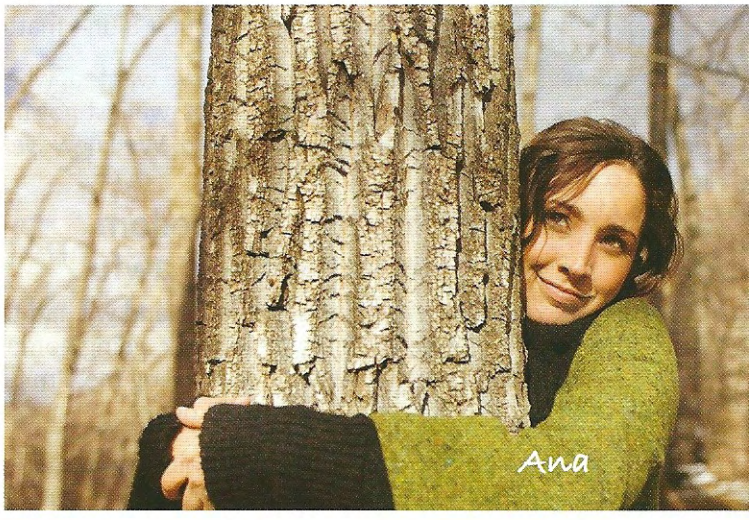
What do you think?

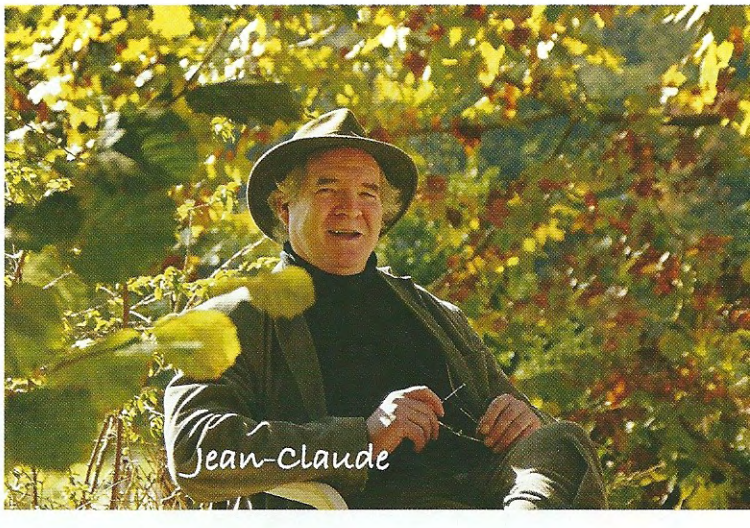
Discuss the questions.

- What are the tourist destinations in your country?
- Are they being ruined by too many visitors?
- Think of a place that is very popular in the world, but which you have no desire to visit. Why don't you want to go there?

WRITING Discussing pros and cons *p. 107*





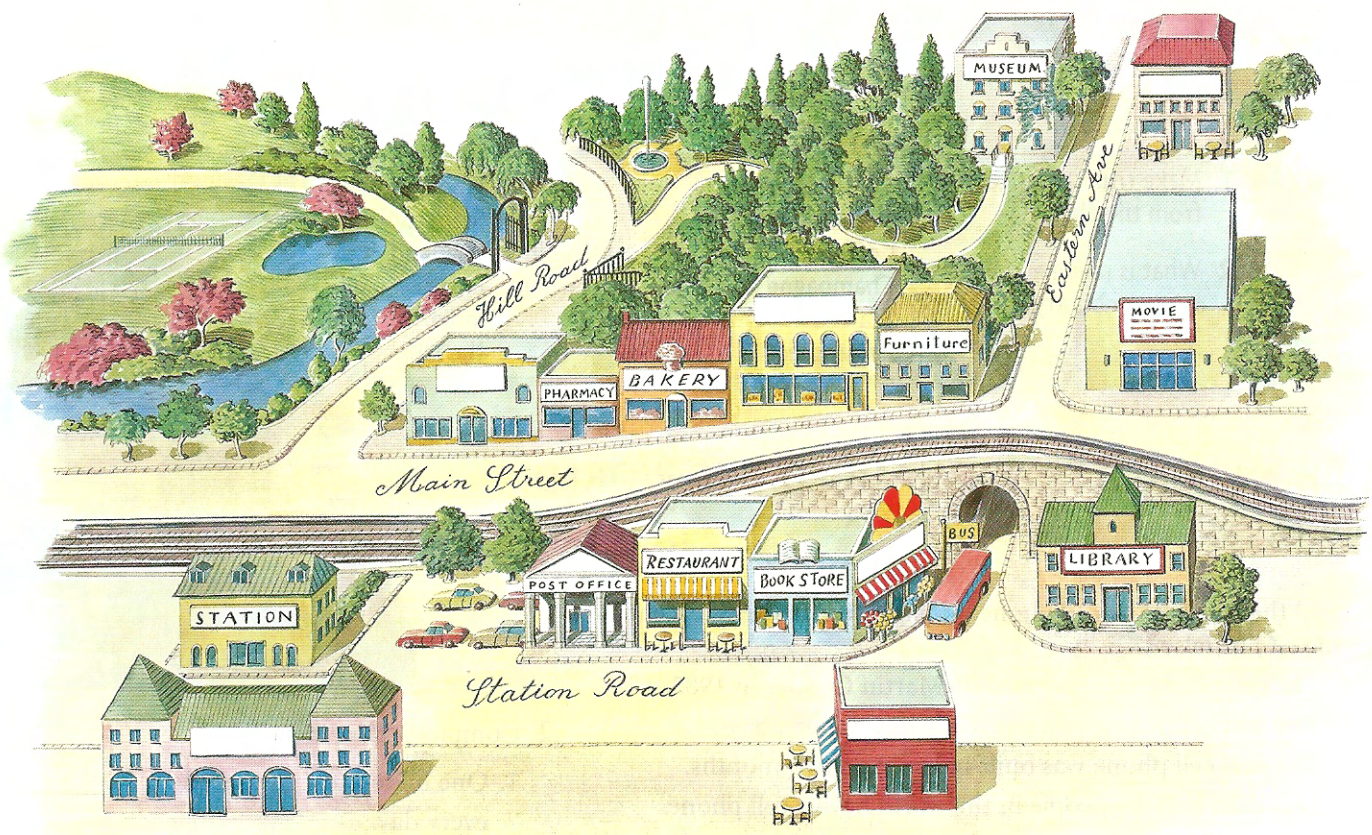


EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Directions

1 Look at the map of Pleasantville and find these things:

- a park
- woods
- a pond
- a path
- a hill
- a bridge
- a gate



2 Read these descriptions and add the places to the map.

coffee shop (x2)	hotel	bank
supermarket	flower shop	

1. The hotel is on Station Road, across from the train station.
2. The bank is on the corner of Main Street and Hill Road. It is next to the pharmacy.
3. The supermarket is between the bakery and the furniture store.
4. There is a bus stop in front of the flower shop.
5. There are two coffee shops. The Big Jolt is on Eastern Avenue, behind the movie theater, and the Java is on Station Road, across from the flower shop.

3 Ask and answer questions with a partner about the other places. Use the prepositions from Exercise 2.

Where's the library?

It's on the corner of Station Road and Eastern Avenue, across from the flower shop.

4 Complete the directions from the tennis court to the museum with the prepositions in the box. Look at the map to help you.

past	up	down	over	into (x2)	out of	across	through (x2)

You go *down* the path, _____ the pond, _____ the bridge, and _____ the gate. Then you go _____ the road. Take the path _____ the park and _____ the woods. When you come _____ the woods, just follow the path _____ the steps and _____ the museum. It takes about five minutes or less.

CD3 10 Listen and check.

5 Give your partner directions to get to your home from your school.

10 Things that changed the world

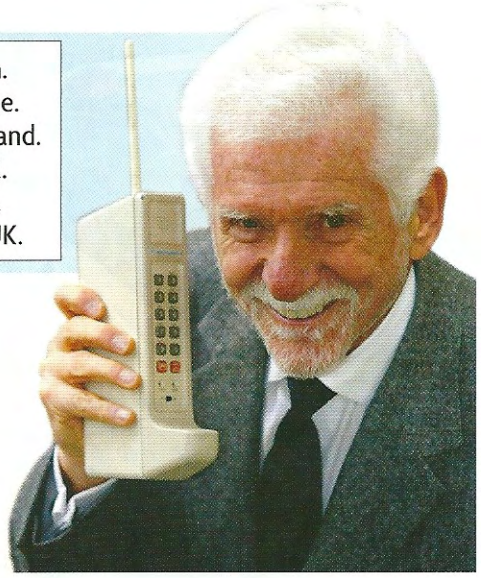
- **Grammar:** Passives
- **Vocabulary:** Verbs and nouns that go together
- **Everyday English:** Making phone calls

STARTER

1 Make true sentences from the chart.

2 What is made and grown in your country?

Rolls-Royce cars Nikon cameras Coffee Champagne Tea Pineapples	is are	made in grown in	Japan. France. Thailand. Brazil. India. the UK.



A PHONE CALL THAT CHANGED THE WORLD

Passives

1 Read the story of the cell phone on page 75. Are these sentences true (✓) or false (✗)?

1. The cell phone was invented by Martin Cooper in 1983.
2. The first cell phone call was made to Cooper's boss.
3. The first cell phone was built in less than two months.
4. Less than half the people in the world have a cell phone.
5. "Smart phones" are only used to send e-mail.
6. Cell phones aren't used in poor countries.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Many of the verb forms in the text are in the passive.

*Cell phones **are owned** by over 3 billion people.*
*The first cell phone **was built** in 1973.*

How do we make passive forms?

2 Read the text again. Write the passive verb forms in the chart.

Present Simple	Past Simple	Present Perfect	*will* future
are owned	*was built*		

Grammar Reference 10.1 page 133

2 Complete the sentences.

1. One billion text messages _____ every day.
2. Nokia _____ Finland.
3. The first cell phone network _____ Japan.
4. The first text message _____ in 1989.
5. Phones _____ for three-year-old children.
6. Climbers _____ from mountaintops.
7. Who knows what cell phones _____ for in the future.

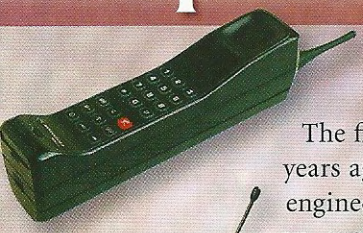
CD3 11 Listen and check. Practice the sentences.

3 What can you do on your cell phone? What do you think they will be used for in the future?

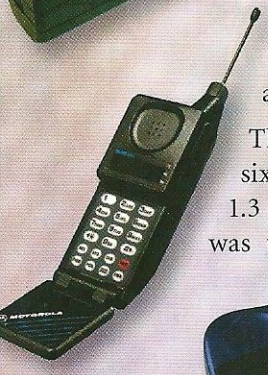
Perhaps they'll be used as credit cards.

Maybe they'll be used as passports.

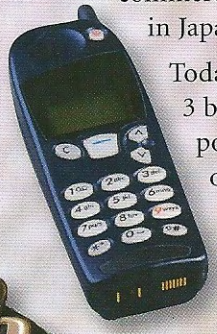
A phone call that changed the world



The first cell-phone call was made over 30 years ago, on April 3, 1973, by an American engineer named Martin Cooper. He called an engineer at a rival company to boast about his new invention!



The first phone was designed and built in about six weeks. It was over 20 cm long and weighed 1.3 kilograms. The battery died if the phone was used for more than 36 minutes. The first commercial cell phone network was built in Japan in 1979.



Today, cell phones are owned by over 3 billion people (more than half the population of the planet). They operate in about 90% of the world. In some places, for example Italy and Hong Kong, there are more mobile phones than people!

Today's cell phones are used for much more than just making phone calls. The first text message was sent in 1989. Now one billion messages are sent every day. Camera phones have been sold since around 2002, and "smart phones" can send e-mails and surf the Web. In some countries, TV shows are broadcast directly to cell phones.

Nokia, which is based in Finland, is the world's largest manufacturer of cell phones. They have even made a phone with gold and diamonds. Phones have even been designed for children as young as three years old.

Cell phones are also making the world a better place. In poor countries, they are used by farmers to find the best price for their crops. Climbers have been rescued from mountaintops thanks to cell phones, and microscopes have been added to some phones to help doctors in remote places. Who knows what cell phones will be used for in the future?











Active and passive

4 Complete the sentences with an active or passive form.

	Active	Passive
1.	They make Rolls-Royce cars in the UK.	Rolls-Royce cars *are made* in the UK.
2.	They _____ tea in India.	Tea is grown in India.
3.	Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone in 1876.	The telephone _____ by Alexander Graham Bell in 1876.
4.	Thieves _____ two pictures from the museum last night.	Two pictures were stolen from the museum last night.
5.	They have built three new factories this year.	Three new factories _____ this year.
6.	They _____ the picture for $5,000.	The picture has been sold for $5,000.
7.	The factory will produce 10,000 cars next year.	10,000 cars _____ next year.
8.	_____ they _____ many cars last year?	Were many cars made last year?
9.	Bell didn't invent television.	Television _____ by Bell.

PRACTICE

Active and passive

1 What is paper made of? Who invented it? Read "The History of Paper" and check your ideas.

2 Read the text again. Put the verbs in parentheses in the correct tense, active or passive.

CD3 12 Listen and check.

Questions and answers

3 Match the question words and answers.

	Ts'ai Lun.
When? (x2)	About 300 kg
Where? (x2)	In Spain.
Who/by?	In 105 AD.
How long?	Since the 18th century.
How much?	In China.
	In the 10th century.

4 Write the questions, using the passive. Ask and answer them with a partner.

When was paper invented?

In 105 AD.

CD3 13 Listen and check.

5 Correct these sentences.

1. Paper is only used to make newspapers and books.
   No, it isn't. It's used to make hundreds of everyday things.
2. All clothes are made out of paper.
   No, they aren't. Only some . . .
3. Before paper, people wrote on trees.
4. Paper was invented by a Chinese scientist.
5. The Chinese gave their invention to the world immediately.
6. The Chinese made paper out of wood.
7. The first paper mill in Europe was built in France.
8. Most paper has been made out of cloth since the 18th century.

CD3 14 Listen and check.

Check it

6 Underline the correct word or words in each sentence.

1. Where *was / were* these shoes made?
2. I was given this watch *by / from* my uncle.
3. Someone *has stolen / has been stolen* my bag!
4. The newsstand *sells / is sold* stamps.
5. British policemen *don't carry / aren't carried* guns.
6. Have all the sandwiches *eaten / been eaten*?



The History of Paper

Today, paper (1)_____ (use) for hundreds of everyday things—books and newspapers, of course, but also money, stamps, cups, bags, and even some clothes.

Long ago, before paper, people (2)_____ (write) on animal skins, bones, and stones. Then in 2700 BC, the Egyptians (3)_____ (start) to make papyrus, which was similar to paper. But the first real paper (4)_____ (invent) in 105 AD by a Chinese government official, Ts'ai Lun. It (5)_____ (make) from a mixture of plants and cloth. The Chinese (6)_____ (keep) their invention secret for centuries.

Finally, in the 10th century, paper (7)_____ (bring) to Europe by the Arabs. The first European paper mill (8)_____ (build) in Spain in 1150. Since the 18th century, most paper (9)_____ (make) out of wood, because it is much stronger than cloth.

Nowadays, each person (10)_____ (use) about 300 kg of paper every year. That's a lot of paper!

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

Verbs and nouns that go together

1 Around each verb, *one* noun does *not* go with it. Which one?

discover
a cure · the truth · gold · paper · DNA · cars · a discovery

make
homework · a phone call · $1,000 · hello · a story

tell
the truth · a joke · a lie · advice · a present

give
information · a complaint · a ride · the bus · weight

lose
money · the game · your way · an umbrella · a watch

carry
a gun · passengers · a briefcase · the peace · a diary

keep
a secret · a promise · an idea · the family · the target

miss
the bus · your way · school

2 Work with a partner. Choose a noun from each group, and write a sentence using the verb. Read your sentences to the class.

Hyundai cars are made in Korea.

A jumbo jet can carry over 500 passengers.

3 Which nouns don't go with the verbs in Exercise 1? Which verbs do they go with? Complete the sentences with the correct verbs.

miss	invent	make	do	say	wear

1. Paper was *invented* by a Chinese goverment official in 105 AD.
2. I _____ my homework very quickly, then I went out.
3. This is my father's watch. He _____ it every day until he died.
4. _____ hello to your parents from me when you see them.
5. Are you the manager? We'd like to _____ a complaint.
6. I was late for work because I _____ the bus.

Talking about you

4 Answer these questions about yourself. Then ask and answer them with a partner.

1. Do you always wear a watch?
2. Are you good at telling jokes?
3. What was the last present you gave? To who?
4. What was the last phone call you made? To who? Why?
5. Do you keep a diary?
6. Have you or a friend ever made a complaint in a restaurant?
7. Have you ever been homesick? Did you miss your family or your friends?
8. What is the best advice you've ever been given?

CD3 15 Listen and compare answers.



READING AND SPEAKING

A discovery and an invention that changed the world

1 Which of these are discoveries and which are inventions?

- the telephone
- radium
- penicillin
- television
- the Internet
- DNA
- the atom
- the electric light
- Google

2 Work in groups. Add more discoveries and inventions to the list in Exercise 1.

Which things changed the world the most? Compare your ideas with other groups.

3 You are going to read texts about DNA and Google. The words in the box all appear in the texts. Which words go with each text? Use a dictionary to help you guess.

nouns	weblink disease	structure result	company search engine	cure cell
verbs	contain dream	borrow be related to	commit (a crime)	

4 Work in two groups.

Group A Read about DNA.
Group B Read about Google.

Which words from Exercise 3 are in your text?

5 Answer the questions.

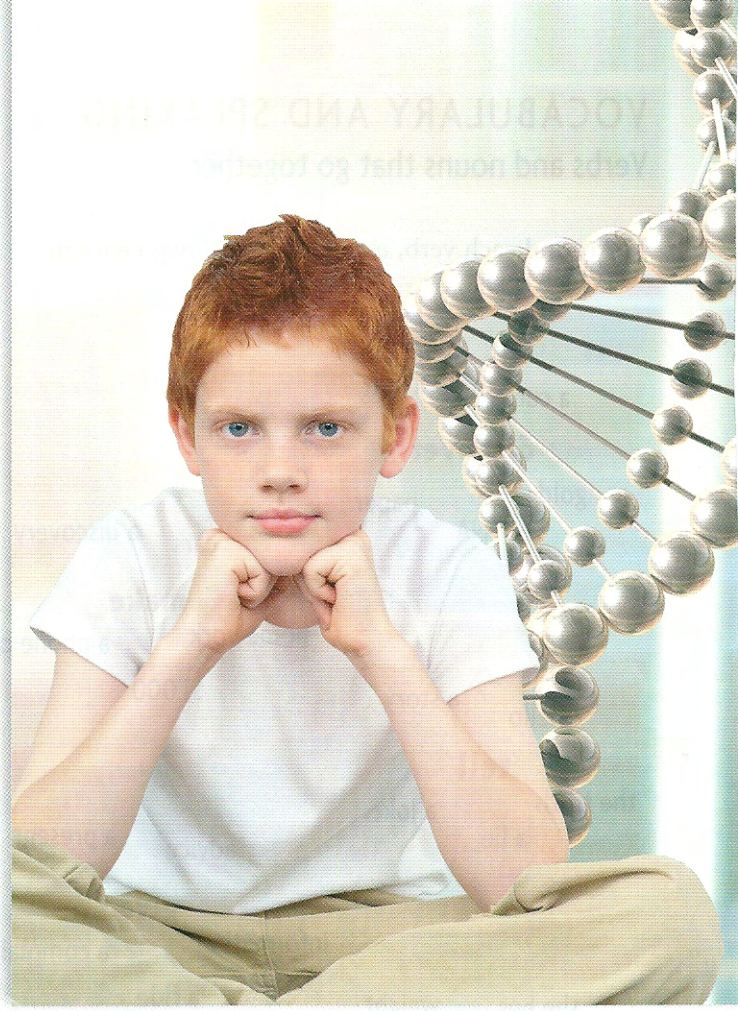
1. Who made the discovery/invention?
2. How long did it take to develop?
3. Were there any problems in the beginning?
4. What are important dates in its history?
5. How useful is the discovery/invention now? Give an example.
6. What could happen with it in the future?

6 Find a partner from the other group. Tell your partner about your discovery/invention, using your answers from Exercise 5.

What do you think?

- Have there been any stories in the news recently where DNA was involved? What about?
- What were the last three Internet searches you made? Which search engines do you use regularly? Have you ever used Google?

WRITING A review *p. 108*





The Discovery of DNA

Did you know that a tiny piece of your hair gives us information about ... ?

— who you are related to
— which career you could be successful in
— any crimes you have committed
— what illnesses you could get
— how and when you could die

This is possible thanks to the information in DNA (or deoxyribonucleic acid). Your hair and every cell in your body contains your own unique DNA. It can tell you a lot about your family, health, and personality.

DNA was discovered by a German scientist, Friedrich Miescher, in 1869, but nobody realized its importance then. Other scientists thought that it was too simple to contain the map of how we are made! In 1953, a group of British scientists at Cambridge University finally discovered the structure of DNA and how it worked. They were given the Nobel Prize for Medicine in 1962.



Gradually, scientists learned to "read" more and more of the information in DNA. In 1986, for the first time DNA testing was used by the police. Some DNA is usually left by a criminal at the place where the crime was committed. This can be matched with DNA from a suspect. The test shows if the suspect is guilty.

In 1990 the Human Genome Project was begun in the U.S. Scientists wanted to make a map of the 3 billion chemical letters in human DNA. Over 1,000 scientists all over the world worked on the project, and it took 13 years. With this information, it is possible that a cure for many diseases will be found in the future. But it also brings with it many questions. Do we want to be able to choose what our babies will look like, or use DNA tests to pick the best person for a job?

The Invention of Google

"How many common English words were invented by Shakespeare?"

How long did it take people to find the answer to this question 15 years ago? And now? You can "google" it and find the answer immediately!

Google is the most popular Internet search engine in the world. It was invented by two students, Larry Page and Sergey Brin. They met in 1995, when they were both studying computer science at Stanford University in California. They were also both fans of the science fiction TV program *Star Trek*, and they loved the spaceship computer. They dreamed of producing something that could also answer any question in seconds.



Internet search engines at the time were slow and gave many websites that weren't useful. In January 1996, Page and Brin decided to make a better and faster search engine. They thought the results should be based on the popularity of each website—the most popular ones have the highest number of "weblinks" (links to other websites).

Nobody would give them money for their project, so they used their credit cards and bought as much computer memory as possible. They also borrowed money from family and friends. Then, in 1998, they were given a check for $100,000, and they started their own company. Their first office was in a friend's garage! The company name Google comes from mathematics. A "googol" is a very high number—1 followed by 100 zeros.

The Google search engine was soon used by thousands of people worldwide because it was fast, easy, and accurate. By 2002 it was the biggest search engine on the Internet. Now, more questions have been answered by Google than any other Internet service, from sports to science, and from music to medicine. Google hopes that in the future all the world's information will be put on the Internet, so that everybody can find everything.

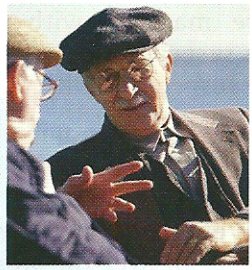
LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Things that really annoy me

1 Write down on a piece of paper three things that really annoy you. Give the paper to your teacher.

2 Look at the cartoons. What problems is the man having?

3 CD3 16 Listen to two men complaining about modern life.
What problems do they have with … ?



- automated phone menus
- domestic appliances
- car radios
- choosing a computer
- computer printers
- last year's technology
- too many choices

How are their problems similar to the ones in the cartoons?

What do you think?

1 What complaints could people have about these things?

drivers during rush hour
people who use cell phones in public
opening plastic packaging
telephone salespeople

2 Here are some more things that annoy people. How old do you think the people are?

- I want a cell phone, but my mom says "No."
- I have no idea how you turn this television on.
- Me want candy NOW!
- Young people don't say "Please" and "Thank you" anymore.
- I can never stay out late, even on weekends.
- Families don't sit down and eat together these days.
- I really want those sneakers, but I'm broke – again!

3 Your teacher will read out some of the things that annoy you. Guess who wrote them.

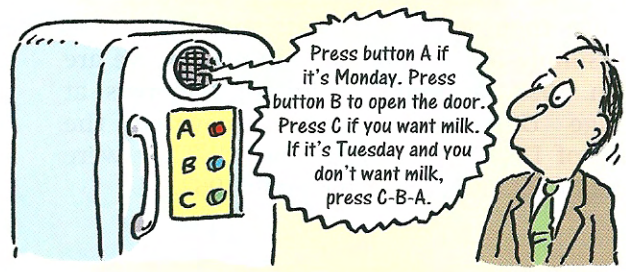
Role play

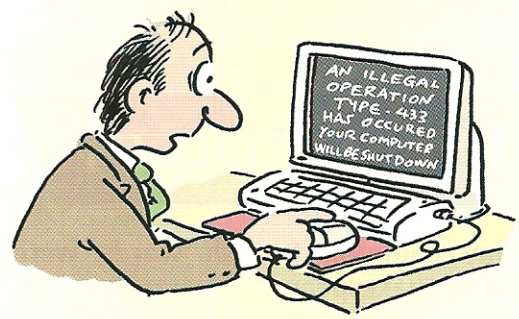
In pairs, write a dialogue between two people complaining. You can choose how old they are. It could be you and your friend, two young children, your parents, or your grandparents …

Act your dialogues out in class.













EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Making phone calls

1 CD3 17 Listen and practice saying the telephone numbers.

(919) 677-1303 1-800-451-7556
555-1212 (847) 432-5655
(212) 726-6389 (415) 440-2770

2 CD3 19 Listen to four phone conversations and decide . . .

- who is speaking to who.
- what they are talking about.
- how well they know each other.

3 CD3 19 Listen again and complete the expressions from the conversations.

Music *of* English – intonation with numbers

1 CD3 18 Notice how the intonation falls at the end of each group of numbers.

(919) 677-1303 1-800-451-7556

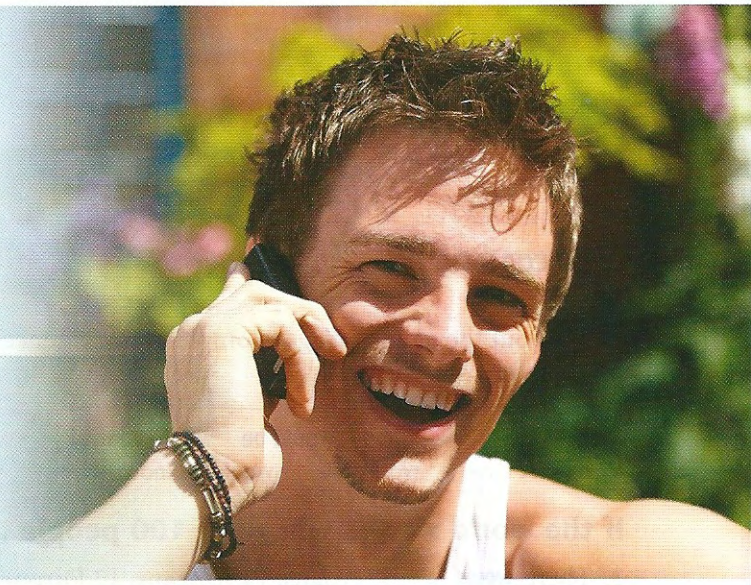
2 Ask and answer phone numbers with a partner. Write them down.

A *Can you give me your phone number?*

B *OK. I'll give you my cell phone number. It's . . .*

1

1. **P** Hello?
   J Hi, Pete. _____ John.
2. **P** I can't _____ you, John. You're _____ up.
   J Oh, sorry. Can you _____ me _____ ?
3. **P** I'm not sure. Can I get _____ to you about that?
   J Sure. You have my _____ .
4. **J** Oh, and can you _____ me Andy's number? I can't find it anywhere.
   P I don't have it _____ me, sorry.



2

1. **J** Hello. _____ Andy?
   F I'm _____ , but he's out _____ now. Can I take a _____ ?
   J Yeah. Can you tell him that John _____ , and I'll _____ again _____ ?

3

1. **R** She's on another _____ . Would you mind _____ ?
2. **R** OK. She's free now. I'll _____ you.
3. **S** May I ask who's _____ ?
   D _____ is Lucy Mendez.
4. **S** Yes, let me put you _____ .



4

1. **S** _____ I speak to Dawn Edwards, please?
   D _____ .
2. **S** Great! I'll _____ you a call on Friday, then.
3. **S** OK. Talk _____ you soon. Bye _____ !

4 Look at the audio script on page 120. Practice one of the conversations with a partner.

5 Work in pairs. You are each going to make a phone call.

Student A Go to page 140. **Student C** Go to page 140. **Student E** Go to page 140.
Student B Go to page 144. **Student D** Go to page 144. **Student F** Go to page 144.

11 What if . . . ?

- **Grammar:** Second conditional • *might*
- **Vocabulary:** Phrasal verbs
  Everyday English: Exclamations with *so* and *such*

STARTER

1 Who is the leader of your country? Who do you think is the most important leader in the world? Why?

2 What would you do if you were leader of the world? Share your ideas with the class. Whose ideas do you think are best?

I would give all the poor people $1,000.

I'd send a spaceship to explore Mars.

I would ban football, because it's all my boyfriend talks about!

THE GLOBAL VILLAGE

Second conditional

1 Read about the global village. Complete the sentences below with the verbs in the box.

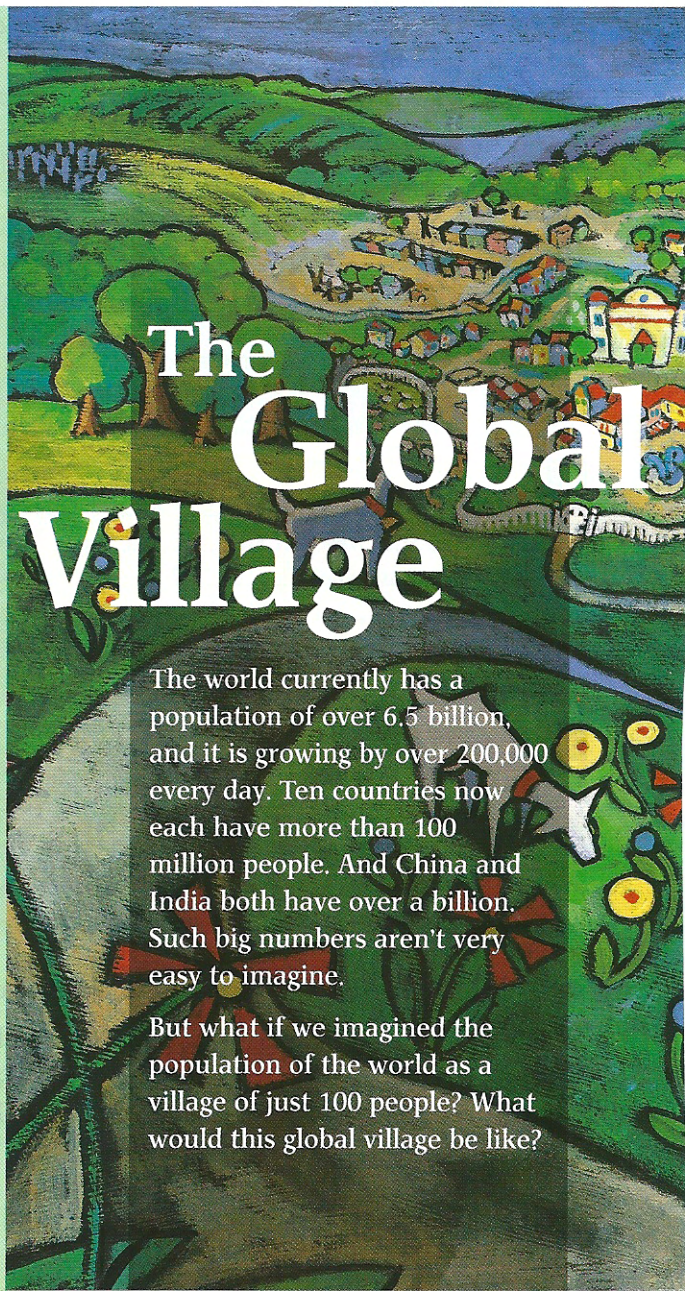
would live	~~would be~~	would be	would control
wouldn't have	would die	wouldn't know	

If the world were a village of 100 people ...

1. There *would be* 60 Asians, 14 Africans, 12 Europeans, 8 Latin Americans, 5 North Americans, and 1 from the South Pacific.
2. Fifty-one would be male and 49 _____ female.
3. Eighty _____ in poor housing.
4. Fifty wouldn't have enough food.
5. Twenty-four _____ any electricity. (And most of the other 76 would only use it at night.)
6. Seventeen _____ how to read.
7. Seven would have access to the Internet.
8. Five _____ 32% of the village's money.
9. Only one would have a college education.
10. One person _____ every year, but two babies would be born.

2 Ask and answer questions about the global village with a partner.

- How many people . . . be women?
- How many people . . . live in poor housing?
- . . . everybody have enough food?
- . . . most people have electricity?
- How many people . . . be very rich?
- . . . most people have access to the Internet?



The Global Village

The world currently has a population of over 6.5 billion, and it is growing by over 200,000 every day. Ten countries now each have more than 100 million people. And China and India both have over a billion. Such big numbers aren't very easy to imagine.

But what if we imagined the population of the world as a village of just 100 people? What would this global village be like?

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Look at these two sentences. Which describes the real world? Which is imagined?

China and India have over a billion people.

If the world were a village of 100 people, 51 would be male, and 49 female.

2 Notice that *was* can change to *were* in the *if* clause.

*If the world **were** a village, . . . (You can also say If the world **was** a village, . . .)*

3 Read these sentences. Which sentence is more probable?

If I have time, I'll (will) . . .

If I had a lot of money, I'd (would) . . .

Which tenses are used in the *if* clauses? How are the result clauses formed?

Grammar Reference 11.1 p. 134



PRACTICE

Discussing grammar

1 Work with a partner. How many sentences can you make from the chart?

If I were you, I'd travel the world.

If I	were had found knew didn't know didn't live	a politician, the answer, you, the time, a $50 bill, in a big city,	I'd I wouldn't	tell you. travel the world. keep it. always tell the truth. accept the job. be bored. help you. ask the teacher.

2 Put the verbs in the correct form.

1. If I _____ (be) rich, I _____ (travel) around the world. First I _____ (go) to Canada, then I _____ (go) to New York.
2. If he _____ (work) harder, he _____ (have) more money.
3. I _____ (go) to work if I _____ (feel) better, but I feel terrible.
4. If I _____ (can) speak perfect English, I _____ (not be) in this classroom.
5. What _____ you _____ (do) if a stranger _____ (give) you $1 million?
6. What _____ you _____ (say) if I _____ (ask) you to marry me?

If I were you . . .

3 We can give advice using *If I were you, I'd . . .*.

Work with a partner. Give these people advice.

1. I found a wallet in the street.

> **If I were you, I'd take it to the nearest police station.**

2. I don't like my sister's boyfriend.
3. I had an argument with my mother.
4. I never have enough money.
5. My neighbors make a lot of noise.
6. I really need to exercise more.

CD3 20 Listen and compare.

WHO KNOWS?

might

1 Look at the pictures of Nisa and Victor. They are both students. Where are they from? What differences do you think there are between their lives?

2 CD3 21 Listen to Nisa and Victor talking about their ambitions and complete the texts.

3 Answer the questions.

1. Who is certain about what they want to do? Who is not?
2. Who is more ambitious? What makes you think this?
3. Where does Nisa live? What do her parents do?
4. What does Victor enjoy studying?
5. Who wants to live in another country?
6. What jobs are they thinking of doing?

4 What are some of Nisa's plans and ambitions?

- She's taking her high school exams next year.
- _____ a job in an office in town.
- _____ to college.
- _____ save some money.
- _____ an architect.

5 What are some of the possibilities in Victor's life?

- He might go to art school.
- _____ a designer.
- _____ Spanish language and literature in college.
- _____ in the U.S. for a while.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 *Might* means the same as *perhaps . . . will . . . .*

"What are you doing tonight?"

"I don't know. I **might** go out, or I **might** stay at home."

2 *Might* is a modal auxiliary (like *can* and *must*).

I **might** go to art school.

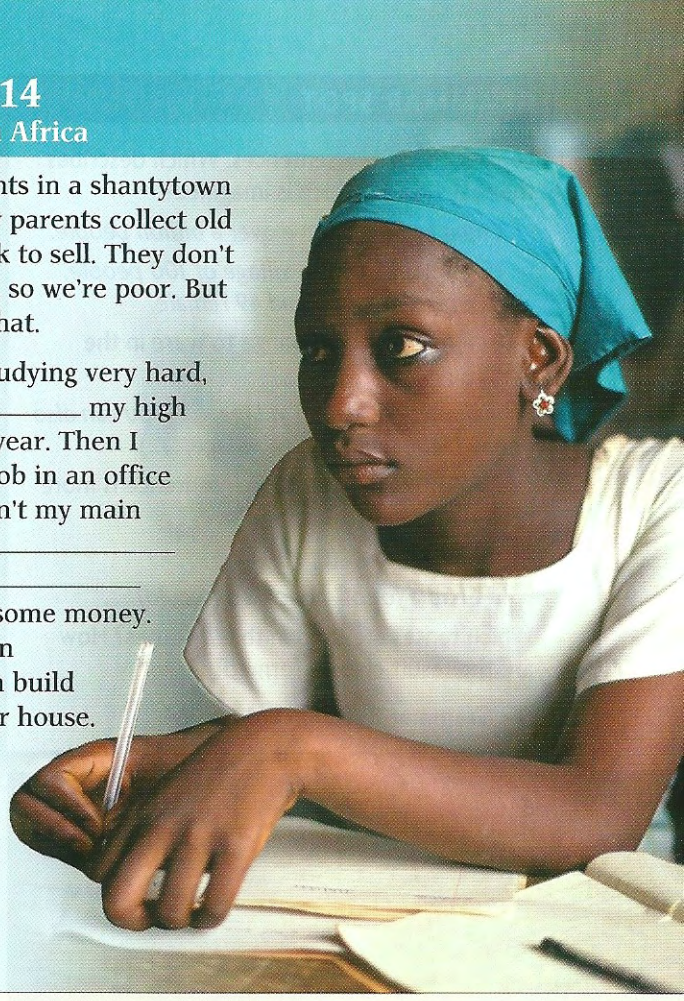
I **might not** pass my tests.

Do we add *-s* with *he/she/it*?

Do we use *do/does* in the negative?

Grammar Reference 11.2 p. 134

Nisa Isaacs, 14
Cape Town, South Africa



I live with my parents in a shantytown outside the city. My parents collect old newspaper and junk to sell. They don't make much money, so we're poor. But I'm going to change all that.

I love school. I'm studying very hard, because I _____ my high school exams next year. Then I _____ a job in an office in town. But that isn't my main ambition. I really _____ to college. So I _____ for a while to save some money. I _____ an architect, then I can build my parents a proper house.

Victor Lopez, 16
Monterrey, Mexico



I'm studying for my high school diploma, but I'm not sure what I want to study afterwards. I love doing art at school, so I might go to art school. That would be fun. I _____ a designer.

But I also enjoy Spanish language and literature, so I _____ that in school. I'll have to get good test scores to do that. I'd also like to try living in another country. I have family in the U.S., so I _____ there for a while. Perhaps I could study art and design in New York. That would be great!

PRACTICE

Discussing grammar

1 Work with a partner. Choose the correct verb in the sentences.

1. **A** What's for dinner?
   B *We're having / we might have* lamb. It's in the oven.
2. **A** What time are we eating?
   B Don't worry. *It'll be / it might be* ready before your TV show.
3. **A** Who's eating with us?
   B I've invited Jerry, but *he'll be / he might be* late. It depends on the traffic.
4. I'm going into town tomorrow. *I'm having / I might have* lunch with Jo at 1:00.
5. **A** Are you going to take a winter vacation this year?
   B *I am / I might.* I haven't decided yet.

CD3 22 Listen and check. Practice the conversations.

Possibilities

2 Make conversations with your partner about these future possibilities. One of you isn't sure about anything.

> What kind of car are you going to buy?
>
> Well, I might get a Hyundai or a Toyota.

1. **A** What kind/car/buy?
   B Hyundai/Toyota
2. **A** Where/on vacation?
   B Canada/Mexico
3. **A** What/have to eat?
   B steak/order a pizza
4. **A** Who/going to the dance with?
   B ask Tony/ask Richard
5. **A** What/do if/won the lottery?
   B give it all away/travel the world

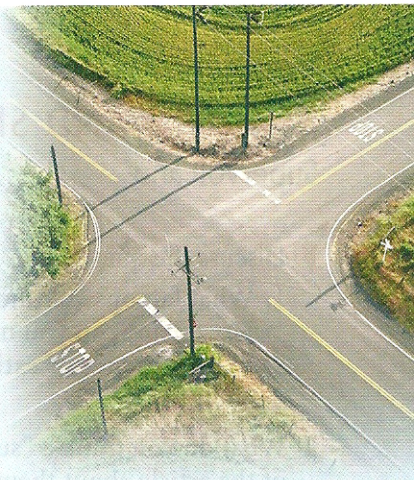
CD3 23 Listen and compare. What else do the people say?

3 Ask and answer questions with a partner about your possible future plans ...

- after class
- this evening
- on the weekend
- for your next vacation

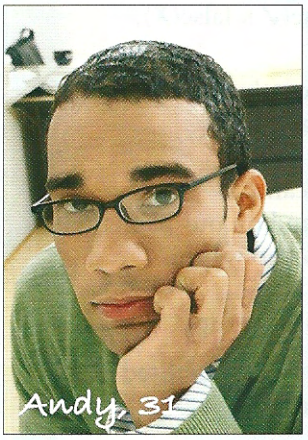
LISTENING AND SPEAKING

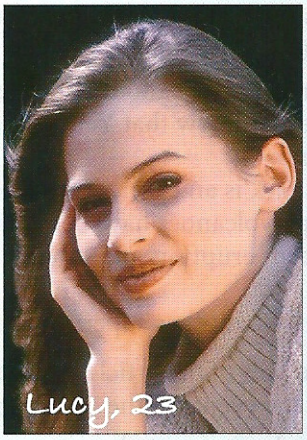
At a crossroads in life

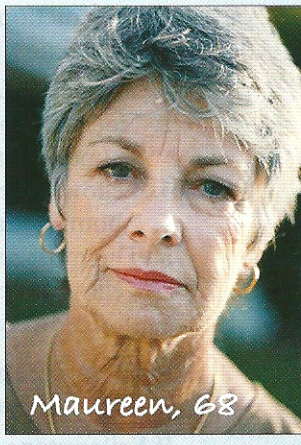


1 Look at the picture. What do you do at a crossroads? What do you think the expression "at a crossroads in life" means? Can you give any examples?

2 CD3 24 Listen to three people who have reached a crossroads in their lives. Complete the chart.







	What has happened?	What choices do they have?
Andy		
Lucy		
Maureen		

3 CD3 24 Listen again and check your answers. What reasons do they have for and against their possible choices?

What do you think?

What would you do if you were ... ?

- Andy
- Lucy
- Maureen

Discuss each situation with a partner, and then with the class. Does everybody agree what they should do?

4 CD3 25 Listen to Andy, Lucy, and Maureen a year later. Were you right?

WRITING Writing for talking *p. 109*

READING AND SPEAKING

Supervolcano

1 Discuss the questions.

1. What famous volcanoes are there in the world? How many can you name?
2. Are they active or extinct? What do you know about them?

2 What do you think a "supervolcano" is? Read the first half of the article about them. Check the **highlighted** words in your dictionary. Mark the sentences true(✓), false(✗), or don't know (?).

1. A supervolcano is a volcano that has recently erupted.
2. Not many people know that Yellowstone Park is a supervolcano.
3. Yellowstone Park is an extinct supervolcano.
4. About 40 supervolcanoes have been found on our planet.
5. The most recent eruption of a supervolcano was in Yellowstone Park.
6. It is unlikely that another supervolcano will erupt.

3 Read the second half of the article. Check the **highlighted** words, and put the events in the correct order.

If Yellowstone volcano erupted, ...

___ there would be no summer in Europe.
1 87,000 people would die immediately.
___ the tropical forests would die.
___ Iceland might start to help feed the world.
___ warmer countries would have famines.
___ only 10% of our sunlight would reach the earth.

Check the answers in class, and then read them aloud to a partner.

If Yellowstone ... , then ...

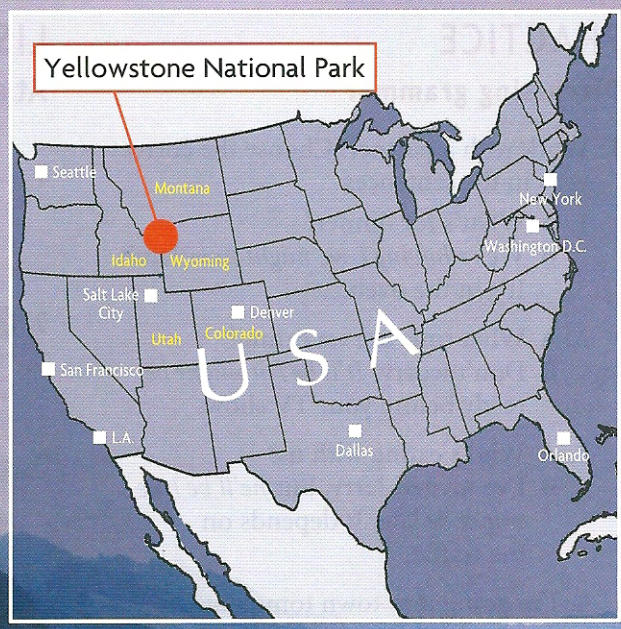
4 Read the last part of the article. Why is there no need for us to worry?

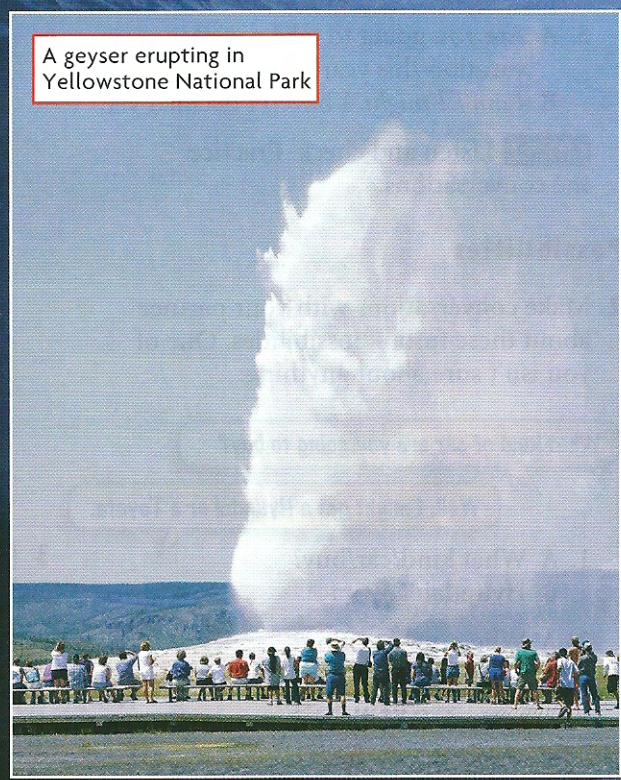
5 What do these numbers refer to in the article?

3 million	1960s	9,000	40	74,000
640,000	250	87,000	3/4	90%

What do you think?

- Where do you think there might be other volcanic eruptions in the future?
- Do you think scientists will one day find ways of stopping these disasters? How best could they help us?
- If an eruption did happen, what do you think you could do to try to survive? Work in groups, and think about food, housing, heating, and clothing. Tell the class your ideas.




A geyser erupting in Yellowstone National Park

Supervolcano!

If this volcano erupted, the world would freeze ...

Yellowstone National Park, Wyoming. A hot July day, and some of the 3 million visitors who come to the park every year are watching one of the geysers erupt. Everyone is impressed, but as they chatter excitedly and eat their ice cream, not many of them realize that they are standing on top of the largest active volcano in the world. Scientists have known for a long time that Yellowstone is a volcanic area. But the strange thing is that until the 1960s, none of them could find a volcano anywhere in the park. Then, new photos taken by NASA showed the reason why—the whole park, 9,000 square kilometers of it, is a volcano!

Volcanoes like Yellowstone are called "supervolcanoes" because they are so huge and dangerous—1,000 times more powerful than ordinary volcanoes. There are about 40 of them on Earth, but none of them has erupted recently. The most recent was 74,000 years ago in Indonesia. The last time Yellowstone Park erupted was 640,000 years ago.

But what would happen if the Yellowstone volcano erupted again today? Here are the events that might follow:

Day 1: Yellowstone Park and the U.S.

If the volcano erupted, hot ash and rock would shoot up into the air at 250 kmh. The cities of Denver and Salt Lake would be destroyed immediately, and 87,000 people would die. Eventually the ash would cover 3/4 of the U.S., and drinking water and food crops would be contaminated.

Week 1: Europe

The whole of Europe would be covered by a gray cloud. Summer would turn to winter, and in some places the sea would freeze. No European country would be able to grow food for four or five years.

The next 3 months: Worldwide

90% of our sunlight would be blocked and a volcanic winter would cover the Earth. The tropical forests would die and food crops in warm countries, such as India and China, would fail. Only countries near the North and South Poles could go on as usual. Iceland would do well, because most of its food is grown in special greenhouses. It might be able to send food to the rest of the world.

How likely is it?

Fortunately, scientists at the Yellowstone Volcanic Observatory say that there is no evidence that the volcano will erupt in the near future. They say "such events are unlikely to happen in the next few centuries." So we can all get on with our lives and stop worrying, which is good to know.

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

Literal phrasal verbs

1 Phrasal verbs consist of a verb + adverb/preposition. Some phrasal verbs are literal.

*I want to **go away** and travel.* (= go + away)
***Take off** your coat.* (= take + off)
*She **gave away** all her money.* (= give + away)

2 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

out	at	down	on	back

1. Put _____ something warm. It's cold today.
2. There's some ice cream in the freezer. Can you get it _____ ?
3. Dave! Come here and sit _____ next to me.
4. Look _____ the countryside. Isn't it beautiful?
5. When are you going _____ to your country?

3 Do or act out the actions to a partner. Can your partner guess the phrasal verb?

pick (something) up
look for (something)
turn (something) off
lie down
turn around
try (something) on
throw (something) away



4 Complete the sentences with a phrasal verb from Exercise 3.

1. I'm _____ my glasses. Have you seen them anywhere?
2. I like these jeans. Can I _____ them _____ ?
3. You shouldn't drop trash on the ground! _____ it _____ !
4. Don't _____ the newspaper. I haven't read it yet.
5. If you don't feel well, go and _____ .
6. "Do you like my dress?"
   "Let me see. _____ . Yes. Very nice."
7. Why are all these lights on? _____ them _____ .

CD3 26 Listen, check, and repeat.

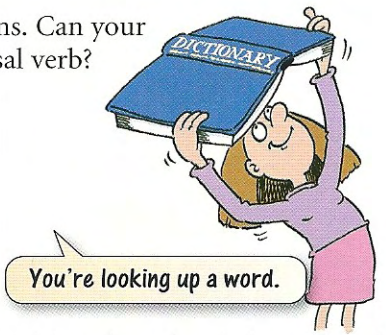
Idiomatic phrasal verbs

5 Some phrasal verbs are idiomatic.

*I can't finish this crossword. I **give up**!* (= quit)
*The plane **took off**.* (= leave the ground)
*Let's **put off** today's meeting till next week.* (= postpone)

6 Do or act out the actions. Can your partner guess the phrasal verb?

look up a word
my car's broken down
get along with (somebody)
run out of milk
Look out!



7 Complete the sentences with a phrasal verb from Exercise 6.

1. I've _____ , so I can't have any cereal.
2. Can I _____ in your dictionary?
3. My boss is a great guy. I _____ well _____ him.
4. Oh, no! Our car's _____ , and there isn't a gas station for miles!
5. _____ There's broken glass on the floor.

CD3 27 Listen, check, and repeat.

Talking about you

Complete the sentences with one of the phrasal verbs on this page in the correct form.

1. How do you _____ your parents?
2. When did you last fly somewhere? Did your flight _____ on time?
3. Do you _____ all your trash, or do you recycle some of it?
4. When did you last _____ something _____ in a clothes store? Did you buy it?
5. When you see litter in the street, do you _____ it _____ ?
6. Have you ever _____ gas? What did you do?
7. If you won a lot of money, would you _____ any of it _____ ? To who?

CD3 28 Listen and check. Ask and answer the questions about you with a partner.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Exclamations with *so* and *such*



1 CD3 29 Read and listen to the sentences.

I was excited. I was very excited. I was so excited!

Do you think *so* is used more in written or in spoken English? What effect does it have?

2 Look at the sentences. When do we use *so*, *such a(n)*, *such*, *so many*, *and so much*?

I was **so** surprised!
It was **such a** shock!
It was **such an** awful idea!
He has **such** crazy friends!
We had **such** terrible weather!
There were **so many** problems!
I have **so much** work!

Grammar Reference 11.3 p. 135

Music *of* English – sentence stress

Read these sentences aloud. Underline the main stress.

I was so worried! It's such a nice day! We had so much fun!

CD3 30 Listen, check, and repeat. Practice saying the sentences in Exercise 2.

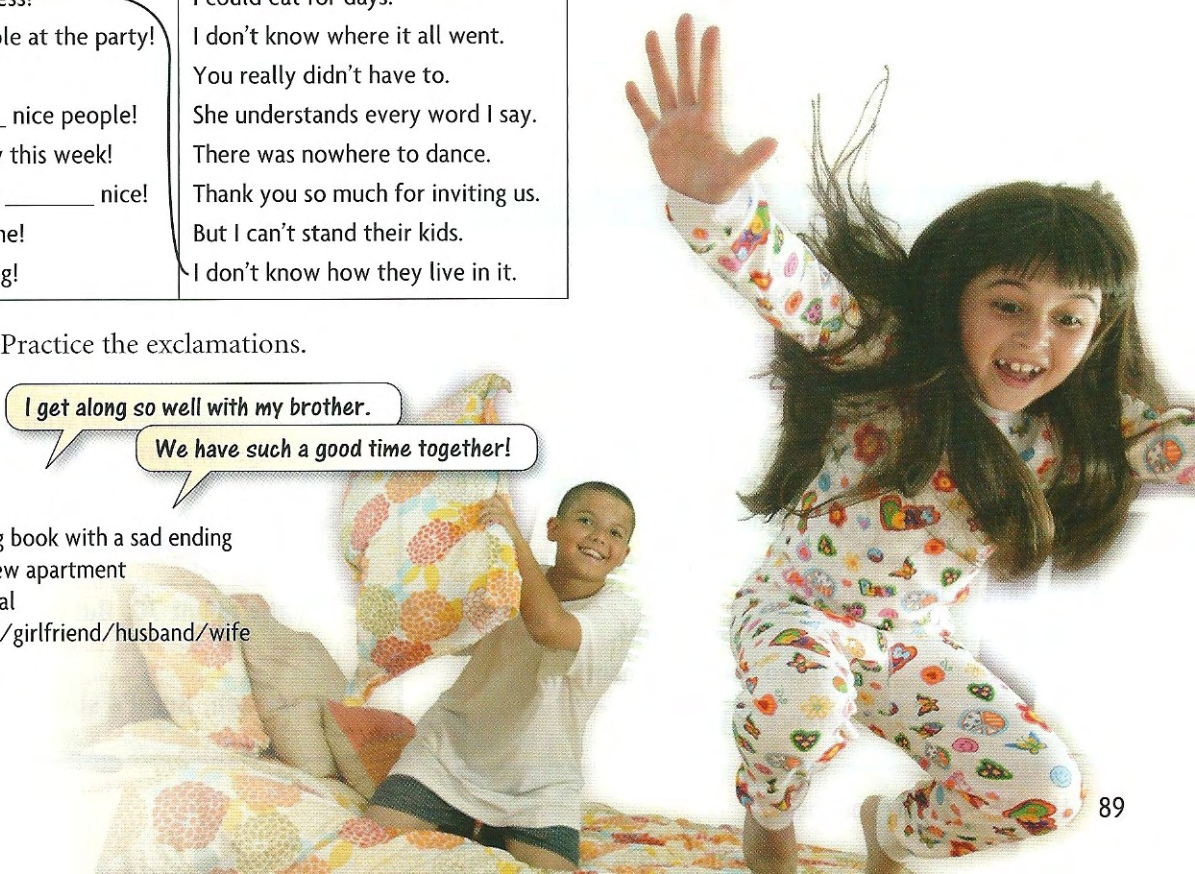
3 Complete the sentences in **A** with *so*, *such a*, *such*, *so many*, or *so much*. Then match them with the sentences in **B**.

A	B
1. Their house is *such a* mess!	I could eat for days.
2. There were _____ people at the party!	I don't know where it all went.
3. I'm _____ hungry!	You really didn't have to.
4. Jane and Pete are _____ nice people!	She understands every word I say.
5. I've spent _____ money this week!	There was nowhere to dance.
6. A present! For me? You're _____ nice!	Thank you so much for inviting us.
7. We had _____ great time!	But I can't stand their kids.
8. Molly's _____ smart dog!	I don't know how they live in it.

CD3 31 Listen and check. Practice the exclamations.

4 Use *so* and *such*. What can you say … ?

- about your friends or family
- at the end of a long trip
- when you finish an interesting book with a sad ending
- as you go around a friend's new apartment
- at the end of a wonderful meal
- in a fight with your boyfriend/girlfriend/husband/wife



12 Trying your best

- **Grammar:** Present Perfect Continuous
- **Vocabulary:** Hot verbs bring, *take, come, go*
- **Everyday English:** Social expressions (2)

STARTER

1 Ask and answer these questions.
- How long have you been learning English?
- When did you start?

2 Ask your teacher the same questions about teaching English.

STREET LIFE

Present Perfect Continuous

1 Read Andy's story. Answer the questions.
1. What went wrong in Andy's life?
2. Where does he sleep?
3. How is he trying to help himself?

2 Match and write questions *a–f* from page 91 with answers 1–6 in the article.

CD3 33 Listen and check. Finish Andy's answer in Question 4.

3 With a partner, cover the questions and practice the conversation. Then cover the answers and practice again.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Which are the questions in the Present Perfect Continuous? What are the other tenses?

2 Look at the two questions below. What are the different tenses? Why are they used?

How long have you been selling Street News?
How many copies have you sold today?

Which tense asks about the activity of selling?

Which tense asks about the number sold?

3 Complete the sentences with the Present Perfect Simple or Continuous.

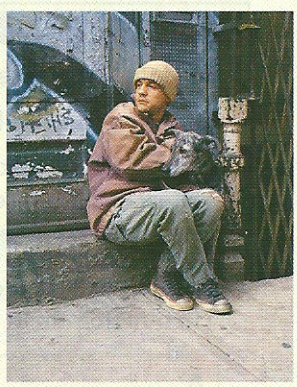
I _____ (read) this book all week.

I _____ (read) two books this month.

Grammar Reference 12.1 p. 136

STREET NEWS
ANDY'S STORY

Andy, 28, from a small town in Pennsylvania, had his own delivery business for five years. When he lost it, he also lost his home and his family. He now sleeps on the streets in New York. *Street News* is a newspaper that is sold by homeless people in the city. Selling newspapers gives them a small income, so they can begin to save money for somewhere to live.



1. _____ ?
For a year. It was very cold at first, but after a while you get used to it.

2. _____ ?
I came here to look for work, and I never left.

3. _____ ?
For six months. I'm outside the subway station seven days a week selling the newspaper.

4. _____ ?
Lots. But I get fed up with people who think I drink or do drugs. My problem is I'm homeless. I want a job, but I need somewhere to live before I can get a job. So I need money to get somewhere to live, but ...

5. _____ ?
Usually about 70. But I've brought 100 with me.

6. _____ ?
So far, ten. But it's still early. Here, take one!



4 Make more questions to ask Andy.

1. How long/trying to find a job?
   How long have you been trying to find a job?
2. How many jobs/had?
3. How long/standing here today?
4. How/lose your business?
5. How long/had your dog?
6. Who/best friend?
7. Where/meet him?
8. How long/known each other?

CD3 34 Listen and check.

5 Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Invent Andy's answers.

CD3 35 Listen and compare your answers.

PRACTICE

Discussing grammar

1 Choose the correct tense.

1. How long *have you been living / do you live* in this city?
2. Anna *has been finding / has found* a good job.
3. Pete and I *have gone out / have been going out* for over six months.
4. I *bought / have bought* a new home a few months ago.
5. How long *have you had / have you been having* your car?
6. Tom *worked / has been working* at the post office for the past month.
7. I *'ve written / 've been writing* an essay all day.
8. I *'ve written / 've been writing* six pages.

Talking about you

2 Put the verbs in the Present Perfect Simple or Continuous, or the Past Simple.

1. How long _____ you _____ (study) at this school?
2. How long _____ you _____ (use) this book?
3. Which book _____ you _____ (have) before this one?
4. How long _____ you _____ (know) your teacher?

Ask and answer the questions.

What have they been doing?

3 Make a sentence about the people, using an idea from the box. Add *because* and say what they've been doing.

He's hot because he's been running.

~~hot~~	back hurts	paint on her clothes	dirty hands	
no money	tired	eyes hurt	wet	red face



4 Complete these sentences with the Present Perfect Simple about some of the people in Exercise 3.

1. (a) He _____ (run) five miles.
2. (c) She _____ (paint) three walls.
3. (e) They _____ (spend) all their money.
4. (f) They _____ (play) three sets.
5. (i) He _____ (make) a cake and a pie.

Exchanging information

5 Look at the picture of Steve Chen. What do you know about him? What company is he famous for?

6 Work with a partner. You have different information about Steve. Take turns asking and answering questions.

Student A

Look at page 139.

Steve was born . . . *(Where?)* in 1978.

Student B

Look at page 143.

Steve was born in Taipei . . . *(When?)*



Steve Chen and friends sold YouTube in 2006 for $1.6 billion.

VOCABULARY

Hot verbs – *bring*, *take*, *come*, and *go*

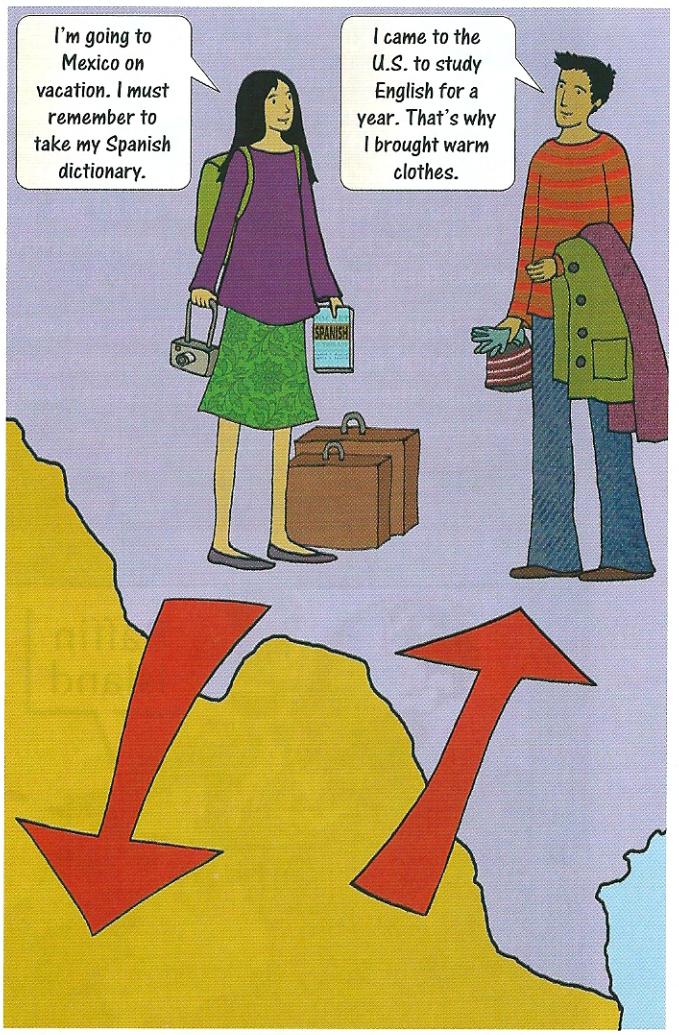
The verbs *bring*, *take*, *come*, and *go* are very common in English. Look at the examples.

I came here to look for work.
He **brought** his dog with him.
I never **went** back home.
Take one of these!

1 Underline the examples of the verbs in these questions. Ask and answer them with a partner.

1. What did you bring with you to school today?
2. When you are invited to a friend's house, do you usually take something?
3. Who comes to visit you at home most often?
4. Where do you usually go after school?

2 The choice between *bring* / *take* and *come* / *go* depends on where the speaker is.



She uses *take* and *go* for a movement away from her. | He uses *bring* and *come* for a movement towards him.

3 Complete the conversations with *bring*, *take*, *come*, and *go* in the correct form.

1. **A** Good-bye, everyone! I'm _____ on vacation tomorrow.
   B Where are you _____?
   A Australia. I'm _____ my family to visit their cousins in Sydney.
   B Lucky you! When you _____ back, _____ me a T-shirt!

2. **A** Listen, class! Please finish your work before you _____ home. And tomorrow, don't forget to _____ in your money for the school trip. We're _____ to the Natural History Museum.
   B Oh, Miss Jones! Can't you _____ us somewhere more exciting?

3. **A** Daniel, you were out very late last night. What time did you _____ home?
   B It was before midnight, Mom, honest. Nick _____ me home in his car.

4. **A** I've been decorating my new house. You must _____ and visit me on Saturday. And _____ Emma and Jake with you. I'll cook you dinner.
   B Great! We'll _____ something for dessert.

5. (*In the U.S.*)
   A I'll miss you when I _____ back home to Seoul. You must _____ and visit me this summer.
   B I'd love to! I want you to _____ this photo with you. It will remind you of the day we _____ to the museum together.
   A OK. And when you visit, _____ me some more English books to read!

6. (*In Mexico*)
   A I'm _____ to Seattle tomorrow, so tonight my best friend is _____ to my house to say good-bye. She's _____ a present she wants me to _____ to her sister in Seattle.
   B Well, have a good trip!

CD3 36 Listen and check your answers.

READING AND SPEAKING

In her father's footsteps

1 Do you know any famous explorers? Why do some people do dangerous and difficult things?

2 Read the first part of the article. Can you explain the title?

3 Read the complete article. Answer the questions.

1. Has Alicia been to the North Pole before?
2. Who is she going to walk with?
3. What has she been doing to prepare for the journey?
4. What has her father done in his exploring career?
5. What does he think about her trip? And what does he think her main problem will be?
6. How do Alicia's mother and great-grandmother feel about it?

4 Discuss these questions with a partner, and then with the class.

1. Should Mr. Hempleman-Adams let his daughter go on the trip?
2. Why is his advice to her "Take it easy"? What does he mean?
3. What do you think will happen on the trip?
4. Do you think she'll be successful?
5. How will her father feel if she fails? If she succeeds?

Tense review

5 Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses in the correct tense.

1. Alicia _____ (fly) to the North Pole when she was eight.
2. She _____ (not walk) to the North Pole yet.
3. She _____ (start) the 200-mile trip next month.
4. She _____ (plan) the trip for a long time.
5. Her father _____ already _____ (make) the journey twice in his life.
6. He also _____ (climb) Mount Everest in 1993.
7. Right now he _____ (try) not to worry about his daughter's trip.
8. He _____ (hope) that she will enjoy it.

6 Read a second newspaper article on page 146. Compare your ideas for Questions 3–5 in Exercise 4 with Alicia's experience.

What do you think?

- Why do you think Alicia wanted to do the trip?
- Why do you think she wants to do something different in the future?
- Would you do something like this? Why? / Why not?

WRITING Linking ideas *p. 110*



In Her

When Alicia Hempleman-Adams was eight years old, she became the youngest person to travel to the North Pole. But that was on a plane when she visited her father, the explorer David Hempleman-Adams. Now the 15-year-old has decided to follow in her dad's frozen footsteps. Next month, Alicia is going to set off on a journey to the Arctic that could put her in the record books as the youngest person to walk to the North Pole.

Alicia won't be alone. Four others, including her physical education teacher, are also going to walk the 200-mile route across Baffin Island in northern Canada.



Father's Footsteps

She has been training hard for the journey. She has been walking a lot with a heavy backpack, and she has also been practicing pulling a sled long distances. "It's going to be pretty cold," she said. "It's –4°F right now, and it might get to –22°F. But I think we're prepared."

"She's half my size and a teenager."

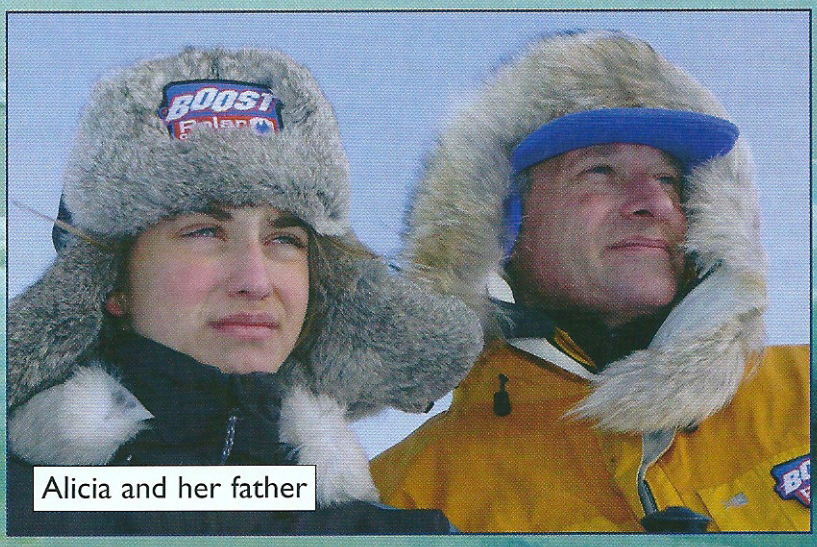
Alicia has to be well-prepared if she wants to be like her dad. David Hempleman-Adams, 48, has been traveling in the Arctic and Antarctic for 25 years. He has walked to the South Pole once, and the North Pole twice. In 2000 he was the first to fly in a balloon over the North Pole. He has also climbed the highest mountains in all seven continents.

Mr. Hempleman-Adams said that it took a long time before he agreed to let his daughter go on the trip. "I am a little worried. It's going to be very hard. She's half my size and a teenager, so I think the cold will be a big problem."

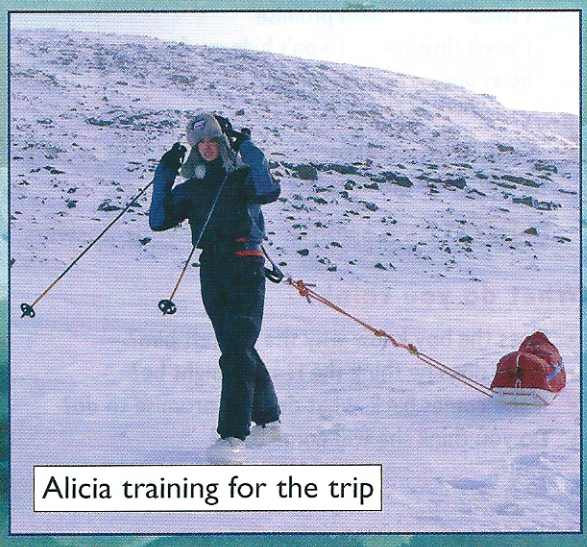
Alicia's mother is also trying to stay calm about the trip. She thinks that Alicia is too young to make the journey. Mr. Hempleman-Adams said, "My wife has always thought I'm silly to be an explorer." And when his 90-year-old grandmother heard of the latest plan, she shouted, "Oh, no, not again!"

He said, "If Alicia doesn't finish, it's not a problem. She's got the rest of her life to do it. You've got to enjoy it. There's no other reason for doing adventure."

What advice does he give his daughter? "Take it easy," he said.



Alicia and her father



Alicia training for the trip

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Song – "If You Come Back"



1 CD3 37 Close your books and listen to a song by the band Blue. Who is the boy singing to? What's he trying to do?

Glossary	
wanna	want to
I swear	I promise
I won't disguise	I won't hide my feelings
be as one	be together

2 Work with a partner. Choose the best words in *italics* to complete the song.

CD3 37 Listen again and check your answers.

What do you think?

- Does the boy know why the girl left him?
- What does he think the reason might be?
- If she comes back, what does he promise to do?
- Do you think she will come back?

IfYouComeBack

For all this time I've been (1) _____ you, girl — *following / loving*
Oh yes I have
And ever since the day you left me here alone
I've been (2) _____ to find, oh, the reason why — *trying / asking*

So if I did something (3) _____ — *right / wrong*
Please tell me
I wanna (4) _____ — *understand / say I'm sorry*
'Cause I don't want this love to ever (5) _____ — *finish / end*

Chorus

And I swear
If you come back in my life
I'll be there till the end of (6) _____ — *time / the road*

(Come back to me
Come back to me
Back into my life)

And I swear
I'll keep you right by my (7) _____ — *self / side*
'Cause baby, you're the one I (8) _____ — *want / love*

(Come back to me
Come back to me
Back into my life)

Oh yes you are

I watched you go
You've taken my (9) _____ with you — *keys / heart*
Oh yes you have
Every time I tried to reach you on the (10) _____ — *cell / phone*
Baby you're never there
Girl you're never (11) _____ — *home / alone*

So if I did something (12) _____ — *right / wrong*
Please tell me
I wanna (13) _____ — *understand / say I'm sorry*
'Cause I don't want this love to ever (14) _____ — *finish / end*
No, no, no, no

Chorus

Maybe I didn't know how to (15) _____ it — *show / explain*
And maybe I didn't know what to say
This time I won't disguise
Then we can build our (16) _____ — *house / lives*
Then we can be as one

Chorus

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Social Expressions 2

1 Complete the conversations with the correct expressions.

1. | I'm sorry | Excuse me | of course | Pardon me |

A *Excuse me* ! Can I get past?
B _____ ?
A Can I get past, please?
B _____ . I didn't hear you. Yes, _____ .
A Thanks a lot.

2. | That's right | Oh, what a shame | Congratulations | Don't worry | I hear |

A _____ you're getting married soon. _____ !
B _____ , this July. July 21st. Can you come to the wedding?
A July 21st? _____ ! That's when I'm away on vacation.
C _____ . We'll send you some pictures.
A That's very nice of you.

3. | Good luck | See you later | Same to you | Good idea | What about you | No, of course not |

A _____ on your exam!
B _____ . I hope we both pass.
A Did you go out last night?
B _____ . I went to bed early. _____ ?
A Me, too. _____ . After the exam, let's go for coffee.
B _____ .

4. | Well | Don't worry | Bye | Have a nice trip | Thank you for having me | You're welcome |

A Here's my train!
B _____ . It doesn't leave for another five minutes.
A _____ , I'd better get on, anyway, and find my seat. It was great staying with you. _____ .
C _____ . It was a pleasure.
A Good-bye, then. See you again soon, I hope.
B and C _____ ! _____ !

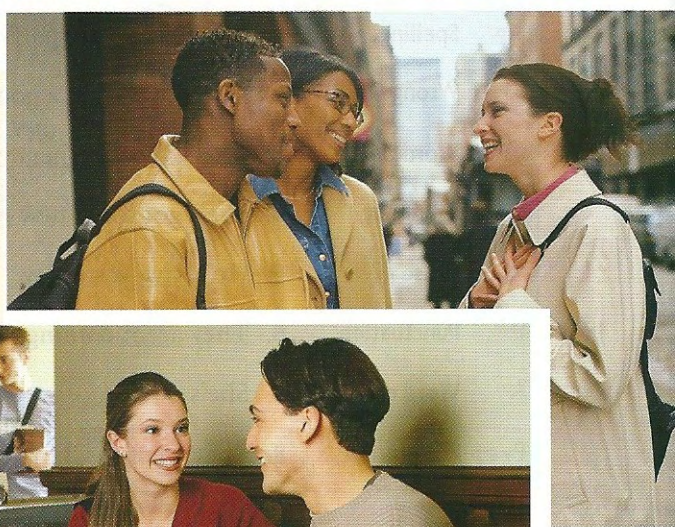
2 CD3 38 Listen and check. Practice the conversations with a partner.

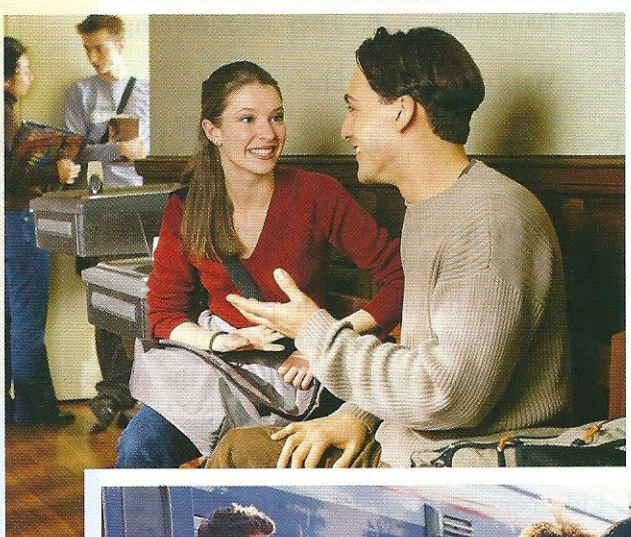
3 CD3 39 Listen. Reply using one of the expressions.

4 Make more conversations for these situations.

- being sympathetic to a friend who's just failed a test
- trying to get off a crowded bus
- leaving a friend's house where you've just had dinner
- saying good-bye to teachers/classmates when you graduate









Writing

UNIT 1 DESCRIBING FRIENDS – Correcting common mistakes

1 Look at the symbols often used to correct mistakes in writing. Correct the mistakes in the sentences. Compare your answers with a partner.

Sp Spelling	1. I'm enjoing the party.
WW Wrong word	2. My brother has a good work.
WO Word order	3. I have two brothers younger.
Gr Grammar	4. She's got some new reds shoes.
T Tense	5. He arrive yesterday.
P Punctuation	6. They arent coming.
^ Word missing	7. She's doctor.
Prep Preposition	8. They went in China on vacation.

2 Work in two groups. In each of the sentences below there is one mistake.

Group A Find the mistakes in **A**. Use the symbols to mark them, but don't correct them.

Group B Find the mistakes in **B**. Use the symbols to mark them, but don't correct them.

A

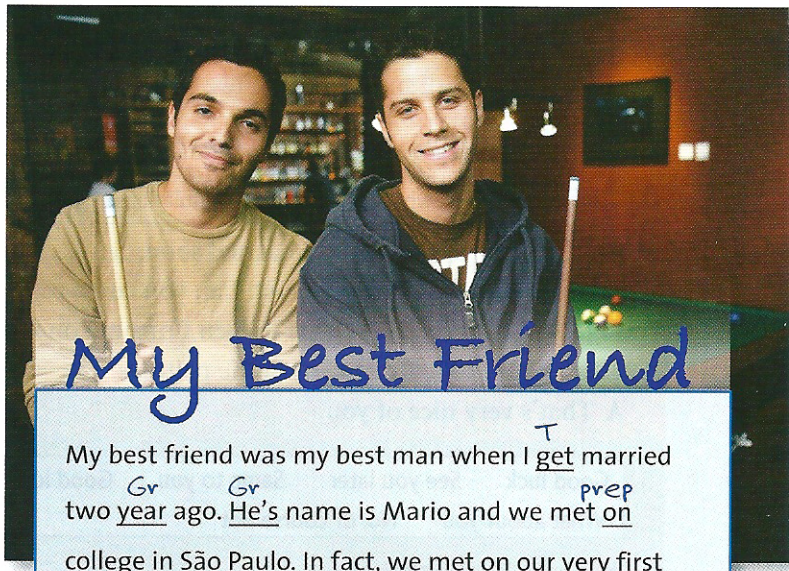
1. I like New York because is a beautiful city.
2. She studied for three years psychology.
3. There aren't any milk.
4. He's speaking Chinese, Korean, and Japanese.
5. I watched TV than I went to bed.
6. Did you by any bread at the supermarket?

B

1. I lost my all money.
2. What did you last night?
3. He always wear jeans.
4. My town is quite on the weekend.
5. I want that I pass the test.
6. They arrived at Mexico City.

3 Find a partner from the other group. Correct each other's sentences.

4 Correct this piece of student writing.



My Best Friend

My best friend was my best man when I get married two year ago. He's name is Mario and we met on college in São Paulo. In fact, we met on our very first day their. Mario was first person I spoke with and we discovered we were both studying English and that we were both soccer fans. When we finished college, we went together traveling for six month. We had a fantastic time touring the us and canada. The travel through California was amazing. When we were in New York, we met two sisters of London, Tamsin and Tanya. Now I'm married with Tanya, and next year Mario and Tamsin going to get married. I like Mario because he very funny and we has really good times together. He live in a different town now, but we text or call often each other. I'm very lucky that he's my friend.

5 Write about your own best friend.

6 Exchange papers with a partner and see if you can find any mistakes. Read some examples of your work aloud to the class.

UNIT 2 AN E-MAIL – Linking words *but, although, however, so,* and *because*

1 Imagine that you receive an e-mail from an old friend. It is many years since you last heard news from him or her. Make notes about what you want to say about you and your life in your reply.

but, although, and *however*

2 Read these sentences. They all mean the same. How are they different?

- I don't write many letters **but** I send e-mails a lot.
- **Although** I don't write many letters, I send e-mails a lot.
- I don't write many letters. **However**, I send e-mails a lot.

3 Join these pairs of sentences in three different ways using *but, although,* and *however.*

1. He's a good friend. We don't meet often.
2. She isn't American. She speaks English very well.
3. It rained a lot. We enjoyed the trip.

so and *because*

4 Read these sentences.

1. He lived in France for many years, **so** he speaks French well.
2. He speaks French well **because** he lived in France for many years.

Which pattern goes with which sentence?

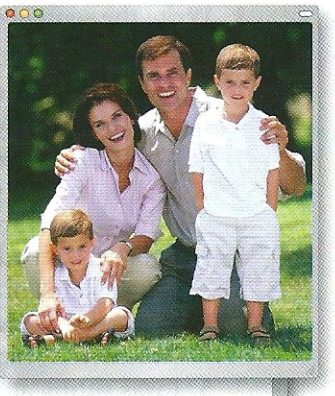
a. Result ← Cause
b. Cause → Result

5 Join the pairs of sentences in two different ways, using *so* and *because.*

1. She went home. She was tired.
2. We didn't enjoy our trip. The weather was bad.
3. He worked hard. He passed all his exams.
4. I enjoy history class. I like the teacher.
5. It started to rain. We stopped playing tennis.

6 Read the e-mail. Who is writing to who? Why? What news does she share? Complete the e-mail with these linking words.

but	although	however	so	because



From: "rebecca king" <bec.king5@wana.com>
Date: Wed, 27 Apr. 20:07:36 +0100 (BST)
To: "Martha Baines" <m@baines.fsnet.com>
Subject: Re: Do you remember me?

Dear Martha,

How wonderful to hear from you. Of course I remember you, (1)_____ it's over ten years since we last met. Who gave you my e-mail address? It was great to learn a bit about you and your family. You asked what I'm doing these days, (2)_____ here's some of my news.

First things first—I married George! I know you never liked him much, (3)_____ you'll probably be glad to hear that we're now divorced. (4)_____ , we still see each other a lot (5)_____ we have two children, twins, Sam and Toby. They're six now and they're good boys, (6)_____ of course, they're sometimes a bit of a handful. We moved from Boston (7)_____ I didn't want the boys to grow up in a big city. We now live in a big, old farmhouse in Vermont. It's really beautiful (8)_____ it's expensive to maintain (9)_____ it's so old. George still lives in Boston, (10)_____ he often visits and the boys always spend part of their vacations with him.

I know you're busy (11)_____ I'd love you to visit us soon and meet my new husband. Yes, I'm married again. Do you remember Hugo King? He was older than us and I think you liked him a lot! Well, we got married a year ago. Can you believe it?

I can't wait to hear more of your news, (12)_____ write very soon.

Love,

Rebecca (Becca)

7 Write an e-mail to your old friend. Use your notes from Exercise 1 and the phrases below.

Dear ...,
How wonderful/amazing to hear from you.
I was so surprised./What a wonderful surprise!
How did you get my e-mail address?
It was great to hear from you.
Let me tell you something about my life.
I can't believe that ... Let's keep in touch.
Guess what! Best wishes,/All the best,
Do you remember ...?

Exchange e-mails with a partner. Read your partner's e-mail.

1 Write the sentences with the adjectives and adverbs in the correct place.

1. A dog jumped up at me.
   (large, suddenly)
   A large dog suddenly jumped up at me.
2. Thank you for your invitation. I can't come.
   (kind, unfortunately)
3. I got out of bed and went to have a cup of coffee.
   (downstairs, nice)
4. We had a dinner and went to the theater.
   (wonderful, then)
5. I was sitting at home when something happened.
   (last Thursday night, very strange)
6. He has three sisters and I have three sisters.
   (older, too)
7. There was a documentary on TV last night. I enjoyed it.
   (good, very much)
8. I worked all week.
   (really hard, last)

2 Work with a partner. Look at the pictures. What do you think the story is about?
Use the prompts for pictures 1–4 to write the story of Aunt Camilla's portrait. Take it in turns to read it aloud to the class.

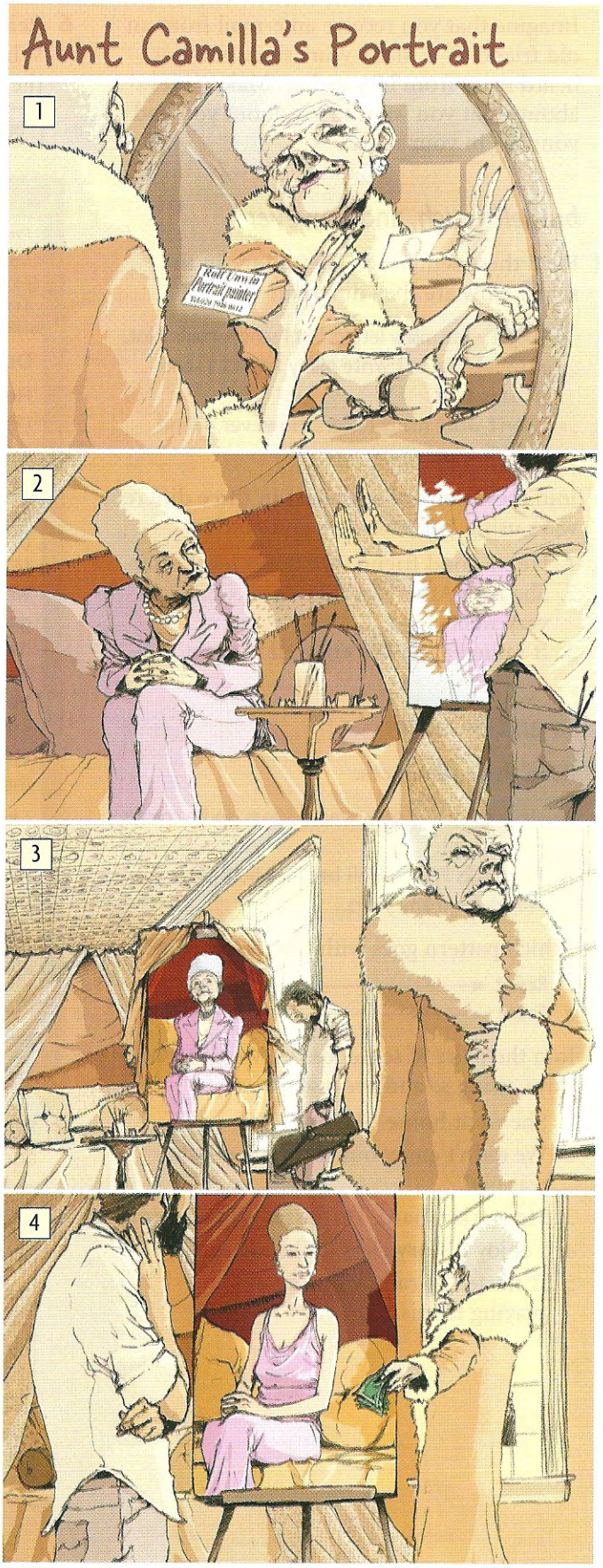
Picture 1
My Aunt Camilla ... old and very ... . One day ... in the mirror ... suddenly decided that ... a portrait of herself. Immediately, she ... the world-famous portrait painter, Rolf Unwin.

Picture 2
Twice a week she ... his studio. Rolf ... painted her ... . He didn't want ... see the picture until ... .

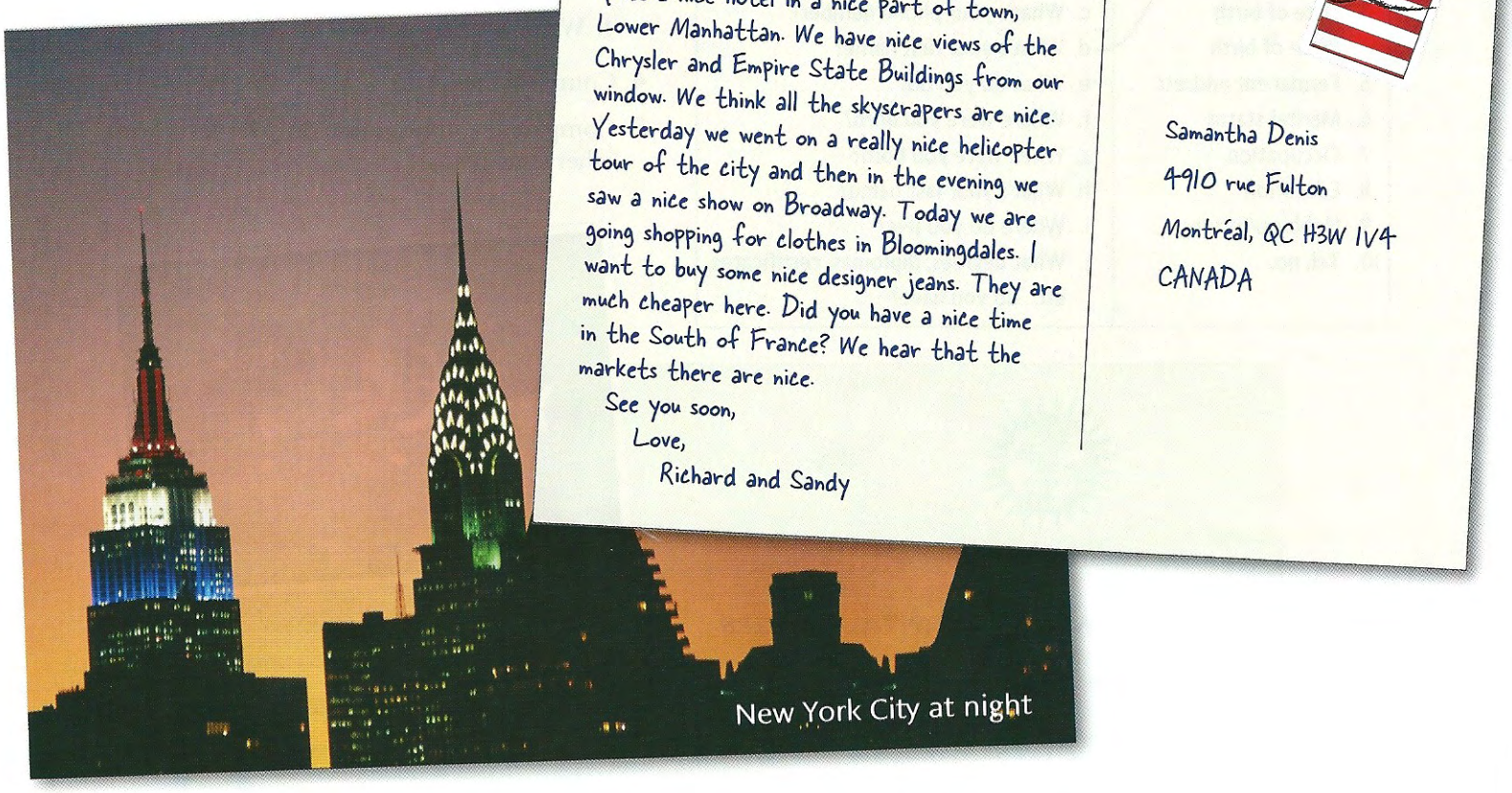
Picture 3
Finally, ... the portrait ... ready. My aunt ... excited and hurried ... . The portrait ... exactly like my aunt. Unfortunately, she ... and refused ... . She ordered him to ... .

Picture 4
This time ... didn't visit the studio ... . After another three months, the portrait ... ready and my aunt ... see it. The face ... a beautiful ... young woman. It didn't ... like my aunt at all, ... she ... loved it. She paid Rolf ... .

3 Turn to page 145 and compare your stories. What are some of the differences?



1 Read the postcard. Where are Richard and Sandy? Are they enjoying their vacation? Where did their friend go on vacation? What is wrong with the style of the writing?



Dear Sam,

Here we are in New York having a nice time. The weather is very nice. We're staying in quite a nice hotel in a nice part of town, Lower Manhattan. We have nice views of the Chrysler and Empire State Buildings from our window. We think all the skyscrapers are nice. Yesterday we went on a really nice helicopter tour of the city and then in the evening we saw a nice show on Broadway. Today we are going shopping for clothes in Bloomingdales. I want to buy some nice designer jeans. They are much cheaper here. Did you have a nice time in the South of France? We hear that the markets there are nice.

See you soon,

Love,

Richard and Sandy

POSTCARD

Samantha Denis
4910 rue Fulton
Montréal, QC H3W 1V4
CANADA

New York City at night

2 Richard and Sandy use *nice* eleven times. Complete the sentences below with more descriptive adjectives from the box. Use as many different ones as possible. Careful! Sometimes more than one word is possible, but not always!

great	warm and sunny	interesting	good	wonderful
luxurious	spectacular	amazing	exciting	brilliant	beautiful

1. We're having a _____ time here in New York.
2. The weather is _____ .
3. We're staying in a _____ hotel in a/an _____ part of town.
4. We have _____ views of the Empire State Building.
5. We think the skyscrapers are _____ .
6. We went on a/an _____ helicopter ride.
7. In the evening we saw a/an _____ show.
8. I bought some _____ designer jeans.
9. Did you have a _____ time in the south of France?
10. We hear that the markets there are _____ .

3 Work with a partner. Read the postcard aloud with a variety of adjectives. Use *nice* once only. Where do you think is the best place to use it?

4 Think of a vacation you once took. Imagine you are still there. Write a postcard to an English-speaking friend about it, but use the adjective *nice* once only! You can write about some of these things:

- the trip
- the weather
- the accommodations
- the food
- some things you did yesterday
- some things you are going to do today

Read your postcard to the class.

1 When do you fill out forms? Give some examples.

2 Match the expressions and questions.

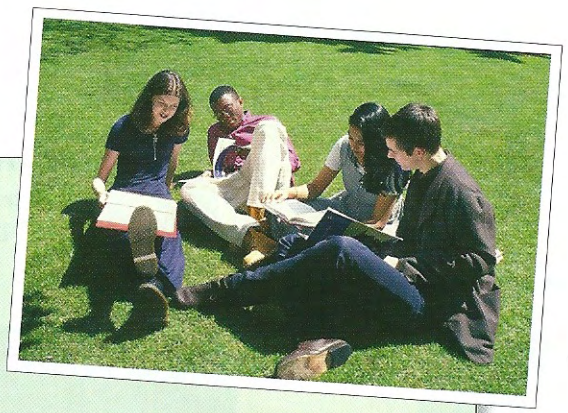
1. First name	a. Are you married or single?
2. Last name	b. What do you do in your free time?
3. Date of birth	c. What's your phone number?
4. Place of birth	d. What's your first name?
5. Permanent address	e. What do you do?
6. Marital status	f. Where were you born?
7. Occupation	g. When were you born?
8. Education	h. What's your last name?
9. Hobbies/Interests	i. Where do you live?
10. Tel. no.	j. What degrees, diplomas, certificates, etc., do you have?

3 Follow these instructions. Write about you.

1. Write your name in capital letters.
2. Sign your name.
3. Circle one:
   Mr. Mrs. Miss Ms.
4. Write your zip code.

4 Complete the form.

5 Compare the information on your form with other students.



The Global School of English

PLEASE WRITE IN CAPITAL LETTERS

Mr./Mrs./Ms. Last name First name

Sex Date of birth Nationality

First language Level of English

Address in your country

Occupation

E-mail address

Where did you hear about the school?

Have you been to ... before? If yes, when?

Date of arrival Date of departure

Reason for learning English: Business/pleasure/exams/other (If other, please specify.)

How many hours a day do you want to study?

Signature

1 Complete this sentence in any way you can.

The town where I was born is / has ...

Share the information with the class.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 We use *who, that, which,* and *where* to join sentences. Look at these sentences.

I met a man. He is from my town.
I met a man ***who*** is from my town.

I bought a house. It's on Main Street.
I bought a house ***which/that*** is on Main Street.

The hotel was very comfortable. We stayed in it.
The hotel ***where*** we stayed was very comfortable.

2 *Who, which, that,* and *where* are relative pronouns. Complete the rules with a relative pronoun.

- _____ is for people.
- _____ or _____ is for things.
- _____ is for places.

2 Join the sentences with the correct relative pronoun.

1. There's the boy. He broke the window.
2. That's the house. The governor lives there.
3. There are the policemen. They caught the thief.
4. I bought a watch. It stopped after two days.
5. Here are the letters. They arrived this morning.
6. That's the hospital. I was born in it.

3 Read the description of a city. Complete the text with *who, which,* or *where.* Then answer the questions.

1. Where is the city?
2. How many bridges are there?
3. Who is the city named after?
4. What was it like 50 years ago?
5. What is it like now?
6. What can you do and see in Pittsburgh?
7. What are the people like?
8. What is "The Point"?

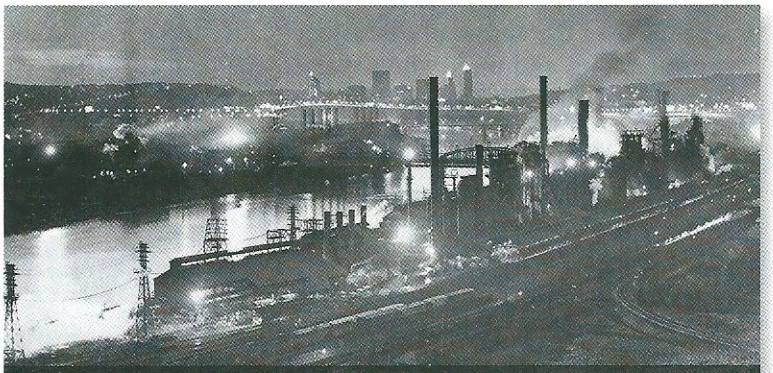
4 Write a similar description of your hometown in about 200 words. First write some notes about it.

- Where is it? • What's its history? • What's it like now?

Next write some personal opinions.

- Do you like it? • Why?

5 Read some aloud and compare your towns.



PITTSBURGH – MY HOMETOWN

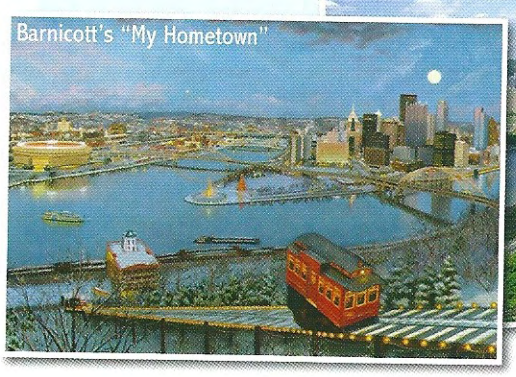
I was born in Pittsburgh, a city in the eastern U.S. Pittsburgh is on the banks of three rivers (1) ___that___ are crossed by over 400 bridges. The city is named after William Pitt, (2) _____ was the Prime Minister of Britain in the 1700s. Pittsburgh is sometimes called "The City of Bridges."

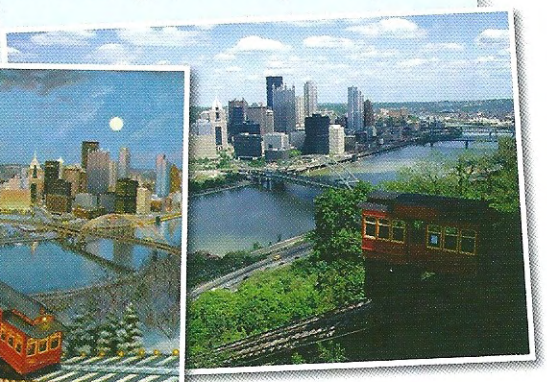
Today Pittsburgh is a big city with a population of about 2.3 million. Fifty years ago, it was very industrial. It had dozens of factories (3) _____ produced steel, and people today still call Pittsburgh "Steel City." Times were hard after the steel mills closed, but streets (4) _____ used to be dirty or dangerous now have fashionable theaters, shops, and restaurants.

Pittsburgh is surrounded by hills (5) _____ you can enjoy great views of the city (6) _____ have inspired many artists, such as Linda Barnicott. I love her painting called *My Hometown*. The museums display the work of many Pittsburgh artists, including Andy Warhol, (7) _____ was born and raised in Pittsburgh.

I moved from Pittsburgh ten years ago but I often return. I miss the people, (8) _____ are so funny and honest, and I miss the mountains to the east of the city. I also miss my favorite park, "The Point." It was built on the spot (9) _____ the three rivers meet.

People (10) _____ grew up in Pittsburgh have seen good times and bad. Through all the changes, I've always been proud to call it my hometown!





1 Write down the names of three people alive today who were born famous, and three who have become famous. Share your ideas with the class. Why are they famous?

2 What do you know about John F. Kennedy? Discuss with a partner.

3 Read these six paragraphs about John F. Kennedy. Work together to put the paragraphs in the correct order. Which facts about his life did you know already? Which did you not know? Which words helped you decide the order?



THE LIFE OF A KENNEDY (1)

John F. Kennedy

a ☐ After World War II, John returned to the U.S. and became a congressman. In 1952, he was elected to the U.S. Senate, and in 1953 he married Jacqueline Bouvier. In another tragedy, their first child died before birth in 1956. However, the couple had a daughter, Caroline, in 1957. In 1960, they had a son, John, Jr.

b ☐ U.S. President John Fitzgerald Kennedy was born on May 29, 1917. Also known as "JFK," John was the second of nine children in a wealthy and powerful American family. His father was an ambassador, and his grandfather was the mayor of Boston. However, even though the Kennedys had money and fame, John suffered many tragedies.

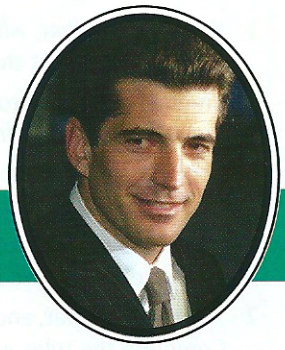
c ☐ However, his success at university was soon overshadowed by tragedy. In 1941, his younger sister Rosemary suffered serious damage from a brain operation. She was unable to speak the rest of her life. The same year, John joined the Navy and fought in World War II. He almost died when his boat sank in 1943. Then, in 1944, his older brother, Joseph, was killed in a military plane crash.

d ☐ John was a smart and popular student. His high school classmates voted him "Most likely to become President"! However, he was often sick as a child and had to miss months of school. He graduated from Harvard University in 1940.

e ☐ Despite his achievements as President, tragedy continued to follow JFK. In August, 1963, he had a son who died two days after birth. And on November 22, 1963, John F. Kennedy was assassinated in Dallas, Texas. The nation was shocked, and even today millions of Americans remember where they were on that day.

f ☐ Soon after John, Jr. was born, JFK became President. He was a popular leader during an important time in American history. He supported equal rights for African-Americans and he resolved a crisis with the Soviet Union that almost caused a war.

4 Here are some facts about the life of John F. Kennedy's son, John, Jr. Divide the information into four paragraphs and write his biography. Use *and, then, but, however* and relative pronouns to help link your ideas.



THE LIFE OF A KENNEDY (2)

JFK, Jr.

- ★ Born: November 25, 1960 … son of … .
- ★ Often known by the nickname "John-John"
- ★ Aged just 2 in 1963 when his father was assassinated in … . The funeral was on his third birthday.
- ★ There is a famous photograph of JFK, Jr. saluting at the funeral as his father's coffin went past.
- ★ After father's death, moved to New York City with mother and grew up there.
- ★ In 1968, his uncle Robert F. Kennedy also assassinated.
- ★ Later in 1968, mother remarried Greek billionaire Aristotle Onassis.
- ★ Another uncle, Ted Kennedy, almost died in a car crash in 1969.
- ★ Graduated college in 1983.
- ★ People were very interested in his girlfriends and personal life. Reporters and photographers followed him everywhere.
- ★ Graduated law school in 1989. Worked as a prosecutor 1989–1993.
- ★ In 1995, started a magazine about politics called *George*.
- ★ Married Carolyn Bessette in 1996.
- ★ Received his pilot's license in 1998.
- ★ In 1999, the plane he was flying crashed into Atlantic Ocean. JFK, Jr. died, along with wife and sister-in-law.

5 Write a biography of a celebrity (living or dead) that interests you.

1 Work with a partner. Discuss which greetings can go with which closings. More than one is sometimes possible. Which are formal? Which are informal? Which are usually only used in e-mails?

1. Dear Peter,	a. Lots of love, Harry
2. Dear Ms. Lombard,	b. Love, Maria
3. Hello Cathy,	c. Yours, George
4. Dear Sir or Madam,	d. Bye for now, Sammy
5. Dear Mom,	e. Sincerely, Kay Macey
6. Hi Rob,	f. Best wishes, Dave

A formal letter

2 Read the formal letter. Complete it with the words or phrases from the box.

frequently	advertisement	However
interested in	Sincerely	to hearing
some information	to improve	application form

3 Look at the different parts of the letter. Compare it with formal letters in your country.

- Are the names, addresses, and the date in the same place?
- Do you have many different greetings and closings for formal and informal letters and e-mails?

Your address

Av. Alvaro Obregón 47
Co 1. Roma
Mexico City 06700
Mexico

The date

March 29

Name and address of who you are writing to

Harriet Lombard, Principal
Denver English School
20 Providence Street
Denver, CO 80201

Greeting

Dear Ms. Lombard,

Introduction

I saw your (1)_____ for English classes in this month's *English Today* magazine and I am (2)_____ coming to your school this summer.

Main parts

I studied English for six years at school and I have to use English (3)_____ in my job. (4)_____, I now feel that it is necessary to continue my studies. I would especially like (5)_____ my pronunciation. Please could you send me further information about your courses, and an (6)_____ ? I would also like (7)_____ about housing.

Conclusion

I look forward (8)_____ from you soon.

Closing

(9)_____,

Signature

Maria Perez

Maria Perez

An informal e-mail

4 Read Maria's e-mail to her English friend Rob. Compare it with the letter. How does she express the highlighted lines from the e-mail more formally in the letter?

5 Match these lines from an e-mail and a formal letter.

A	B
1. It was great to hear from you.	a. Please find enclosed a photocopy of ...
2. Thanks for ...	b. I apologize for ...
3. I want to ask about ...	c. Thank you for your letter of November 1.
4. I'm sorry about ...	d. If you require further assistance, ...
5. I'm sorry to have to tell you that ...	e. I regret to inform you that ...
6. I'm sending you a copy of ...	f. I would like to enquire about ...
7. If you need any more help, ...	g. Thank you for ...

From: "Maria Perez" <mariap@yoohoo.com>
Date: Sat, 21 May 07:50:28 -0700 (PDT)
To: robbojon@nworld.com
Subject: Coming to the US

Hi Rob,

Just to let you know that I'm thinking of coming to the U.S. this summer. You know I have to use English a lot at work now, and I think I need some extra classes. I especially want my pronunciation to be better—you're always telling me it's bad! Anyway, I saw an ad in a magazine for a school in Denver. Isn't that pretty near you?
Can you send me some more information about language schools in your area? It would be great to see you while I'm there, and I'd also love to meet some of your friends.

Can't wait to hear from you. See you soon I hope.
Bye for now,

Maria



6 Write a similar letter about yourself to the school in Denver. Then write an e-mail to an American friend and tell them about it.

UNIT 9 DISCUSSING PROS AND CONS – For and against traveling by train

1 Do you sometimes travel by train? Write down three things you *like* and three things you *don't like* about traveling by train. Compare your ideas with the class.

2 Read these notes. How many of your ideas are here?

Advantages of train travel	Disadvantages of train travel
• fast • comfortable • not stressful	• sometimes expensive • sometimes crowded • sometimes delayed • not door to door
You can ... • relax (read / look out of the window) • work • eat	You must ... • travel at certain times • use other forms of transportion to get to the station

3 Now read the text. What is the purpose of each paragraph?

4 Put the linking words on the right into the correct place in each paragraph. Sometimes you will need to change the punctuation.

5 Make notes about the advantages and disadvantages of one of these topics. Then write a text similar to the one below, giving your own opinions. Write about 150 words.

- Traveling by car
- Traveling by plane
- Vacations abroad

The Advantages and Disadvantages of Traveling by Train

Traveling by train has many advantages. There are no stressful traffic jams, and trains are fast and comfortable. You can use the time in different ways. You can sit and read, or just watch the world go by. You can do some work, and with a laptop and a cell phone, the train can become your office!

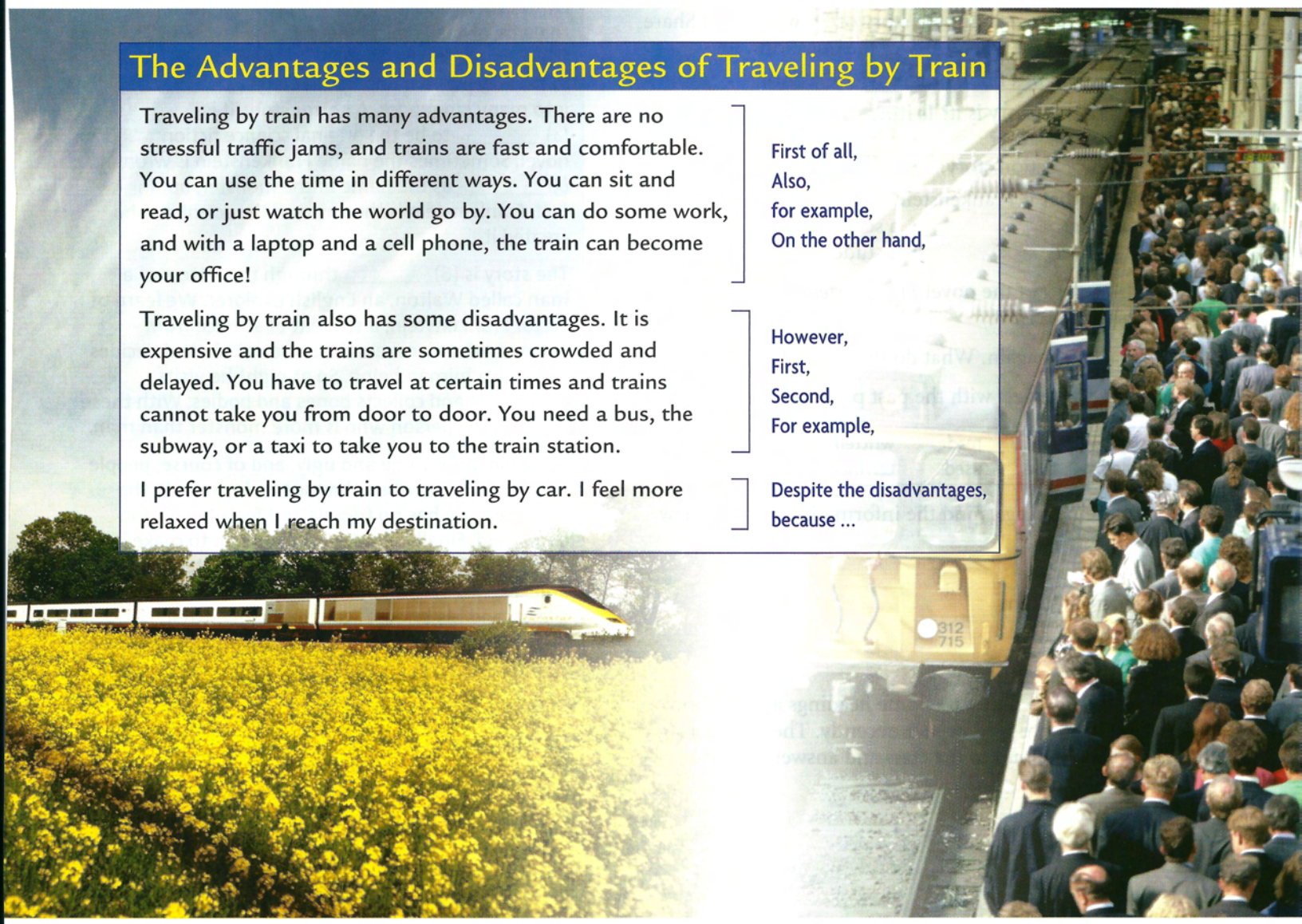
First of all,
Also,
for example,
On the other hand,

Traveling by train also has some disadvantages. It is expensive and the trains are sometimes crowded and delayed. You have to travel at certain times and trains cannot take you from door to door. You need a bus, the subway, or a taxi to take you to the train station.

However,
First,
Second,
For example,

I prefer traveling by train to traveling by car. I feel more relaxed when I reach my destination.

Despite the disadvantages,
because ...



UNIT 10 A REVIEW – Books and movies: referring back in a text

1 Which movies are currently popular? What have you seen recently? Complete these sentences. Then talk to a partner about it.

1. The last movie I saw was ...
2. It starred ...
3. It was about ...
4. I really enjoyed/didn't enjoy it because ...

2 Read the paragraph below. What do the words in **bold** refer to?

I saw a really good movie last week. **It** was a horror movie. I went with two friends. **They** didn't enjoy **it** at all. They said the acting was terrible. **That** surprised me, because I thought **it** was excellent. My parents rarely go to the movies. **This** is because **they** wait until the movie comes out on DVD, and then they watch **it** at home.

3 What do you know about the story of Frankenstein? Share your ideas with the class. Answer the questions.

1. Is *Frankenstein* a book or a movie? Or both?
2. What kind of story is it? Is it ...
   - a detective story?
   - a horror story?
   - a science fiction story?
   - a romance?
3. Who or what is Frankenstein? Is he ...
   - a doctor?
   - a scientist?
   - a monster?
   - a student?

4 Read the review of the novel *Frankenstein*. Check your answers to Exercise 3.

5 Read the review again. What do the words in **bold** refer to?

6 Complete the review with the past participles in the box.

translated	said	made	written
published	told	used	terrified

7 Look at the headings. Find the information in the review of *Frankenstein*.

1. title and author
2. type of book/film
3. characters
4. the plot

Make some notes under the same headings about a book or film that you have read or seen recently. Then write a short review. Read it aloud to the class and answer questions about it.



FRANKENSTEIN

Frankenstein was (1)_____ by Mary Shelley, the wife of the English poet P.B. Shelley, in 1818. From the moment **it** was (2)_____ it became extremely popular and has been (3)_____ into many languages. A horror story, it is (4)_____ to be the original science fiction novel. Sometimes the name Frankenstein is wrongly (5)_____ as the name of the monster, but in fact, Frankenstein is the name of the scientist who created it.

The story is (6)_____ through the letters of a man called Walton, an English explorer. We learn of Victor Frankenstein, a student of science from Geneva, **who** discovers the secret of life and decides to make a human being. So at night he visits graveyards and collects bones and bodies. With **these** he creates a person who is more monster than man.

The monster is huge and ugly, and of course, people are (7)_____ when they see it. As a result, the poor creature has no friends and feels lonely and depressed. Finally, it asks Frankenstein to make it a wife. **This** he refuses to do. So the monster attacks and kills not only Frankenstein's brother, but also his friend, and his bride, Elizabeth. Frankenstein is heartbroken and is determined to kill the monster.

Unfortunately, while chasing **it**, **he** dies. The monster then kills **itself**.

Over 40 movies have been (8)_____ of the story of Frankenstein, **the first** as long ago as 1910. It is a fascinating story because of the character of the monster, **which** is both sad and frightening at the same time.

1 Think about your future life. How do you see your life … ?

1. next year
2. in five years
3. in ten years

Write some notes about your hopes and ambitions at each of these times.

Ask and answer questions about them with a partner.

2 CD3 32 Read and listen to Susannah talking about her future. What are her definite plans? What is she not sure about? What are her hopes, ambitions, and dreams?



3 Now read Susannah's talk again carefully. There are six paragraphs. In each one underline any words or expressions that would be useful when you write a talk about your future. Compare with your partner.

4 Rewrite the first paragraph about you. Read it aloud to your partner.

5 Write a talk about your future plans and dreams. Mark pauses and words you want to stress. Practice reading it aloud. Give your talk to the class. Answer any questions.

My Dreams for the Future

Hello everyone. My name's Susannah, Suzie for short. I'm 20 years old. I'm currently in my second year at art school and I often dream about my future. I have big plans and I'd like to tell you a bit about them.

My most immediate plans are winter vacation plans. I'm going to visit my brother, who's working in Australia. My mother and I are going to spend two weeks with him in the sun. I'm very excited about that.

When I return, I have to make a final decision about which major I'm going to choose. I'm still not sure—I might do fashion design or I might do landscape design. It's difficult because I'm interested in both clothes and gardens. If I choose landscape, I'd like to work with my friend Oscar. He's a genius with gardens and we've already worked on two together. It was great fun and we get along very well.

In five or ten years I would like to have my own business and work for myself, like my father. He has his own construction business. I might even get a business degree after I finish art school.

Of course, one day I hope to marry and have children—ideally, before I'm 30, but I can't plan when I'll meet the right person and I don't have a boyfriend for now.

In my dreams I see myself at 40 running a successful gardening company with about 20 employees. I'll design beautiful gardens for beautiful people. I'll have a beautiful house, two beautiful children and, of course, a husband who's as successful as I am. Who knows, it might even be Oscar!

1 Join each pair of sentences with the words in *italics*. Make any changes necessary. Check with a partner.

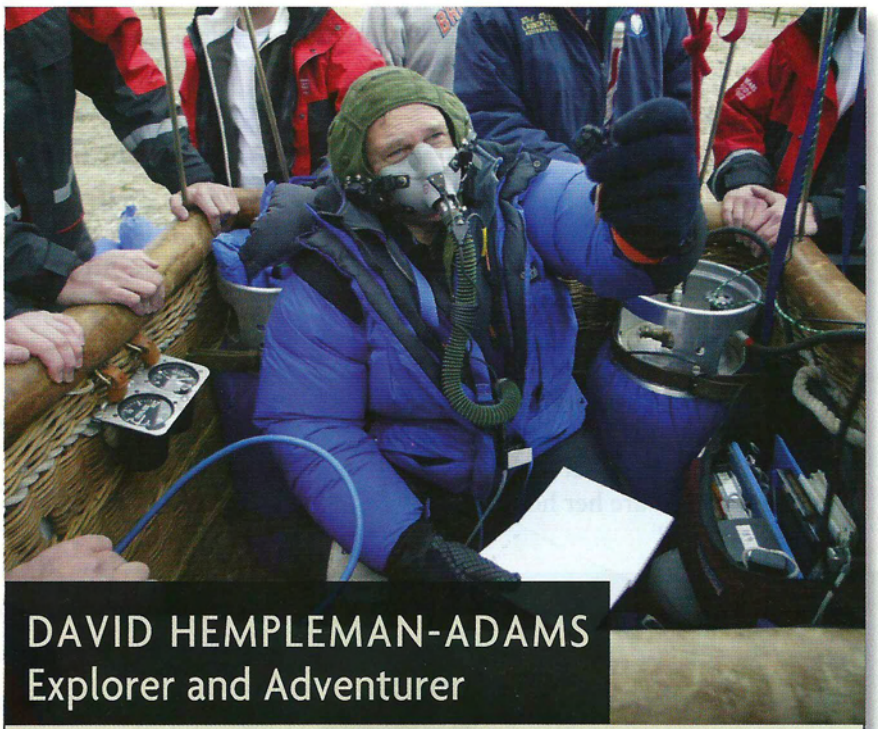
1. *and/still*
   He's been studying English for five years. He still can't speak a word.
   He's been studying English for five years and he still can't speak a word.
2. *although/only*
   She's 15 years old. She walked to the North Pole.
   _____
3. *eventually/who*
   We found someone. He could speak Russian.
   _____
4. *which/unfortunately,*
   I sent you an e-mail. You didn't receive it.
   _____
5. *but/especially*
   I love all ice cream. I love strawberry ice cream.
   _____
6. *when/suddenly*
   We were having a picnic. It started to rain.
   _____
7. *just/so/of course*
   They've had a baby girl. They're delighted.
   _____
8. *However, usually*
   He's always giving me advice. I don't follow it.
   _____

2 Quickly read the brief biography of the explorer David Hempleman-Adams. How did he become interested in the outdoor life? How many of his achievements can you remember? What is "the impossible grand slam"?

3 Read the biography more carefully. Put the words on the right in the correct places in the lines and make any necessary punctuation changes.

4 Write a list of the most important events that have happened in your life. Show your list to your partner and ask and answer questions about them.

5 Write your autobiography. Swap them with others in the class. Decide whose is the most interesting and/or the most well-written. Read those aloud.



DAVID HEMPLEMAN-ADAMS
Explorer and Adventurer

David Hempleman-Adams was born in the railway town of Swindon, England in 1956. When he was nine years old, his parents divorced and he had to make a big decision. Should he live with his father or move to a small town with his mother? He chose to go with his mother. He loved country life and being outside in the fresh air.	*Unfortunately, just* *Eventually, Fortunately* *especially*
He became interested in climbing. He climbed in the UK, Canada, and the United States, and in 1981, he climbed Kilimanjaro, Africa's highest mountain. His dream was to climb Everest, and this he did in 1993. Everest was not enough and David wanted other challenges. He wanted to climb the highest peaks in all seven continents, and to walk to the North and South Poles. He fell through the ice and was attacked by a polar bear. He succeeded in all his challenges. On April 29, 1998, he became the first man in history to complete the so-called "impossible grand slam" of peaks and Poles.	*Soon, First of all* *then* *eventually, However* *Although*
Not satisfied, he took up ballooning and broke three more records. In 2000, he ballooned solo to the North Pole, in 2003 he crossed the Atlantic, and in 2004 he broke the world altitude record.	*Still* *First, next* *finally*
In 2004, David's amazing achievements were recognized worldwide in New York. Astronaut Buzz Aldrin presented him with the Explorer's Club medal. He was a world hero.	*Also* *when* *At last*
David married in 1992 and has three daughters. The eldest, Alicia, has followed in her father's footsteps. At 15, she became the youngest person to walk to the North Pole.	*Incredibly* *just*

Audio Scripts

UNIT 1

CD1 2 **Maria Guzman** Hello! My name's Maria Guzman and I come from Mexico City. I'm 20, and I'm studying medicine at the National Autonomous University of Mexico. The course lasts six years. It's hard work, but I'm enjoying it a lot. I live at home with my mother, father and grandmother. I can speak two foreign languages: English and French. I speak French because my grandmother's from France, and she always spoke to me in French when I was very young. I speak English because I went to an English-speaking high school. After I graduate, I'm going to work for Doctors Without Borders in West Africa, because I want to travel and help people.

CD1 3 **Jim Allen** Hello. My name's Jim Allen and I come from Canada, near Toronto. I live in a suburb just outside the city. I live alone now, because my wife died three years ago. But I'm near my daughter and her family, so that's OK. Until last year, I worked in a paper factory, but now I'm retired. I never liked my job much but now I'm really enjoying life! I'm a student again. I'm studying with an online university. It helps retired people like me who want to study again, and it's really wonderful. You see, I left school when I was 15 and started work in the factory, because we needed the money. Now I'm studying Spanish. I love it. My son lives in Argentina—his wife's from there. Next year I'm going to visit them for six months, so I want my Spanish to be good!

CD1 4 **I = Interviewer J = Jim**

1. I Do you have a job?
   J No, I don't. I'm retired. I'm a student now.
2. I What college do you go to?
   J I don't go to college. I study at home.
3. I Are you enjoying the class?
   J Yes, I am. It's wonderful.
4. I What are you doing right now?
   J I'm writing an essay about *Don Quixote*.
5. I Why did you leave school at 15?
   J Because my family was poor. We needed the money.
6. I Who are you going to visit next year?
   J My son and his wife. They live in Argentina now.

CD1 5

1. Do you like listening to music?
2. What kind of music do you like?
3. Do you often wear jeans?
4. What's your teacher wearing today?
5. Where did you go on your last vacation?
6. What did you do last night?
7. What are you doing tonight?
8. What are you going to do after you graduate?

CD1 6 **Best friends**

1. **Shona** I have three or four good friends, but I think my best friend is Kirsty. We first met when we were 12. She was a new student at my school, and the teacher asked me to show her around. We soon became friends. We looked pretty funny together. She's very tall, and I'm pretty short! Because we grew up together, we know everything about each other. So Kirsty knows me better than anyone else. I can always talk to her about my problems. She always listens and then gives me good advice! I hope I do the same for her. We are both married now, and, um, we live near each other, but in different towns. We talk on the phone all the time, especially now, because we are both having a baby this summer!
2. **Dominic** My best friend is named Sammy, um, and he often comes to play at my house after school. A long time ago, uh, when I was four, we went to Busy Bee Preschool together. Me and Sammy are both six now. I like him 'cause he's funny and he plays soccer. I like going to play at his house, too. He has a big yard, and a nice dog named King.
3. **Michael** I have two very good friends from college named Dave and Adam. We stayed in the same house near school. I don't know why we became friends. We're all very different. Dave was very quiet and always worked hard, and Adam was, well, pretty crazy! He never remembered his house keys. He climbed in through the window at least once a week. He loved cooking Indian food and having parties. We had parties all the time in our house.
   Now, of course, life is very different. Dave is a writer and lives in France. He sends me long, funny e-mails every month. Adam is an international lawyer. He's working in Hong Kong these days. But we still meet once a year with our families. We usually meet at Dave's house in France for a week or so.
4. **Brianna** My best friend is my neighbor, Caleb. He's 16. Our moms are good friends, and I call Caleb's mom Aunt Janine. We grew up together. When we were kids, we always liked the same games. Now we're into the same music. On weekends, we usually go on the Internet, or sometimes we go downtown to the music stores to listen to our favorite artists. Caleb's cool. He's like a brother to me.

CD1 7 **A blind date**

I = Interviewer M = Matt

I So, Matt, which lovely lady did you choose and why did you choose her?
M Well, at first I thought, "Oh I'll choose Holly, she sounds sporty and fun." But in the end I chose Beth. I chose her because I liked her eyes, and because she seemed a bit different from the others. Best of all, I liked the fact that she couldn't think of anything that she hated.
I So tell us about the date. What happened when you met?
M Well, I arrived first at the restaurant—an Indian restaurant, of course, and when Beth walked in, uh, I could see she was nice-looking, but she seemed pretty nervous, um, shy, and perhaps a bit embarrassed about being on a date with a stranger—but I liked that. We ordered our meals, and she tried to tell me why she was a vegetarian. I felt guilty because I ordered chicken curry, but it was OK, we laughed about it, and after that she started to relax and we began to really enjoy ourselves. I told her that she was very brave to bike in the city, because you know, I can surf and swim in rough seas, but I really couldn't ride a bike in the Chicago rush hour. But she said it's fine if you're careful. She was really interested in my job and my time at sea. We both agreed that one day we'd like to move out of Chicago and live in the country—I'd like to be by the sea, of course. Suddenly it was midnight and the date was over. We're going to meet again next week. There's a lot more I'd like to know about Beth.

CD1 8 **I = Interviewer B = Beth**

I And now Beth. What did you think of the date, Beth?
B Oh, I liked Matt a lot, the moment I saw him, but I felt so nervous. I was amazed he chose me and at first I just couldn't speak, but he was really nice. He asked me about my job and said how brave I was, bicycling in the city—it's not really brave—anyway, soon we were laughing like old friends. I think he's very good-looking. He has a really interesting job and he's very funny. I hope I'm interesting enough for him. Anyway, he's coming to see me at the bookstore next week and we're going to have lunch together. Who knows? I'd love to go hiking with him one day.

CD1 9

1. I'm reading a good book.
   I booked my flight online.
2. What kind of music do you like?
   A gift for me? That's so kind of you.
3. What does this mean?
   Some people are very mean. They aren't nice to anyone.
4. Please turn on the light.
   This box is very light.
5. Can you swim?
   I'd like a can of soda.
6. Do you want to play soccer?
   We saw a play at the theater.
7. The train's coming.
   Athletes have to train very hard.
8. The phone's ringing.
   What a nice ring you're wearing!

CD1 10

1. wonderful	2. computer	3. light
4. speak	5. came	6. mean
7. ring	8. train	9. quickly
10. factory		

CD1 11 **CD1 12** and **CD1 13** **CD1 14** **see p. 9**

UNIT 2

CD1 15

Anne-Marie Boucher has a small family hotel with her husband, Pascal, near Quebec City, Canada. It's situated on the coast outside the town, and near two national parks. She says, "Our hotel has wonderful views of the St. Lawrence River and the Isle of Orleans."
She has visitors from all over the world. She says, "We speak French and English, and I'm studying Italian, which is very useful! Our guests keep us busy both summer and winter, so we always have lots to do."
They don't have much free time. "But I like it that way," she says. "And I love meeting new guests." In the winter it's very cold, minus ten degrees celsius. Their guests go skiing or snowmobiling in Mont Sainte-Anne Park.
It's January now, and she is enjoying her favorite sport, dog-sledding. She has twelve dogs, and she's racing them across the snow. She says "I'm working the dogs very hard right now. Next year I want to race in a dogsled competition. It's really exciting."

Lien Xiaohong is 22. She lives and works in a toy factory in Guangdong province, China.

She lives in a room with 14 other women in the factory dormitory, 700 miles from her family. The factory where she works employs 15,000 workers, nearly all of them women in their twenties.
She works from 8 A.M. to 7 P.M. She has just an hour for lunch. She says, "I work five and a half days a week, but I usually do overtime in the summer. It's very tiring. When I'm not working or studying, I sleep."
Her monthly salary is about $65, enough to send a little back home to her family, and to pay for computer classes and English classes in town. She says, "I don't have any money left to buy things for me."
It's the evening now, and she is having a computer lesson in a private school. "There are two skills that are essential these days," she says. "English and computers. One day I want to be my own boss."

CD1 16

1. "Do you like your job, Xiaohong?"
   "No, I don't like it much. My hands hurt all the time."
2. "What are you doing right now?"
   "I'm having a computer lesson."
3. "Do you have any brothers or sisters?"
   "I have a brother. He lives with my parents in Hunan province."
4. "Where do you go on vacation, Anne-Marie?"
   "Well, we don't usually go on vacation, so we're lucky to live in this beautiful place."
5. "Why are you working the dogs so hard these days?"
   "Because I want to race in a competition next year."
6. "How many dogs do you have?"
   "I have twelve! They don't live in the hotel, of course."

CD1 17

1. **A** Do you like studying English?
   B Yes, I do, most of the time, but I find the pronunciation difficult.
2. **A** Are you studying any other foreign languages these days?
   B No, I'm not. English is enough.
3. **A** Do you always sit in the same place in class?
   B Well, usually I do. I sit at the back, but today I'm sitting at the front.
4. **A** What's the teacher wearing today?
   B She's wearing a very nice red sweater. She always wears nice clothes.
5. **A** Are you going straight home after class today?
   B Well, I usually do but today I'm going shopping with a friend.

CD1 18 **I = Interviewer M = Miguel**

I Thank you for agreeing to do this interview, Miguel.
M No problem.
I First of all, where exactly do you come from?
M I'm from Veracruz in Mexico.
I And where do you live in Veracruz?
M I live with my parents. They have a restaurant in the old town square.
I Do you have any brothers or sisters?
M I have two brothers. They're both older than me, and they don't live at home.
I And what do you do?
M I work in my parents' restaurant. I'm a waiter.
I And what do you like doing in your free time?
M I love sailing. We have a small boat in the marina.
I Where do you go on vacation?
M I usually go to stay with my brother, Ronaldo. He lives in Mexico City.
I And what are you doing here in Chicago?
M I'm studying English at a language school here.
I Oh, really? Well, your English is very good!
M Thank you! And thank you for the practice!

CD1 19

Makiko
"Where is Makiko from?" "Tokyo, in Japan."
"Is she married?" "No, she isn't."
"Does she have any brothers or sisters?" "Yes, she has one brother."
"What does she do?" "She's a fashion buyer."
"What does she do in her free time?" "She plays tennis and reads."
"Where does she go on vacation?" "She loves London and Paris."
"What's she doing right now?" "She's buying clothes in Hong Kong."

Mario and Ana
"Where are they from?" "Curitiba, in Brazil."
"Are they married?" "Yes, they are."
"Do they have any children?" "Yes, one daughter."
"Do they have any grandchildren?" "Yes, they have one grandson."
"What do they do?" "He's retired and she's a homemaker."
"What do they do in their free time?" "They go to the opera."
"What are they doing right now?" "They're getting ready to go to the U.S."

CD1 20 see page 13

CD1 21

1. I never have breakfast on weekdays, only on weekends.
2. I take a hot shower every morning and every evening.
3. My sister washes her hair at least four times a week.
4. She didn't have time to put on any makeup this morning.
5. My brother never reads books or newspapers. He only reads music magazines.
6. I don't often do the dishes because we have a dishwasher.
7. I'm going to make some coffee. Does anybody want some?
8. My dad always watches the ten o'clock news on TV.
9. My mom says I text my friends too much.
10. You made this mess, so you clean it up!
11. Can I send an e-mail from your computer?
12. How can you listen to music while you're working?
13. I'm always so tired after work. I just want to relax in front of the TV.
14. I cooked a meal for ten people last night.
15. I didn't forget to do my homework. I forgot to bring it.
16. Can you wait a minute? I need to go to the bathroom.

CD1 22 **A 24/7 society**

H = Host I = Interviewer Je = Jerry
Ja = Jackie Do = Doreen Da = Dan

H Good morning, and welcome to today's lifestyle program, *A 24/7 Society*. Over eight million people now work at night. What do they do, and why do they do it? Our reporter, Richard Morris, finds out.
I Well, it's 8 o'clock on a Thursday night, and I'm in a Chevy car factory, where they make trucks. The night workers are arriving now. With me is Jerry Horne. Jerry, tell me, what hours do you work?
Je I work twelve hours a night, four times a week.
I And do you like it?
Je Well, it was difficult at first, but it's OK now. And the money's good. I can earn much more working at night.
I Why do people work at night here?
Je Because the robots do! The robots make a lot of each car, but we finish them. And these trucks are very popular, so we need to make 200,000 a year!
I That's amazing! Are there any problems working at night?
Je Well, the main problem is that you need to be very careful between the hours of 1 o'clock and 3 o'clock in the morning. That's when accidents happen.
I Right. Thanks, Jerry. And have a good night!

...

I It's 10:30 P.M., and a lot of people are going to bed now. But I'm in a hair salon called Hairwear with Jackie Wilson, the manager. Jackie, is this the country's first 24-hour hair salon?
Ja Yes, it probably is! We're only open for 24 hours on Friday nights for now. But I think that will change in the future, because people want it. And I think it's a good idea.
I What sort of people come in?
Ja All sorts! Young mothers come in when their husbands get home. A lot of people come in before they go to a nightclub. A politician comes in after work at midnight. And of course, other night workers come in after work between two o'clock and six o'clock in the morning. It helps them relax before they go to bed.
I Any problems?
Ja Not really. The main problem is that most of the customers fall asleep under the hair dryer!

...

I It's now 1 o'clock in the morning and I'm in the Co-op Bank. I'm sitting next to Doreen. At night this telephone banking center only has six workers. Doreen, what hours do you work?
Do I work from Sunday to Wednesday from 10 P.M. to 7 A.M.
I Aha. And what do you think of the job?
Do I love it! We're like a family at night. We're all good friends, and the work is more relaxed. Customers aren't in a hurry at two o'clock in the morning!
I Are there any disadvantages?
Do Well, it's bad for you! You need to take care of your health. If you don't, you get sick. But it's OK for me—I could never sleep at night, anyway!

...

I Well, it's four o'clock in the morning, and I'm feeling very sleepy! I'm in the local supermarket with Dan. So, Dan, when did you start work?
Da At midnight. And I finish in two hours at six o'clock. But some weeks I work during the day. The difficult thing is changing from working days to working nights.
I Any other problems?
Da Well, it isn't easy to see my friends or my girlfriend. They're going out and I'm going to work! And on weekends, sometimes I sleep all day. My girlfriend doesn't like that much!
I So why do you do it?
Da For the money, really. And I don't mind working at night.
I Thanks, Dan. So there you are. These are just some of the many people who have a different sort of lifestyle. Well, I'm off to bed now. Good night!

CD1 23

1. Nicole
J = James N = Nicole

J Hello. What's your name?
N Nicole.
J I'm ... James. I'm a teacher. And, um, where are you from?
N Paris. I come from Paris.
J That's nice. Paris is so beautiful.
N Yes, I like it.
J Um ... What ... what do you do, um, in Paris?
N I'm a student.
J Mm. And ... how do you like living in the U.S., Nicole?
N It's OK.
J Are you having a good time?
N Yes.
J Can I get you a coffee?
N No.
J Um ... Are you missing your family at all?
N No.
J Do you have any brothers or sisters?
N Yes. I have a brother.
J Um ... Oh! Um ... what does he do?
N He's a student, too.

J Oh well, I've got class now. Good-bye, Nicole.
N Bye.

2. Marco
C = Catherine M = Marco
C Hello. What's your name?
M Marco. And what's your name?
C Catherine. Where are you from, Marco?
M I come from Rio, the home of Carnaval! It's one of the most beautiful places in the whole world. And you, Catherine, where do you come from?
C I'm from Vancouver, in Canada.
M Oh, I'd love to visit Canada one day.
C You should. It's really beautiful. And what do you do in Rio, Marco?
M I'm a student. I'm studying to be an architect.
C Oh, really?
M Yes. I want to design beautiful, modern buildings for my beautiful city.
C How interesting! And are you enjoying it here in the U.S.?
M Very, very much. I'm learning a lot of English, I'm making a lot of friends, and even the weather's not so bad! Well, I haven't frozen to death yet, and I've been here for five weeks. Catherine, can I get you a coffee?
C Well, I have a few minutes before my next class, so that would be nice. Thank you very much…
M Why don't we…

CD1 24 CD1 25 and CD1 26 see page 17

UNIT 3

CD1 27 see page 18

CD1 28

1. It happened every morning.
   It didn't happen every morning. It happened every night.
2. Red locked all the doors.
   He didn't lock all the doors. He opened them.
3. Amy Watson started the home.
   Amy Watson didn't start the home. Mary Tealby started it.
4. They saw a man on the film.
   They didn't see a man on the film. They saw a dog.
5. He opened the doors with his nose.
   He didn't open the doors with his nose. He opened them with his teeth.
6. Reporters came to film Amy.
   Reporters didn't come to film Amy. They came to film Red.

CD1 29

1. What did Red do?
   He opened all the cage doors.
2. Why did he open the doors?
   Because he wanted to go to the kitchen.
3. How often did he do it?
   Many times.
4. Who did Amy think it was?
   The ghost of Mary Tealby.
5. What did they put in the cages?
   Cameras.
6. How did he open the doors?
   With his teeth.
7. Did they have a good time?
   Yes, they did. They had a great time.
8. Why did 400 people call the dogs' home?
   Because they wanted to give Red a home.

CD1 30

a. looked, played, wanted
b. tried, studied
c. arrived, used, decided
d. stopped, planned

CD1 31

/t/ looked, stopped
/d/ played, tried, arrived, used, planned
/ɪd/ wanted, studied, decided

CD1 32

1. The phone rang, so I answered it.
2. I felt sick, so I went to bed.
3. I made a sandwich because I was hungry.
4. I took a shower and washed my hair.
5. I lost my passport, but I found it later.
6. I called the police because I heard a strange noise.
7. The printer broke, so I fixed it.
8. I forgot her birthday, so I said "Sorry."
9. I took my driver's test and I passed it!
10. I told a joke, but nobody laughed.

CD1 33 The thief, his mother, and $2 billion

Stephane Breitweiser, 33, from Alsace, in France, is the greatest art thief in Europe. For over six years, while he was working as a truck driver, he stole 239 paintings from museums in France, Austria, and Denmark. He went into the museums just as they were closing and hid the paintings under his coat. Nobody looked at him because he was wearing a security guard's uniform.
Back in his apartment, where he was living with his mother, he filled his bedroom with priceless works of art. His mother, Mireille, 53, thought all the paintings were copies. One day while they were having dinner, the police arrived, and they took Stephane to the police station. Mireille was so angry with her son that she went to his room, took some paintings from the walls, and cut them into small pieces. Others she took and threw into the canal. Altogether she destroyed art worth two billion dollars! Both mother and son spent many years in prison.

CD1 34 see page 20

CD1 35 see page 22

CD1 36

1. I was dreaming peacefully when suddenly a loud noise woke me up.
2. My grandma is almost 75 and she still goes swimming regularly.
3. I unlocked the door quietly and went outside into the night.
4. She whispered softly in his ear, "Do you really love me?" "Of course I do," he replied.
5. I was just relaxing with a really good book when someone knocked loudly on the door.
6. First break the eggs into a bowl and then mix them together with the flour.
7. I got up quickly and crept downstairs to the front door.
8. I work hard and I do my homework carefully, but I still don't get good grades.

CD1 37 see page 24

CD1 38

January eighth, nineteen ninety-eight
July sixteenth, nineteen eighty-five
November twenty-fifth, two thousand two

CD1 39

the eighth of January, nineteen ninety-eight
January the eighth, nineteen ninety-eight
the sixteenth of July, nineteen eighty-five
July the sixteenth, nineteen eighty-five
the twenty-fifth of November, two thousand and two
November the twenty-fifth, two thousand and two

CD1 40

June second
August thirty-first
July fourth
May first
September seventeenth
January seventh, eighteen sixty-eight
December twenty-eighth, nineteen oh-one
February fourteenth, nineteen eighty
November fifth, two thousand two
April fifth, two thousand ten

CD1 41 see page 25

CD1 42

A What star sign are you?
B I'm an Aries.
A Hey, so am I! When's your birthday?
B April 11.
A I don't believe it! Same as me. What year?
B 1990.
A That's amazing! We're like twins!

CD1 43

1. A When's Chinese New Year this year?
   B It's early, I think. Maybe January 23rd or 24th.
   A Yes, you're right. Look, it's the 23rd. That is early!
2. A Judy, can you tell me when the next meeting is?
   B Let me see. Ah, yes. It's next month. Wednesday, June 16th.
   A What time?
   B It starts at 2:30.
   A So Wednesday, the 16th at 2:30?
   B That's right.
   A Thanks.
3. A Miss Lomax, I've scheduled your flight for Tuesday, May 7th at 7:40 A.M.
   B Let me put that in my computer calendar. So … that's Tuesday, May 7th, at 6:40.
   A No, 7:40 Miss Lomax.
   B Oh yeah. Thanks Sally.

UNIT 4

CD1 44 see page 26

CD1 45 N = Nick S = Sarah

N Is that everything?
S Let's have a look. We have some apples, but there aren't any bananas. And we have some tea, but there isn't any coffee.
N OK, bananas and coffee. What about orange juice? Is there any orange juice left?
S Let's see. There's a little, but not much.
N Orange juice, then. And vegetables? Do we have any vegetables?
S Well, we have some broccoli and a few carrots, but there aren't many onions.
N Right, onions …
S Oh, and don't forget—your nephews are coming tomorrow! We need something for them.
N OK, lots of potato chips and ice cream. Anything else?
S I don't think so. But for goodness sake, *don't* forget the diapers. Oh, and a big bunch of flowers for me!

CD1 46

1. "Did you meet anyone nice at the party?"
   "Yes. I met someone who knows you!"
2. "Ouch! There's something in my eye!"
   "Let me look. No, I can't see anything."
3. "Let's go somewhere hot for vacation."
   "Yes, but we can't go anywhere that's too expensive."
4. "I'm so unhappy. Nobody loves me."
   "I know someone who loves you. Me."
5. I've lost my glasses. I've looked everywhere, but I can't find them.
6. "Did you buy anything at the mall?"
   "No, nothing. I didn't have any money."
7. I'm bored. I want something interesting to read, or someone interesting to talk to, or somewhere interesting to go.
8. It was a great party! Everyone loved it!

CD1 47 I bought it on eBay!

Linda The first time I used eBay I bought a stove! It's for the kitchen in my new house. I was amazed, because it was so easy. And it was cheap, too! I bought an Italian stove for only $200, and I went to get it yesterday. It looks fantastic in my new kitchen. I think eBay's a brilliant idea. I'm going to buy a fridge next!

Megan Oooh! Don't talk to me about eBay! It's a real problem for me—I like it too much. Packages arrive every day, usually with shoes. I just love buying shoes on eBay. Yesterday a beautiful pair of green sandals arrived. They only cost $5. Can you believe it? My husband says he gets worried every time he sees the mailman—but you can't have too many shoes, can you?

Charlie I can't believe it! I'm so stupid! I bought a car on eBay, and it was a big mistake. I've bought plenty of other things on eBay, and it usually works very well. And I heard that a car sells every two minutes on eBay, and the sellers are usually very good. So I paid $2,000 for an old Volvo, and I went to get it last week. But on the way home the car broke down. A mechanic told me it was worth less than half the price I paid. Now I don't know what to do. But I'm not going to use eBay again for a while.

CD1 48

a drugstore tissues; deodorant; aspirin; shaving cream
a cafe a coffee; a doughnut
a post office a package; envelopes; scales; a book of stamps
a clothes store a T-shirt; a tie; a belt; a leather jacket

CD1 49

1. A Good morning. Can I have a coffee, please?
   B With milk?
   A Yes, please. Oh, and a doughnut, please.
   B I'm afraid there aren't any left. We have some delicious carrot cake, and chocolate cake.
   A OK. Carrot cake, then.
   B Here you are. Is that all?
   A Yes, thanks.
2. A Hello. I wonder if you could help me? I have a bad cold and a sore throat. Can you give me something for it?
   B Yes, of course. Are you allergic to aspirin?
   A No, I'm not.
   B OK. You can take these three times a day.
   A Thank you. Could I have some tissues as well, please?
   B Sure. Anything else?
   A No, that's all, thanks.
3. A Good morning. Can I help you?
   B I'm just looking, thanks.
   A No problem.
   A And you sir? Can I help you?
   C Yes, please. I'm looking for a jacket like this, but in black, not brown. Do you have one?
   A Let me take a look. What size are you?
   C Medium.
   A Ah yes. You're in luck. This is the last one. Here you are.
   C That's great. Can I try it on?
   A Of course. The fitting rooms are over there.
   C Mmm. I really like it.
   A It suits you.
   C OK. I'll take it.
4. A Hello. I'd like to send this package to Canada, please.
   B Put it on the scales, please. … That's fourteen ten.
   A Will it get there by Monday?
   B Well, it will if you send it special delivery but that's three eighty-five extra.
   A Oh, OK then. And a book of first class stamps, please.
   B Certainly. That'll be twenty-six dollars and fifteen cents altogether.

CD1 50 and **CD1 51** **see page 32**

CD1 52

1. A A book of 20 first class stamps, please.
   B Eight forty, please.
2. A How much is this sweater?
   B Thirty-four fifty.
3. A A loaf of bread and three rolls, please.
   B A loaf of bread and six rolls, um, that'll be ...
   A Uh, no, I said a loaf of bread and three rolls.
   B Sorry. That'll be four dollars and eighty-two cents.
4. A Two bottles of water, please.
   B That's three-fifty.
5. A Here's the twenty dollars I owe you.
   B Not twenty dollars. Thirty dollars.
   A Thirty dollars! I'm sure it was twenty.
   B No, thirty. Thirty dollars and forty cents to be exact.
6. A What a fantastic house!
   B Darling! It cost two million dollars!
7. A How much was your car?
   B Ten thousand dollars.
8. A How much was the check for?
   B One hundred sixty dollars.

CD1 53

1. A Hello. I'm looking for this month's issue of *Vogue*?
   B Over there. Middle shelf. Next to *Marie Claire* and *Cosmopolitan*.
   A Thanks. How much is it?
   B Two-sixty.
   A Here you are.
   B Thanks, your change is two-forty.
   A Wait a minute! I gave you a ten dollar bill, not a five dollar bill.
   B I'm sorry. That's seven dollars forty cents, then.
2. A I'd like to change these pounds into dollars, please.
   B OK. How much is here?
   A Two hundred pounds.
   B That's three hundred seventy-five dollars, plus two dollars commission.
   A OK, thanks. And can I cash a traveler's check for a hundred dollars?
   B Certainly. Do you have your passport?
   A Yes, here it is.
3. A Hello. How much is it to get in?
   B Eight dollars for adults, four-fifty for children under 12.
   A OK. Two adults and three children, please.
   B Then it's cheaper if you have a family pass. That's twenty-four fifty, please.
   A Thank you very much.

CD1 54

1. Song, "Sailing"

UNIT 5

CD2 2

Ella Well, I'd like to be a vet. I have three pets—two rabbits and a kitten named Princess. I love taking care of them, so I think I'll be a good vet. I asked my mom if I could have a puppy, but she said no. When I'm a vet, I want to have two dogs and a horse, too.

Joe I can already play the piano, but now I'm learning to play the electric guitar. I love it! I'd love to be in a rock band. I want to play lead guitar and write all the songs. I'm thinking of asking my friends if they want to start a band.

Juliet It's an important year for me at school this year. I'm taking nine classes. I'm going to study hard and get really good grades on all my tests, so I can go to college. But I'm still going to have fun. I'm seeing my friends tonight!

Hannah I'd like to go back to work next year. I worked in a bank before I had children, but I don't want to do that any more. I hope to go back to college and study to be a primary school teacher. I've worked part-time at Ella and Joe's school for a few years now, and I really enjoy it.

David I've been in the same job for 20 years. I'm an accountant for a big company, and I visit all the company offices regularly. I'm thinking of changing jobs, because I'm tired of traveling all the time. Actually, I'd like to start my own business.

Edie Last year I joined a travel club for people my age. It's marvelous! I really enjoy meeting new people and seeing new places. I'm looking forward to going on a world cruise with my friend, Margaret. I met her on the last cruise. We're going to the Caribbean. I can't wait!

CD2 3

1. A I hope to go to college.
   B What do you want to study?
2. A One of my favorite hobbies is cooking.
   B What do you like making?
3. A I get terrible headaches.
   B When did you start getting them?
4. A We're planning our summer vacation right now.
   B Where are you thinking of going?
5. A I'm bored.
   B What would you like to do tonight?

CD2 4 **see page 36**

CD2 5

1. That bag looks heavy. I'll carry it for you.
2. I bought some warm boots because I'm going skiing.
3. A Tony's back from vacation.
   B He is? I'll give him a call.
4. A What are you doing tonight?
   B We're going to see a play at the theater.
5. You can tell me your secret. I won't tell anyone.
6. Congratulations! I hear you're getting married.
7. A I need to mail these letters.
   B I'm going shopping soon. I'll mail them for you.
8. A What are we having for dinner?
   B I'm going to make lasagna.

CD2 6

1. That bag looks heavy.
2. I bought some warm boots because …
3. "Tony's back from vacation." "Is he?"
4. What are you doing tonight?
5. You can tell me your secret.
6. Congratulations! I hear …
7. I need to mail these letters.
8. What are we having for dinner?

CD2 7 **see page 37.** (Also, full song on page 145.)

CD2 8

1. A I heard footsteps in the middle of the night.
   B That's really frightening!
2. A The bus was full. I had to wait for the next one, so I was late for work.
   B That's so annoying!
3. A I saw Andy eating a burger! I thought he was a vegetarian.
   B That's very surprising!
4. A I was lying on the beach in the sun all day yesterday.
   B How relaxing!
5. A On my vacation it rained every day.
   B That's just so depressing!
6. A I ran my first full marathon on Sunday.
   B How exhausting!

CD2 9

1. I heard footsteps in the middle of the night. I was really frightened.
2. The bus was full. I had to wait for the next one, so I was late for work. I was so annoyed!
3. I saw Andy eating a burger! I thought he was a vegetarian. I was very surprised.

4. I was lying on the beach in the sun all day yesterday. I felt so relaxed!
5. On my vacation it rained every day. I was so depressed.
6. I ran my first full marathon on Sunday. I was exhausted!

CD2 | 10

1. **A** I watched a horror movie on my own last night.
   B Were you frightened?
2. **A** I spent four hours going around a museum.
   B Oh, no! Was it boring?
   A Actually, it was really fascinating. I loved it.
3. **A** Did you see the way she behaved?
   B Yes, it was shocking! Don't invite her next time.
4. I had a second interview but I didn't get the job. I'm so disappointed.
5. The teacher was annoyed because all the students were late.
6. My daughter is very excited because it's her birthday tomorrow.
7. I don't know how this camera works! The instructions are really confusing.

CD2 | 11

1. **A** I feel a little nervous. I have a test today.
   B Good luck! Just do your best. That's all you can do.
2. **A** I don't feel very well. I think I'm getting a cold.
   B Oh no! Why don't you go home to bed?
3. **A** I'm feeling a lot better, thanks. Not quite back to normal, but nearly there.
   B That's good. I'm so glad to hear that.
4. **A** I'm so angry! I got a parking ticket this morning. Sixty dollars!
   B No way! Didn't you get one last week, too?
5. **A** I'm really excited! I'm going on vacation to Australia tomorrow!
   B Lucky you! Have a good time!
6. **A** I'm fed up with this weather. It's so wet and miserable.
   B I know. We really need some sunshine, don't we?
7. **A** I'm a little worried. My grandfather's going into the hospital for tests.
   B I'm sorry to hear that! I'm sure he'll be all right.
8. **A** We're really happy! We're in love!
   B That's fantastic! I'm so happy for you both!
9. **A** I sometimes feel a little lonely, actually. I don't think I have many friends.
   B Cheer up! You have me. I'm always here for you.

CD2 | 12 **see page 41**

UNIT 6

CD2 | 13 **I = Interviewer L = Leroy**

I Welcome to another edition of "Favorite Things." Today in the studio we have cool hip-hop star Leroy! Welcome, Leroy. Thank you for coming to talk to us about your favorite things.
L Hi, there.
I So, Leroy, let's look at your list of favorites. Now, your first choice is the movie star, George Clooney. Can you tell us about him? Why do you like him so much?
L Well, every time I see George Clooney in a movie I think he's awesome, he's just an awesome actor. He's so talented. You know he's been nominated a bunch of times for Oscars—and, uh, I'm pretty sure he's won at least once.
I OK. And your next favorite thing is a basketball team, the Houston Rockets. So you're a big basketball fan, then?
L Yeah, I am. I'm a Houston boy, you know, and I support my local team, and that's the Rockets. They have some fantastic players like Yao Ming—he's probably my favorite. And they're always exciting to watch. I still go to a game whenever I can.
I And now your number three—ah, hip-hop music.
L Oh yeah, I'm crazy about hip-hop music—you know, it's the reason I wanted a career in the music business. It's very creative music, you know. And sometimes the lyrics, the words, are really meaningful.
I Great. Now, your number four is a food, chicken satay. I don't know that one. What's it like?
L It's spicy and delicious! I just love sitting in front of the TV with a plate full of chicken satay. Mmm!
I I'll have to try it! And finally in your list you have *Catch-22*. I saw the movie. But what's the book like?
L It's an amazing book about war—you know, all the bad things that happen in war. It's, uh, funny, sad, and shocking. It's written by Joseph Heller and it's my favorite book of all time.

CD2 | 14

1. **Q** What's Houston like?
   A Well, it's a really exciting city! There's so much going on all the time.
2. **Q** What's the weather like?
   A It's warm all year round, and really hot in the summer.
3. **Q** What are the people like?
   A They're very interesting and friendly. A lot of people there speak both Spanish and English.
4. **Q** What are the buildings like?
   A Fantastic! Lots of them are big new skyscrapers, but there are some wonderful historic buildings, too.
5. **Q** What are the restaurants like?
   A They're great! You can find food from every country in the world.
6. **Q** What is the nightlife like?
   A Oh, it's amazing! There are so many clubs and theaters, and, of course, the music scene is fantastic!

CD2 | 15 **I = Interviewer L = Leroy**

I Do you travel a lot, Leroy?
L Oh yeah. I sing all over the world. Last year I was in Buenos Aires, Tokyo—oh, and of course, New York.
I And what are they like?
L Well, they're all big, busy cities. Tokyo's the biggest and the busiest. It's much bigger than Buenos Aires.
I And is it more interesting?
L Well, they're all interesting, but, in fact, for me the most interesting is New York.
I Really? Why?
L Well, in some ways, perhaps it might not be as interesting as the other two cities—it doesn't have any really old buildings, or beautiful old Japanese temples —but you know, New York is the birthplace of hip-hop music and that's everything to me.
I Hmm, I see. So New York's best for music. And what about food? Which is the best city for food?
L Ah, the food. For me there's no question, Tokyo definitely has the most delicious food—I just love Japanese food!
I I see. Is it even better than chicken satay?
L Ah, I don't know about that!

CD2 | 16 **CD2 | 17** and **CD2 | 18** **see page 44**

CD2 | 19

1. The Empire State Building is taller than the Eiffel Tower, but Taipei 101 is the tallest. It's over 500 meters tall.
2. Singapore is smaller than Iceland, but Vatican City is the smallest. It's only .44 square kilometers.
3. The Atlantic Ocean is bigger than the Arctic Ocean, but the Pacific Ocean is the biggest. It covers almost one third of the Earth's surface.
4. A human is faster than an elephant, but a horse is the fastest. A really fast horse can go almost 90 kilometers per hour.
5. A Porsche is more expensive than a Rolls-Royce, but a Ferrari is the most expensive. Some Ferraris cost more than a million dollars.
6. A shark is more dangerous than a lion, but a hippopotamus is the most dangerous. They weigh over 3,000 kilos, they can run 30 kilometers per hour, and they have very powerful jaws.

CD2 | 20

1. **A** I just moved to a new apartment.
   B Oh, really? What's it like?
   A Well, it's bigger than my old one but it isn't as modern, and it's further from the stores.
2. **A** I hear Alice and Henry broke up.
   B Yeah. Alice has a new boyfriend.
   A Oh, really? What's he like?
   B Well, he's much nicer than Henry, and much more handsome. Alice is happier now than she's been for a long time.
3. **A** We have a new teacher.
   B Oh, really? What's she like?
   A Well, I think she's the best teacher we've ever had. Our last teacher was good but she's even better and she makes us work much harder.
4. **A** Is that your new car?
   B Well, it's a used car, but it's new to me.
   A What's it like?
   B Well, it's faster than my old car and more comfortable, but it's more expensive to fill the gas tank.

CD2 | 21

Ben The best thing for me is my dog, Jasper. He's a black Labrador and he's great. I got him when he was a puppy, and I was nine. So we've grown up together. My uncle gave him to me for my ninth birthday, so he didn't cost anything. What's he like? Well, he's very loving. He's also a bit crazy, and great fun to play with. He's much more energetic than I am. I'm always tired after taking him for a walk!

Mary Ooh, there are lots of things I like that don't cost anything, I'm sure. Let's see … sunsets. That's one thing I love. My house is on a hill, and in the evening when I look out of my kitchen window, there's sometimes a beautiful sunset. It makes washing the dishes much easier! I also love getting phone calls and cards from my family. I suppose they cost something, but not to me! But actually, the best thing of all is my first grandchild. He's the most beautiful baby boy I've ever seen!

Michael I work in the city, so the best thing for me is being in the countryside. I don't care what the weather is like. Even if it's rainy and windy, it's great to be outside. It's much quieter than the city, so there's time to think. Actually, the countryside costs money, because I have to drive there first! OK, so the next best thing is going for a walk in the park near my place after work. It's a nice park with lots of trees and a small lake. It's the most relaxing way to end the day.

Laura Um, well, I think the best thing for me is playing with my little sister, Abby. She's almost 4, so I'm much older than her. I also have a brother, Dominic. He's 6. But he doesn't like the games I like, so he isn't as much fun to play with. Abby's always waiting for me when I come home from school. She thinks I'm the best person in the whole world. We usually play hospital or school. I'm the doctor or teacher, of course, because I'm the biggest.

Kelly Definitely the best thing for me is being with my boyfriend, Dan. We don't have to go out or spend money. I love just going for a walk and chatting with him. He makes me laugh all the time. He's the funniest person I know. And the nicest friend. We've been together for nearly a year, and our relationship just gets better and better. I think I'm really lucky.

CD2 | 22 **see page 48**

CD2 | 23

1. **A** Look at all these new buildings!
   B Yes. Beijing is much more modern than I expected.
2. **A** Wasn't that movie great?
   B Absolutely! It was fantastic. We loved it.
3. **A** Your bedroom's really dirty. Again!
   B What do you mean? It doesn't look messy to me.
4. **A** I couldn't believe it. Their son was so impolite to me.
   B Don't worry. He's rude to everyone.
5. **A** Dan doesn't earn much, but he's always so kind.
   B He is, isn't he? He's one of the most generous people I know.
6. **A** I'm bored with this exercise!
   B I know. I'm tired of it, too!

CD1 | 24 and **CD2 | 25** **see page 48**

CD2 | 26

1. **A** Tokyo's such an expensive city.
   B Well, it's definitely not very cheap.
2. **A** Paul and Sue are so stingy.
   B They're not very generous, that's for sure.
3. **A** Their house is always so messy.
   B I know, it's not very clean, is it?
4. **A** That sales assistant was so rude!
   B Mmm … she wasn't very polite, was she?
5. **A** Jim looks really miserable.
   B Yes, he's not very happy right now, is he?
6. **A** This exercise is so boring!
   B Mmm, it's certainly not very exciting.

CD2 | 27 **C = Carlos G = Gabriel W = woman in tourist office**

C Excuse me. Can you help me?
W Sure. What can I do for you?
C We'd like to take a trip on one of those buses that shows you all the sights. You know, where you can get off and back on where you want ...
W Ah, yes. You want a city sightseeing tour. It stops in 20 places, and it costs $20.
C How long does the tour take?
W Well, it depends whether you get off or not, but if you stay on and don't get off, about an hour and a half.
G Where can we buy a ticket?
W Here, or at the bus station. But you can't go on with your backpack.
G Sorry? What did you say?
W Your backpack ... you know ... your bag. It's too big. You have to leave it somewhere.
G Ah, OK! No problem. I'll leave it at the hostel. Thanks. Another thing. I've read that there is an exhibition of modern art going on now. Is that right?
W Yes, that's right. It's at the Studio until the end of next week.
C How much is it to get in?
W Twelve dollars, but it's best to book a few days in advance.
C Oh, that's too bad. We wanted to go tonight. Never mind.
G Oh, and one more thing. I need to buy a present for my mother. It's her birthday soon. Is there a gift shop around here?
W There's a good one just around the corner, but it's closed for lunch right now. It'll be open again at 2:00.
G OK. That's great. Thanks for all your help.
C Thanks a lot.
W You're welcome. Enjoy your visit!

UNIT 7

CD2 | 28

1. Steve Irwin started wrestling crocodiles at the age of nine.
2. Princess Diana had two sons, Princes William and Harry.
3. Bindi Irwin has hosted TV shows and is a "tourism ambassador" for Australia.
4. John Lennon wrote songs with fellow Beatle, Paul McCartney.
5. Maria Shriver has worked for CNN, NBC, and other TV networks.
6. Julian Lennon has not had as much success as a songwriter as his father.
7. John F. Kennedy was the youngest U.S. president.
8. Prince Harry has been in the army since he was 20.

CD2 | 29

1. John Lennon started his first band when he was 15. His eldest son, Julian, has been in the music business since he was 19. He has made seven albums so far. His last album, *Conscious*, came out in 2008.
2. John F. Kennedy became President of the United States in 1960 and was assassinated in Dallas, Texas, in 1963. His niece, Maria Shriver, has worked as a TV journalist since the 1980s and has written six books. In 1986 she married the actor Arnold Schwarzenegger, who became governor of California in 2003.
3. Steve Irwin was the star of the Australian TV show *The Crocodile Hunter*. In 2006 he was killed by a stingray. His young daughter, Bindi Irwin, spoke at his funeral. Bindi is a TV star like her father. She has had her own wildlife show, *Bindi the Jungle Girl*, since she was two and she has appeared on many other TV shows around the world.
4. Lady Diana Spencer married Charles, Prince of Wales, when she was just 20 and became Princess Diana. However, in 1996, after 14 difficult years of marriage, they divorced. In 1997 she died in a car crash in Paris. Her younger son, Prince Harry, often got into trouble as a teenager. However, he has now joined the army and a few years ago he fought in Afghanistan.

CD2 | 30

1. When did John Lennon start his first band?
   When he was 15.
2. How long has Julian Lennon been in the music business?
   Since he was 19.
3. When did John F. Kennedy become president?
   In 1960.
4. How many books has Maria Shriver written?
   Six.
5. How was Steve Irwin killed?
   By a stingray.
6. How long has Bindi Irwin had her own wildlife show?
   Since she was two.
7. Who did Princess Diana marry?
   Charles, Prince of Wales.
8. Where did Prince Harry fight?
   In Afghanistan.

CD2 | 31 **see page 52**

CD2 | 32

A Where do you live, Anna?
B In an apartment on Green Street.
A How long have you lived there?
B Only for, um, … three months. Yes, since June.
A And why did you move?
B Well, we wanted to live near the park.

CD2 | 33

1. **A** What do you do?
   B I work in advertising.
   A Really? How long have you done that?
   B For … just over two years.
   A And what did you do before that?
   B I worked for a small publishing company.
2. **A** Do you have a car?
   B Yes, we have a Toyota.
   A How long have you had it?
   B Since April this year.
   A Did you pay a lot for it?
   B Not really. It was $6,000.
3. **A** Do you know Alan Brown?
   B Yes, I do.
   A How long have you known him?
   B For a long time—about ten years.
   A Where did you meet him?
   B We met in L.A.—at film school.

CD2 | 34 **The band Cherry Hill**

I = Interviewer R = Rachel J = Jack Jh = Jin-hee G = Gabe D = Diego

I … and that was Cherry Hill playing the song "Wait for the Answer" from their mini-album *Ozone Park*. And here we have the five band members in the studio! Welcome, guys!
All Hello. Hi, there. It's good to be here.
I Now, tell us a bit about yourselves. How long have you all been together as a band?
R Well, my brother Jack and I have always had a band!
J That's right. Since we were teenagers, really.
R First, we started a band called Silent Bob in 2004. Then, in … 2007, Gabe and Diego joined us and we changed our name to Cherry Hill. Finally, Jin-hee here joined two years ago.
I So, Rachel, how did you start?
R Well, when I was about 16, I started writing songs in my bedroom and recording them on a tape recorder. Our first band was with some other kids from high school, wasn't it, Jack?
J Yes, but some of our first concerts were pretty bad!
R Yeah, they were!
I So in Cherry Hill, which instruments do you all play?
R We all play several instruments. I sing and play guitar and piano.
J And I play bass, violin, trumpet, keyboards…
R In fact, anything!
Jh I play bass and guitar.
G I play guitar as well, and drums.
D And I play … drums … and drums! [*all laugh*]
I And how would you describe your style of music?
J We're a rock band.
I Who has influenced you the most?
J Firstly, Neil Young, because he's so passionate about his music.
G And also a band called The Flaming Lips, who are just amazing.
D Yeah, and now we've toured with The Flaming Lips, which is just a dream come true for us.
All Yeah.
R And recently, I've become really interested in Bob Dylan. He's written so many fantastic songs for so many years.
I You've toured Europe a few times. What was that like?
G It was an amazing experience! So much history and culture is there.
D We had a great tour playing with The Fiery Furnaces.
I Where else have you played? What other places have you been to?
R We've played in South America twice, in Argentina and Brazil. And last year we played in concerts in Korea and Japan!
J Yeah, they certainly aren't places we ever expected to play!
G And in Hong Kong we played with some great friends of ours, Nine by Ten.
I Your first album, *Don't Let Me Up*, came out in 2007. How many albums have you made since then?
G We've made two mini-albums. One's called *Extra Perfect* and we've just finished another called *Ozone Park*. There are six songs on each of them.

I So what's coming up in the future? What are your plans?
R Well, first, we're going back to play in Europe, and then we're going to Australia for the first time! We're looking forward to that.
I Well, guys, good luck with everything. Thanks a lot! It was great talking to you. Are you going to play us something to end the interview?
J Yes, this song is called "That's the Word."
I Allright everyone. Here's Cherry Hill!

CD2 35 **H = Host A = Alex (Reporter) D = Davina PA = Personal assistant**

H Our reporter Alex Thompson spoke to Davina Moody outside her hotel.
A Hey Davina! Is it true what we've all read in today's *Hollywood Star*?
D I just don't know how you guys can write this stuff about me!
A So it's all false? You don't have six bodyguards?
D No, I don't. I've never had six bodyguards. Three usually—well, maybe four sometimes.
A And the carpet! What about the carpet?
D Look. It was raining and I asked for an umbrella, not a carpet!
A But not a yellow umbrella, Davina? Is it true you hate anything yellow, especially roses?
D This is crazy. OK so I've never worn yellow dresses. I look sick in yellow stuff. But red roses, yellow roses, white roses? Like, who cares? Roses are roses. They're all the same to me.
A Too bad you missed the premiere of your movie.
D That's so not true. I did not miss it. I was just a little late.
A Like three hours late! How's your poor fingernail?
D Well, it's still not good …
A Aw! Davina. Hey, what about the movie? Have you read what the papers are saying about *The Lady Loves To*? They all …
PA Miss Moody does not want to talk about the movie. Come on, Davina. Come on, Pooksie! We have a plane to catch.
D Bye, guys.

CD2 36

artist, politician, musician, accountant, decorator, photographer, receptionist, interpreter, scientist, librarian, electrician, lawyer

CD2 37 **see page 56**

CD2 38

1. **A** Do you like cooking?
   B Yes.
2. **A** Do you like cooking?
   B Yes, I do, especially Chinese food.

CD2 39 and **CD2 40** **see page 57**

CD2 41

1. **A** Are those new jeans you're wearing?
   B No, they aren't. I've had them for years.
2. **A** Have you been in the U.S. a long time?
   B No, I haven't. Only a few months.
3. **A** Can you play any musical instruments?
   B Yes, I can actually. I can play the violin.
4. **A** Do you like studying English?
   B Yes, I do. Most of the time I like it a lot.

CD2 42

1. **A** Is it still raining?
   B No, it isn't. It's just stopped.
2. **A** Did you see the football game last night?
   B Yes, I did. It was a great game.
3. **A** Do you have change for a dollar?
   B No, sorry, I don't. I only have a ten-dollar bill.
4. **A** Have you tried the new pizza place?
   B Yes, I have. I went there last weekend with Frank.
5. **A** Are you ambitious?
   B Yes, I am. I want to have my own business one day.
6. **A** Are you doing anything tonight?
   B No, I'm not. Why? What are you doing?

UNIT 8

CD2 43 **I = Interviewer T = Tristan**

I What hours do you work, Tristan?
T It depends. I sometimes have to work at night but I usually work about eight to ten hours a day. It's hard to be exact.
I How often do you have to work at night?
T Well, I have to be on call two nights a week.
I And do you have to work on weekends?
T Sometimes. In this job you have to work very odd hours. You never know if there'll be an emergency.
I Tell me about your days.
T Well, there's always variety and that's good. In the mornings I work here in the clinic, but in the afternoons I have to go out on visits—often, here in the countryside, to farms.
I What's the most difficult thing about the job?
T Well, it's the night shift, really. When I'm on call at night I don't have to stay in the clinic. I can go home but I can never relax. I can't just fall asleep in front of the TV. And when I get home after an emergency, I find it really difficult to sleep.
I I hear the training's quite hard.
T Oh yes, I had to study for five years. I was at City University, and as part of my training I came here for work experience and when I graduated, they offered me a job. I didn't have to look for a job.
I That was lucky.
T Yes, I know, but the other students in my class all have good jobs now.
I Are you well-paid?
T It's not too bad! When I have my own practice it'll be better.
I And what are the secrets of being good at your job?
T Well, obviously you have to love working with animals, but you also have to be sensitive to their owners—pets are important to people and sometimes you have to give bad news. You have to stay calm in emergencies. Two nights ago I helped a sheep have triplets—three's very unusual for a sheep. The farmer was delighted. When I save an animal's life, that's fantastic, no matter what time of night it is.
I And what are your plans for the future?
T Well, as I said, eventually I'd like to have my own practice. Anyway, nice to talk to you. I have to go now. Bye!
I Thanks, and bye!

CD2 44 **see page 59**

CD2 45

1. **A** My ex-boyfriend is going to my best friend's wedding. He was horrible to me. Should I go?
   B Of course you should. But look happy and wear a fantastic dress! I think you should show your ex that you're fine without him.
2. **A** There's a group of bullies at school. They're making my life miserable.
   B You must tell your parents and your principal about this. You shouldn't let these cowards ruin your life.
3. **A** I've fallen in love with my colleague. Should I tell him?
   B No, you shouldn't. It will only cause problems at work. I don't think you should have relationships with people you work with.
4. **A** I'm 19. I chat with a guy on the Internet. He wants to meet me. Should I go?
   B I don't think you should. You have no idea what he's really like. If you do go to meet him, you must take a friend with you. This is really important.

CD2 46 **Leaving home**

Ian Mitchell

My daughter Evie is living in New York now. She went there four months ago, and I'm really worried about her. She says she's having a great time, but she's still only 18, and I just think New York's such a dangerous place for a young woman. She shouldn't live so far away from home. Her mother went with her to help her look for somewhere to live. But I didn't go. I don't like New York. I don't like big cities.

Why did she have to go there, anyway? I don't understand. She says she wants to be a dancer, and she's taking some kind of class, a ballet class or something. But ballet isn't a real job, and you don't make much money being a dancer, do you? She's a smart girl. I think she should go to college.

She's living in an apartment there in New York by herself—she's on her own, and I don't like that at all! Apparently she has a boyfriend. We've never met him—Michael, I think his name is. He doesn't have a job. But Evie works hard, though. She works on the weekends as a waitress in a restaurant. I just hope it's a nice place.

She calls home sometimes, but not a lot, and we call her, but usually her cell phone's turned off or she doesn't answer. When I do manage to talk to her, she just tells us that we should get a cell phone so she can text us. She says we shouldn't worry. How can we not worry? We're her parents, we miss her, and of course we worry. Sometimes I can't sleep at night. She really should come home more often.

CD2 47 **Leaving home**

Evie Mitchell

I want to be a professional dancer, so I came to New York four months ago to study at the National Ballet School. If you want a good dance career, you have to go to a good school and you have to start young. I'm almost 19—almost too old! I know my parents are worried about me living in New York, but it isn't dangerous. You just have to be careful, that's all. It was hard in the beginning. I didn't know anybody, and New York's such a big place, but I love it now. There's lots to do and see.

I'm living in a small apartment near the ballet school with Francine, another dance student. We're good friends now. And I also have a boyfriend! His name's Marco and he's studying at the same school. He still lives with his parents, pretty close to my apartment. His parents are really nice, and I spend a lot of time with them. I want to take Marco home to meet my parents, but the plane tickets are expensive. And I don't have much money. New York's really expensive, so Francine and I have to work every weekend. We teach children's dance classes at a school nearby. It's a lot of fun, actually!

I call my parents three times a week! My dad always sounds so worried! He shouldn't be. I try to tell him not to worry, but he doesn't listen. I love my mom and dad very much, but I can't live at home for the rest of my life. They really should come to New York and visit me. And I think they should get a cell phone. Then I could send them text messages, and maybe they wouldn't worry so much.

CD2 48 **R = Rachel Foley (Jack's mother) A = Alex**

R Good morning, Alex. Nice to meet you. I have to say that this is a first! Interviewing a man for this job.
A I know it's, it's unusual.
R Well, certainly a man has never applied for it before. Tell me, have you always been a nanny?

A No, not at all. I was studying engineering in New Zealand, and I knew I could earn a lot of money as an engineer, but it was boring, so I stopped and decided to look at other careers.
R OK, I understand that. But why a nanny? Why did you choose this career, a career in childcare?
A Well, obviously it's because I love children, but it was much more than that. You see my mother died when I was just 12 years old and I had to help my father take care of my younger brother and sister.
R Ah, I see. So you didn't have to have a lot of training to be a nanny?
A Oh yes, I did. I had to study for a year. I had to learn how to take care of children correctly. Actually, I was the only man in the training course—so I really enjoyed it!
R So what kinds of things did you learn?
A Well, you know, how to change diapers ...
R Very important!
A How to cook healthy meals for children. How to play with them and plan their days. We worked hard and we all felt fully-qualified for the job at the end of the training course.
R Well, before I offer you the job, I'd like you to meet Jack and spend some time with him to see how well you two get along together.
A I'd love to.
R Well, let's go and meet him. He's adorable! Oh I forgot—do you have any questions for me?
A Just one. Do I have to wear a uniform?
R No, that's not necessary. You look just fine.
A Thank you very much.
R OK, let's ...

CD2 49 see page 64

CD2 50

hairdresser, countryside, text message, advice column, flight attendant, homemaker, plane ticket, firefighter

CD2 51

1. I can't stop sneezing and blowing my nose. I have a cold.
2. I keep throwing up, and I have diarrhea. I have food poisoning.
3. It hurts when I walk. I've twisted my ankle.
4. I have a stomachache, and I keep going to the toilet. I have diarrhea.
5. My glands are swollen, and it hurts when I swallow. I have a sore throat.
6. I have a temperature, my whole body aches, and I feel awful. I have the flu.

CD2 52 At the doctors

D = Doctor M = Manuel

D Hello. Come in and sit down. What seems to be the matter?
M Well, I haven't felt very well for a few days. I have a bit of a temperature, and I just feel terrible. I have a stomachache as well.
D Have you been feeling nauseous?
M Yes, and I've vomited a few times.
D Mmm. Let me have a look at you. Your glands aren't swollen. Do you have a sore throat?
M Yes, I do actually.
D Have you eaten anything which might have disagreed with you?
M No, I don't think so ... Oh! I went to a barbecue a few days ago and the chicken was a little bit undercooked.
D It could be that, or just something that was left out of the fridge for too long.
M I think it was the chicken. I started feeling sick that night.
D Well, you should get some rest, and I'll give you something that will help with the stomachache and diarrhea. Drink plenty of liquids, and just take things easy for a while. I'll write you a prescription.
M Thank you. Can I get the prescription filled here?
D No, sorry. You have to take the prescription to a pharmacy.
M OK. Thank you very much. Good-bye.
D Good-bye.

UNIT 9

CD3 2

James Well, I speak Spanish pretty well, so before I go to college, I'm going to travel around South America. I have an old friend from school in Brazil and a pen pal in Chile, so I have some people to visit. I also want to go and see the rainforest! I'm working in a local restaurant right now, but as soon as I have enough money, I'll book a flight to Rio de Janeiro. I'll spend about a month in Brazil, then go on to Chile, I think. I'm really looking forward to it. It'll be fantastic! When I'm traveling around, I'll call home twice a week. If I don't keep in touch, I know my parents will worry!

CD3 3

Jessie I want to do something useful before I go to college next year, so I'm going to work in an old people's home as soon as I finish school. My job is to work with the nurses and help the people get dressed, and I'll go for walks with them—things like that. The job starts in July and it's for at least nine months. I'll also live in the home while I'm working there. I'll work until I've saved enough money for a vacation. I'm going to Florida with some friends after the job ends. I'll need to relax. I won't be tired if I have a vacation before school starts!

CD3 4

A I'm going on safari to Africa.
B But what will you do if you get chased by wild animals?
A It'll be OK. I'll be in a car, so I won't get chased. But I hope I'll see lots of wild animals.
B But what if it's the rainy season?
A Don't be silly! I won't go when it's the rainy season.
B Oh, but what if there are lots of insects? You hate insects.
A I'm going to take lots of insect repellant. It won't be a problem.
B And the sun—it'll be so hot. What if you get sunburned?
A I'm going to take lots of sunscreen, too. I'll be fine.
B But it'll be so frightening. What if you get lost in the jungle?
A Look, I won't be alone. I'll have a driver and a guide.
B But what if your car breaks down?
A I'm sure it won't, and if it does, the driver will fix it.
B Oh, but at night! What if you have to sleep in a tent?
A I'll be happy to sleep in a tent, under the stars. It'll be exciting.
B Better you than me. All those wild animals and mosquitos—ugh!
A Well, I'll love it. I just know I will!

CD3 5 M = Mom J = James

M Bye, sweetie. Have a good flight to Rio. Remember, we're expecting a phone call from you when you get there!
J I'll call you as soon as I arrive at Paolo's house.
M Good. What time will you get there?
J Well, the flight takes twelve hours. If the plane arrives on time, I'll be there about 11:30—Rio time, of course. If you're asleep when I call, I'll leave a message.
M I won't be asleep!
J OK! OK! Don't worry, Mom. I'll be fine.
M All right. But when you travel around the country, will you remember to call us regularly? Make sure you call twice a week.
J Of course! And I'll call you if I run out of money!
M Ha! But please take care of yourself. Give my best wishes to Paolo's parents, and don't forget to give them this present when you get to their house.
J Don't worry. I won't. Oh, my flight is boarding! Love you, Mom. Bye!
M Love you, James. Take care!

CD3 6

1. I did the dishes last night. It's your turn tonight.
2. Please tell the children not to make noise. I'm trying to work.
3. I did my best, but I still failed the test.
4. I don't know if I want the chicken or the fish. I just can't make up my mind.
5. My sister's very popular. She makes friends very easily.
6. Could you do me a favor and give me a ride to the station? Thanks.
7. My grandfather made a fortune in business. He's a rich man.

CD3 7

1. Everybody smile! I want to take a photo of you all.
2. I know my bedroom's a mess, but don't get angry. I'll clean it soon.
3. Bye-bye! See you soon. Take care of yourself.
4. Achoo! Oh dear. I think I'm getting a cold.
5. The doctor told me to take two tablets a day until I get better.
6. I like Ines very much. I get along well with her.
7. It takes a long time to become really fluent in a foreign language.
8. If you don't hurry up and get ready, we'll be late for the party.
9. I'm going to get a degree in Spanish before I move to Mexico.

CD3 8

1. How long does it take you to get ready in the morning?
2. What time did you get to school today?
3. Do you always do your homework?
4. Do you sometimes make mistakes in English?
5. When did you last get angry?
6. Who usually does the dishes in your family?
7. Did you take many photos on your last trip?
8. Do you know anyone who has made a lot of money?
9. Is your English getting better?
10. Would you like to get a degree in another language?

CD3 9 Going nowhere

I = Interviewer R = Roger M = Mary
A = Ana JC = Jean-Claude

I Good afternoon and welcome to this week's episode of *People and Places*. Now usually we interview people who have been somewhere interesting, but today we will be talking to people who prefer to stay at home! Nowadays, travel is so cheap and easy that most people have been abroad, or are planning to go in the future. So, it seems a very strange idea to many of us not to go anywhere. So why don't some people like traveling at all? We find out why. ...
I Here I am in Roger and Mary's little cottage in the town of Rockville. Now, you're both retired, aren't you?
R Yes, that's right.
I So what's the problem?
M Well, the problem is that Roger won't go anywhere! Here we are with the time and the money to do things, and I can't get him out of the house!
R Now, that's not true, Mary. We go and visit our friends and grandchildren, and we go shopping.
M That's not what I mean, Roger!

I Why don't you like traveling, Roger?
R Well, I don't see the point. I have everything here. We live in a nice part of the world. I love my home. My friends are all here in town. I'm always busy, and I never get bored. Going away is just too much trouble. There are delays at the airport, flights are canceled, it's just not worth it. When you get home you have a mountain of mail and the grass needs cutting. Anyway, you can see everything on TV these days.
M And we couldn't go abroad when we were younger, because we had four children and no money.
R That's right.
M But the craziest thing is that he has a travel secret.
I Oh, what's that?
M Well, when he was a teenager, he was a sailor!
R Yes, I was in the Navy for five years, and I sailed around the world ten times. So I saw the world 45 years ago. I don't need to see it again!

...

I I'm now with Ana, who works in a vegetarian restaurant in Brooklyn. So, why don't you like travelling, Ana?
A Well, I don't like some kinds of traveling, because I don't really like being a tourist and visiting famous tourist sights.
I Why not?
A There are usually lots of other tourists, you can't see anything, and you're destroying the place, too.
I What do you mean "destroying the place"?
A Well, I've been to a lot of famous places, like the Acropolis in Greece, and the Pyramids in Egypt, and they have too many people walking on them.
I I see. What else don't you like about traveling?
A Traveling by plane—it's bad for the environment. I think there are too many people flying to too many places. It's destroying our planet. We should try to take care of what we have, instead of trying to see it all before it disappears.
But if I tell my husband this, he gets mad—he just wants us to have a vacation somewhere nice!

...

I I'm now speaking to Jean-Claude, a French contractor from Provence. Tell me, Jean-Claude, what is it about foreign travel that puts you off?
JC It's because France can give me everything I want. Why should I go to another country to have food that isn't as good, museums that aren't as good, and a climate that isn't as good? France has everything. I go skiing in the winter in the Alps on the best ski slopes in the world, and in the summer when it's so hot, I go to the Cote d'Azur and go swimming in the lovely Mediterranean. What could be better?
I But aren't you curious to see the rest of the world? Wouldn't you like to go to the United States, for example?
JC I love Europe for its history and traditions, its culture and beauty. I don't need to travel so far. And what would I eat in the U.S.? I would be hungry all the time! I have been to Italy once and Greece once. That was enough for me.
I And your wife?
JC My wife needs to be near her mother, so she agrees with me. We stay *en France.*
I So there we have it. Some like to travel, others can't be bothered. It takes all sorts to make a world! Bye-bye!

CD3 | 10

You go down the path, past the pond, over the bridge, and through the gate. Then you go across the road. Take the path through the park and into the woods. When you come out of the woods, just follow the path up the steps and into the museum. It takes about five minutes or less.

UNIT 10

CD3 | 11

1. One billion text messages are sent every day.
2. Nokia is based in Finland.
3. The first cell phone network was built in Japan.
4. The first text message was sent in 1989.
5. Phones have even been designed for three-year-old children.
6. Climbers have been rescued from mountaintops.
7. Who knows what cell phones will be used for in the future.

CD3 | 12

Today, paper is used for hundreds of everyday things—books and newspapers, of course, but also money, stamps, cups, bags, and even some clothes. Long ago, before paper, people wrote on animal skins, bones, and stones. Then in 2700 BC, the Egyptians started to make papyrus, which was similar to paper. But the first real paper was invented in 105 AD by a Chinese government official, Ts'ai Lun. It was made from a mixture of plants and cloth. The Chinese kept their invention secret for centuries.
Finally, in the 10th century, paper was brought to Europe by the Arabs. The first European paper mill was built in Spain in 1150. Since the 18th century, most paper has been made out of wood, because it is much stronger than cloth.
Nowadays, each person uses about 300kg of paper every year. That's a lot of paper!

CD3 | 13

When was paper invented?
In 105 AD.
Where was the first real paper invented?
In China.
Who was it invented by?
Ts'ai Lun.
When was it brought to Europe by the Arabs?
In the 10th century.
Where was the first paper mill built?
In Spain.
How long has most paper been made out of wood?
Since the 18th century.
How much paper is used by each person every year?
About 300kg.

CD3 | 14

1. Paper is only used to make newspapers and books.
   No, it isn't. It's used to make hundreds of everyday things.
2. All clothes are made out of paper.
   No, they aren't. Only some are made out of paper.
3. Before paper, people wrote on trees.
   No, they didn't. They wrote on animal skins, bones, and stones.
4. Paper was invented by a Chinese scientist.
   No, it wasn't. It was invented by a Chinese government official.
5. The Chinese gave their invention to the world immediately.
   No, they didn't. They kept it secret for centuries.
6. The Chinese made paper out of wood.
   No, they didn't. They made it out of a mixture of plants and cloth.
7. The first paper mill in Europe was built in France.
   No, it wasn't. It was built in Spain.
8. Most paper has been made out of cloth since the 18th century.
   No, it hasn't. It's been made out of wood.

CD3 | 15

1. Do you always wear a watch?
   Yes, all the time. Don't you?
2. Are you good at telling jokes?
   No, I'm terrible. I can never remember the ending.
3. What was the last present you gave? To who?
   I think it was when I gave some flowers to my mom for Mother's Day.
4. What was the last phone call you made? To who? Why?
   Just before I came into class. I called a friend to ask if she's doing anything tonight.
5. Do you keep a diary?
   Yes, but I don't write very personal things in it, in case someone finds it.
6. Have you or a friend ever made a complaint in a restaurant?
   No, but my dad always complains. I think it's embarrassing, but he says it's important to do it.
7. Have you ever been homesick? Did you miss your family or your friends?
   Oh, yes, when I was an exchange student in Mexico when I was 16, I missed everybody.
8. What is the best advice you've ever been given?
   If you can't say anything nice, don't say anything at all.

CD3 | 16 Things that really annoy me

A I can't stand it when you call some place like a bank, or an airline, and you get a machine, not a person. And you hear, "Please choose from these options. For sales, say 'sales.' To report a problem, say, 'report a problem.' To pay a bill, say, 'blah blah blah.'"
B I know. And you feel like an idiot talking to a machine and repeating yourself over and over again. What's more, you don't *want* any of those options. What you want is something completely different! So what do you say? Which button do you press?
A And then when you do finally make a choice, you get another menu!
B And then another, and then another.
A Then you have to hold, and you get music forever.
B Until finally you hear, "Your call is very important to us, but all our operators are currently busy handling other calls." And then you're cut off!
A It drives me crazy. You never actually talk to a person.
B But it's machines I can't stand.
A What do you mean? Computers and stuff?
B No. All machines. I can't use our dishwasher—it has too many buttons. I can't use our washing machine. What temperature do I want? What program do I want?
A I know what you mean. I have no idea how to use the radio in my car. I can't even find the on/off button. It has a CD player and a cassette player, but I have no idea where they are. Ah, these machines! I tried to shop for a computer the other day, but I had to walk out because I didn't understand a word the salesman said.
B I use my son's computer, and I can get it to work some of the time, which is a miracle. But what drives me crazy is when I'm trying to print something and the computer says, "The printer cannot be found." And I'm saying, "But it's there, right next to you, you idiot! What do you mean you can't find it?"
A Another thing is the way everything gets out of date so quickly. I tried to buy a new battery for my camera the other day, and I was told, "Sorry, sir, but they don't make these batteries anymore." So I said, "But I just got this camera last year!" And the clerk, this boy who looked about 14, said, "Sorry, sir, but this camera ought to be in a museum." What a smart alec! Kids these days have no respect.
B The thing I can't stand is all these *choices.* You don't get one of anything, you get *hundreds.* Have you ever tried picking out a shampoo in the supermarket? Do you want shampoo for dry hair? Short hair? Blond hair? Do you want it with fruit? I mean, come on! They're selling shampoo with *fruit* in it. How can I decide? I just close my eyes and choose one.

A Now you've really got me started. Do you know how much it costs to … ?

CD3 17 and CD3 18 see page 81

CD3 19 Making phone calls

1. **P = Pete J = John**
   P Hello?
   J Hi, Pete. This is John.
   P Hi, John. How are you?
   J Good, thanks. How about you?
   P I'm all right.
   J So, Pete, I'm trying to get …
   P Hello? Hello? I can't hear you, John. You're breaking up.
   J … Oh, sorry. Can you hear me now?
   P Yeah, that's better.
   J Anyway, I'm calling because Jed can't make it on Thursday.
   P Oh yeah?
   J Yeah, so are you free on Friday instead?
   P I'm not sure. Can I get back to you about that?
   J Sure. You have my number.
   P Yes, it's here on my cell phone!
   J Oh good! Oh, and can you give me Andy's number? I can't find it anywhere.
   P I don't have it on me, sorry. I can give it to you when I call back.
   J Thanks! Talk to you later. Bye!
   P Bye.
2. **F = Francis, Andy's roommate J = John**
   F Hello.
   J Hello. Is this Andy?
   F I'm sorry, but he's out right now. Can I take a message?
   J Yeah. Can you tell him that John called, and I'll try again later? Do you know what time he'll be back?
   F In about an hour, I think.
   J OK, thanks. Good-bye.
   F Bye.
3. **R = Receptionist LM = Lucy Mendez S = Secretary A = Annette Baker**
   R Good morning. Wells International. Jenna speaking. How can I help you?
   LM Hello, could I speak to Annette Baker, please?
   R She's on another call. Would you mind holding?
   LM Sure, I'll hold.
   R OK. She's free now. I'll transfer you.
   LM Thank you.
   S Hello. Ms. Baker's office. Dawn speaking.
   LM Hello. Can I speak to Annette Baker please?
   S May I ask who's calling?
   LM This is Lucy Mendez.
   S I'll just see if she's at her desk, Ms. Mendez. … Yes, let me put you through.
   A Hello. Annette Baker speaking. How can I help you, Ms. Mendez?
   LM Hello. Well, I saw your advertisement in the newspaper, and I wondered if you could give me a little more information about …
4. **D = Dawn (secretary) S = Simon**
   D Hello. Annette Baker's office.
   S Can I speak to Dawn Edwards, please?
   D Speaking.
   S Hey, Dawn, this is Simon!
   D Simon? Simon! How are you? I haven't heard from you in ages!
   S I know. I'm sorry, I've been out of town. I called your mom and she gave me your work number. Listen, do you want to meet up this weekend?
   D Of course!
   S Great! I'll give you a call on Friday, then.
   D Sounds good.
   S OK. Talk to you soon. Bye now.
   D Bye, Simon!

UNIT 11

CD3 20

1. I found a wallet in the street.
   If I were you, I'd take it to the nearest police station.
2. I don't like my sister's boyfriend.
   If I were you, I wouldn't say anything.
3. I had an argument with my mother.
   If I were you, I'd buy her some flowers.
4. I never have enough money.
   If I were you, I'd stop buying so many CDs.
5. My neighbors make a lot of noise.
   If I were you, I'd move.
6. I really need to exercise more.
   If I were you, I'd bicycle to work.

CD3 21

Nisa Isaacs I live with my parents in a shantytown outside the city. My parents collect old newspaper and junk to sell. They don't make much money, so we're poor. But I'm going to change all that. I love school. I'm studying very hard, because I'm taking my high school exams next year. Then I'm going to get a job in an office in town. But that isn't my main ambition. I really want to go to college. So I'm going to work for a while to save some money. I'm hoping to be an architect, then I can build my parents a proper house.

Victor Lopez
I'm studying for my high school diploma, but I'm not sure what I want to study afterwards. I love doing art at school, so I might go to art school. That would be fun. I might become a designer. But I also enjoy Spanish language and literature, so I might study that in school. I'll have to get good test scores to do that. I'd also like to try living in another country. I have family in the U.S., so I might live there for a while. Perhaps I could study art and design in New York. That would be great!

CD3 22

1. A What's for dinner?
   B We're having lamb. It's in the oven.
2. A What time are we eating?
   B Don't worry. It'll be ready before your TV show.
3. A Who's eating with us?
   B I've invited Jerry, but he might be late. It depends on the traffic.
4. I'm going into town tomorrow. I'm having lunch with Jo at 1:00.
5. A Are you going to take a winter vacation this year?
   B I might. I haven't decided yet.

CD3 23

1. A What kind of car are you going to buy?
   B Well, I'd like to buy a Mercedes or a BMW. But of course, they would be too expensive, so I might get a Hyundai or a Toyota. One thing's for sure, it'll be used.
2. A Where are you going on vacation this year?
   B As usual Tom and I can't agree, so we might go to Canada, or maybe Mexico. You know us, we always book at the last minute anyway!
3. A What are we having to eat tonight?
   B Well, it might be steak or we might just order a pizza. Probably the pizza—I feel too tired to cook.
4. A Who are you going to the dance with?
   B Well, I might ask Tony, but then there's also Richard. He's a great dancer, so I might ask him.
5. A What would you do if you won the lottery?
   B In my dreams! But what would I do? Well, I might just give it all away to charity. No, actually, I think I might travel the world.

CD3 24 At a crossroads in life

Andy I just got some bad news about my job. I'm going to be laid off in three months. It's such a shock! I've worked for the same computer company for twelve years. I need to think what to do next. Actually, I've always dreamed of moving to Australia. So I might try that! I have a friend in Melbourne, and I'm sure he would help me to find a job there. But if I went to Australia, my parents would be so sad. And they wouldn't be able to visit me very much. It's so expensive. So I would have to find a really good job, so that I could come home a lot, or pay for them to visit me. That might not be easy.
Another thing I might do is start my own business, using my severance pay. What if I started a computer repair company? People are always having problems with their computers. If I did that, I'd have to work really hard in the beginning. It wouldn't be easy, but I would enjoy it, I think.

Lucy I'm so surprised! My boyfriend just asked me to marry him! It was terrible, because I couldn't give him an answer right away. You see, I really love my boyfriend, and I think I want to marry him sometime, but not yet.
He wants us to get married next June. That's only nine months away. I think it might be better to wait. If we got married in June, we'd have to save all our money for the wedding and a house. But I don't want to do that. I want us to enjoy ourselves while we're young. I want to go away and travel. I'd like to learn how to ride a horse and how to scubadive. Oh, there's a lot of things I want to do. If we waited a little while, we could do all those things.
If I got married now, I might feel trapped. That would be terrible. But what if I told him I didn't want to marry him yet? Would he understand? He might not, and I don't want to lose him. I do want to marry him. I just want to put the wedding off for a while. That's all.

Maureen Well, my husband died three months ago, and I have to decide what to do next. He was sick for a long time, so it wasn't a shock. But we were married for 41 years, and I can't imagine life without him.
I don't think I want to live in this house anymore. Anyway, it's so big for just one person. So I might sell it and move to an apartment. I'd feel safer if I lived in an apartment, because there would be other people around. I think it might be hard living on my own.
Or my daughter says I can live with her and her family. So I might do that, but I'm not sure. I love my daughter and my grandchildren very much. But if I lived with them, I wouldn't feel independent anymore. And I'm still young—I'm only 68! I'm healthy with plenty of friends. There's lots I can still do with my life, I'm sure. I just need to keep busy.

CD3 25

Andy Well, I am now the proud owner of a new business called Computer Solutions. It has been difficult, but everything's going well for now. In fact, my first customer was a woman named Annabel, and she's now my girlfriend! And guess where she's from—that's right!—Australia! We're going there this winter to visit her family.

Lucy I'm not married, but yes, I'm still with Steve. He was really upset with me at first, when I told him I didn't want to get married yet. But we talked and talked about it, and he finally agreed that we should wait. We're saving a little money every month for our future wedding. But we are also saving to go on vacation!

Maureen I still miss Tony every day, but life's getting a bit easier. I sold the house, and I've moved into a little apartment in a retirement home. It's not too far from my daughter's house, so I see her and my grandchildren a lot. It's very nice here, and I've made some new friends. I have a special friend here named Jeff. He's on his own, too, so we do lots of things together.

CD3 26

1. I'm looking for my glasses. Have you seen them anywhere?
2. I like these jeans. Can I try them on?
3. You shouldn't drop trash on the ground! Pick it up!
4. Don't throw away the newspaper. I haven't read it yet.
5. If you don't feel well, go and lie down.
6. "Do you like my dress?"
   "Let me see. Turn around. Yes. Very nice."
7. Why are all these lights on? Turn them off.

CD3 27

1. I've run out of milk, so I can't have any cereal.
2. Can I look up a word in your dictionary?
3. My boss is a great guy. I get along well with him.
4. Oh, no! Our car's broken down, and there isn't a gas station for miles!
5. Look out! There's broken glass on the floor.

CD3 28

1. How do you get along with your parents?
2. When did you last fly somewhere? Did your flight take off on time?
3. Do you throw away all your trash, or do you recycle some of it?
4. When did you last try something on in a clothes store? Did you buy it?
5. When you see litter in the street, do you pick it up?
6. Have you ever run out of gas? What did you do?
7. If you won a lot of money, would you give any of it away? To who?

CD3 29 and **CD3 30** **see page 89**

CD3 31

1. Their house is such a mess! I don't know how they live in it.
2. There were so many people at the party! There was nowhere to dance.
3. I'm so hungry! I could eat for days.
4. Jane and Pete are such nice people! But I can't stand their kids.
5. I've spent so much money this week! I don't know where it all went.
6. A present! For me? You're so nice! You really didn't have to.
7. We had such a great time! Thank you so much for inviting us.
8. Molly's such a smart dog! She understands every word I say.

CD3 32 **see page 109**

UNIT 12

CD3 33 **I = Interviewer A = Andy**

1. I How long have you been sleeping on the streets?
   A For a year. It was very cold at first, but after a while you get used to it.
2. I Why did you come to New York?
   A I came here to look for work, and I never left.
3. I How long have you been selling *Street News*?
   A For six months. I'm outside the subway station seven days a week selling the newspaper.
4. I Have you made many friends?
   A Lots. But I get fed up with people who think I drink or do drugs. My problem is I'm homeless. I want a job, but I need somewhere to live before I can get a job. So I need money to get somewhere to live, but I can't get money because I don't have a job, and I can't get a job because I don't have anywhere to live. I'm trapped! But now I'm trying hard to make some money by selling *Street News*.
5. I How many copies do you sell a day?
   A Usually about 70. But I've brought 100 with me.
6. I How many copies have you sold today?
   A So far, ten. But it's still early. Here, take one!

CD3 34

1. How long have you been trying to find a job?
2. How many jobs have you had?
3. How long have you been standing here today?
4. How did you lose your business?
5. How long have you had your dog?
6. Who's your best friend?
7. Where did you meet him?
8. How long have you known each other?

CD3 35

1. How long have you been trying to find a job?
   For over a year. It's been really hard.
2. How many jobs have you had?
   About 20, maybe more. I've done everything.
3. How long have you been standing here today?
   Since 8:00 this morning, and I'm freezing.
4. How did you lose your business?
   I had a small company, but it went out of business, and then I started having health problems, so things got worse.
5. How long have you had your dog?
   I've had him for about two months, that's all.
6. Who's your best friend?
   A guy named Bob, who's also from Pennsylvania, like me.
7. Where did you meet him?
   I met him here in New York.
8. How long have you known each other?
   Almost a year. I met him right after I came to New York.

CD3 36

1. A Good-bye, everyone! I'm going on vacation tomorrow.
   B Where are you going?
   A Australia. I'm taking my family to visit their cousins in Sydney.
   B Lucky you! When you come back, bring me a T-shirt!
2. A Listen, class! Please finish your work before you go home. And tomorrow, don't forget to bring in your money for the school trip. We're going to the Natural History Museum.
   B Oh, Miss Jones! Can't you take us somewhere more exciting?
3. A Daniel, you were out very late last night. What time did you come home?
   B It was before midnight, Mom, honest. Nick brought me home in his car.
4. A I've been decorating my new house. You must come and visit me on Saturday. And bring Emma and Jake with you. I'll cook you dinner.
   B Great! We'll bring something for dessert.
5. A I'll miss you when I go back home to Seoul. You must come and visit me this summer.
   B I'd love to! I want you to take this photo with you. It will remind you of the day we went to the museum together.
   A OK. And when you visit, bring me some more English books to read!
6. A I'm going to Seattle tomorrow, so tonight my best friend is coming to my house to say good-bye. She's bringing a present she wants me to take to her sister in Seattle.
   B Well, have a good trip!

CD3 37 **see page 96**

CD3 38

1. A Excuse me! Can I get past?
   B Pardon me?
   A Can I get past, please?
   B I'm sorry. I didn't hear you. Yes, of course.
   A Thanks a lot.
2. A I hear you're getting married soon. Congratulations!
   B That's right, this July. July 21st. Can you come to the wedding?
   A July 21st? Oh, what a shame! That's when I'm away on vacation.
   C Don't worry. We'll send you some pictures.
   A That's very nice of you.
3. A Good luck on your exam!
   B Same to you. I hope we both pass.
   A Did you go out last night?
   B No, of course not. I went to bed early. What about you?
   A Me, too. See you later. After the exam, let's go for coffee.
   B Good idea.
4. A Here's my train!
   B Don't worry. It doesn't leave for another five minutes.
   A Well, I'd better get on, anyway, and find my seat. It was great staying with you. Thank you for having me.
   C You're welcome. It was a pleasure.
   A Good-bye, then. See you again soon, I hope.

B&C Bye! Have a nice trip!

CD3 39

1. Excuse me! You're sitting in my seat.
2. Have a great weekend!
3. Excuse me, do you know the way ...?
4. Thanks for all your help.
5. I can't come to your party.
6. Bye! I'll give you a call when I arrive home.
7. Anna was so rude to everyone last time. Are you going to invite her again?
8. I have my driver's test tomorrow.
9. I passed my driver's test!
10. We're really glad you came to stay with us.

CD3 40

Song, "Come Away with Me"

CD3 41

Song, "What If"

Grammar Reference

UNIT 1

1.1 Tenses ▶ Ex. 1

This unit has examples of the Present Simple and Present Continuous, the Past Simple, and two future forms: *going to* and the Present Continuous for the future. All these are covered again in later units.

Present tenses Unit 2
Past tenses Unit 3
Future forms Units 5 and 9

The goal in this unit is to review what you already know.

Present tenses
*He **lives** with his parents.*
*I'**m enjoying** the class.*

Past tense
*He **went** to the U.S. last year.*
*I **started** studying English two years ago.*

Future forms
*I'**m going to work** as a doctor.*
*What **are** you **doing** tonight?*

1.2 Auxiliary verbs ▶ Ex. 2

Present Continuous

The Present Continuous uses the auxiliary verb *to be* in the affirmative, questions, and negatives.

Affirmative
*I'**m** studying medicine.*
*She'**s** living at home.*

Question
Are you enjoying the class?

Negative
*We **aren't** learning French.*

Present Simple and Past Simple

The Present Simple and the Past Simple use the auxiliary verb *do* in questions and negatives. There is no auxiliary verb in the affirmative.

Affirmative
He lives in Mexico.
We went out last night.

Question
*Where **does** she work?*
*Who **did** you see yesterday?*

Negative
*I **don't** have a job.*
*They **didn't** watch TV.*

1.3 Questions ▶ Ex. 3–4

1. *Yes/No* questions have no question word.
   Are you hot? *Does he live here?*
2. Questions can also begin with a question word.

what	where	which	how	who	when	why	whose

   ***Where**'s the station?*
   ***Why** are you laughing?*
   ***Whose** coat is this?*
   ***How** does she go to work?*
3. *What*, *which*, and *whose* can be followed by a noun.
   ***What time** is it?*
   ***Which coat** is yours?*
   ***Whose book** is this?*
4. *Which* is generally used when there is a limited choice.
   ***Which** is your pen? The black one or the blue one?*

   This rule is not always true.
   ***What** / **Which** | newspaper do you read?*
5. *How* can be followed by an adjective or an adverb.
   ***How big** is his new car?*
   ***How fast** does it go?*

   How can also be followed by *much* or *many*.
   ***How much** is this sandwich?*
   ***How many** brothers and sisters do you have?*

Exercises

1 Write the verbs in parentheses in the correct tense.

1. The president _____ (live) in the White House.
2. Last year we _____ (visit) Tokyo.
3. _____ you _____ (go) out yesterday?
4. My sister _____ (speak) three languages.
5. I like the shirt you _____ (wear).
6. They _____ (not/see) the movie last night.
7. _____ you _____ (know) my brother?
8. They _____ (arrive) at 11:00 P.M. tomorrow.
9. Vicky _____ (enjoy) meeting new people.
10. I _____ (not/like) working late at night.

2 Complete the sentences with a verb form from the box.

don't	Do	's	doesn't	'm	didn't	aren't (x2)

1. I _____ really enjoying this book.
2. _____ you always walk to work?
3. Why _____ you come to school yesterday?
4. He _____ going to study Asian art next year.
5. Jo _____ eat meat. She's a vegetarian.
6. They _____ coming by bus. They have a car.
7. Sorry, I _____ understand.
8. We _____ working tonight. We're going out.

3 Choose the correct question word.

which	whose	who	why	where	when	what	how

1. _____ is the bank?
2. _____ are you smiling?
3. _____ time is it?
4. _____ do I open this?
5. _____ books are these?
6. _____ do you live with?
7. _____ is yours – this one or that one?
8. _____ did you last see Peter?

4 Write questions for these answers.

1. They're watching the news.
   _____
2. James arrived yesterday.
   _____
3. She lives in Rio.
   _____
4. Joon comes from Korea.
   _____
5. Yes, I can drive.
   _____
6. I like blues and rock 'n' roll.
   _____
7. It costs 25 dollars.
   _____
8. No, he didn't enjoy the movie.
   _____
9. They're coming at 3 o'clock.
   _____

UNIT 2

2.1 Present Simple ▶ Ex. 1

Form

Affirmative and negative

I We You They	live don't live	near here.
He She It	lives doesn't live	

Question

Where	do	I we you they	live?
	does	he she it	

Short answer

Do you like Peter? — ***Yes, I do.***
Does he speak Thai? — ***No, he doesn't.***

Use

The Present Simple is used to express:

1. a habit.
   *I **get up** at 7:30.*
   *He **eats** too much.*
2. a fact which is always true.
   *Vegetarians **don't eat** meat.*
   *We **come** from Brazil.*
3. a fact which is true for a long time.
   *I **live** in Miami.*
   *She **works** in a bank.*

2.2 Present Continuous ▶ Ex. 2

Form

am/is/are + -ing (present participle)

Affirmative and negative

I	'm (am) 'm not	working.
He She It	's (is) isn't	
We You They	're (are) aren't	

Question

What	am	I	wearing?
	is	he she it	
	are	we you they	

Short answer

Are you going? — ***Yes, I am./No, I'm not.***
Is Anna working? — ***Yes, she is./No, she isn't.***

Use

The Present Continuous is used to express:

1. an activity happening now.
   *They're **playing** soccer in the backyard.*
   *She can't talk now because she's **washing** her hair.*
2. an activity happening around now, but perhaps not at the moment of speaking.
   *She's **studying** math at the university.*
   *I'm **reading** a good book by Henry James.*
3. a planned future arrangement.
   *I'm **meeting** Jane at 10:00 tomorrow.*
   *What **are** you **doing** this evening?*

2.3 Present Simple and Continuous ▶ Ex. 3–4

1. Look at the right and wrong sentences.
   *Hank **comes** from Canada.*
   NOT ~~*Hank is coming from Canada.*~~

   *This is a great party. Everyone **is having** fun.*
   NOT ~~*This is a great party. Everyone has fun.*~~

2. Some verbs express a state, not an activity, and are usually used in the Present Simple.
   *I **like** soda.*
   NOT ~~*I'm liking soda.*~~

   *I **know** what you mean.*
   NOT ~~*I'm knowing what you mean.*~~

   Similar verbs are *think, agree, understand, love.*

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the Present Simple form of the verbs in the box.

forget	*not eat*	*go*	*live*	*end*	*not speak*

1. My cousin _____ in Canada.
2. I _____ French or Spanish.
3. Bill often _____ people's names.
4. The test _____ at exactly 12:30.
5. Nadia _____ very healthy food.
6. I _____ shopping for clothes every weekend.

2 Complete the sentences with the Present Continuous form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. He _____ (study) biology at college.
2. We _____ (not/go) away this summer.
3. Sue _____ (not/enjoy) the meal.
4. _____ you _____ (see) the doctor tomorrow?
5. Where _____ you _____ (go) on vacation?
6. Why _____ they _____ (laugh)?

3 Check (✓) the correct sentences.

1. ☐ We usually go by bus.
   ☐ We're usually going by bus.
2. ☐ He speaks Korean and Japanese.
   ☐ He's speaking Korean and Japanese.
3. ☐ I'm loving ice cream.
   ☐ I love ice cream.
4. ☐ What do you do tonight?
   ☐ What are you doing tonight?

4 Complete the sentences with the Present Simple or Continuous form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Alex _____ (go) to the gym three times a week.
2. I _____ (think) he's in great shape.
3. We _____ (meet) Hanna at 9:00 tonight.
4. What _____ you _____ (do) now?
5. Amanda always _____ (look) beautiful!
6. _____ you _____ (come)? The movie is starting.

UNIT 3

3.1 Past Simple ▶ Ex. 1–2

Form

The form of the Past Simple is the same for all persons.

Affirmative and negative

I He She It We You They	arrived went ——— didn't arrive didn't go	yesterday.

Question

When	did	she/you/they/etc.	arrive?

Did you go to work yesterday?

Short answer
Yes, I did./No, I didn't.

Spelling of regular verbs

1. The normal rule is to add *-ed* or *-d*.
   worked started lived loved
2. Some short verbs with only one syllable double the consonant.
   stopped planned
3. For verbs ending in a consonant + *-y*, change the *-y* to *-ied*.
   studied carried

There are many common **irregular verbs**. See the list on page 153.

Use

1. The Past Simple expresses a past action that is now finished.
   *We **played** tennis last Sunday.*
   *I **worked** in Tokyo from 1994 to 1999.*
   *John **left** two minutes ago.*
2. Notice the time expressions that are used with the Past Simple.

I did it	last year. last month. five years ago. yesterday morning. in 1985.

3.2 Past Continuous ▶ Ex. 3–4

Form

was/were + verb + *-ing* (present participle)

Affirmative and negative

I He She It	was wasn't	working.
We You They	were weren't	

Question

What	was	I he she it	doing?
	were	we you they	

Were you working yesterday?

Short answer
Yes, I was./No, I wasn't.

Use

1. The Past Continuous expresses a past activity that has duration.
   *I had a good time while I **was living** in Brazil.*
   *You **were making** a lot of noise last night. **Were** you **having** a party?*
2. The activity was in progress *before*, and probably *after*, a time in the past.
   *"What **were** you **doing** at 8:00 last night?" "I **was watching** TV."*
   *When I woke up this morning, the sun **was shining**.*

3.3 Past Simple and Continuous

1. The Past Simple expresses completed past actions. The Past Continuous expresses activities in progress. Compare:
   *It **rained** every day of our vacation.*
   *We went for a swim even though it **was raining**.*
2. A Past Simple action can interrupt a Past Continuous activity in progress.
   *When I **called** Simon he **was taking** a shower.*
   *I **was doing** my homework when Jane **arrived**.*
3. In stories, the Past Continuous can describe the scene. The Past Simple tells the action.
   *It was a beautiful day. The sun **was shining** and the birds **were singing**, so we **decided** to go for a picnic. We **put** everything in the car …*
4. Notice how the questions refer to different time periods.
   *What **were** you **doing** when you lost your passport?*
   *I **was shopping**.*

   *What **did** you **do** when you lost your passport?*
   *I **went** to the police station.*

3.4 Prepositions in time expressions ▶ Ex. 5

at	**in**	**on**
at six o'clock at midnight	in 2007. in the morning/afternoon/ evening in December in summer in two weeks' time	on Saturday on Monday morning on Christmas Day on January 18
no preposition		
yesterday (evening) the day before yesterday	last night/week two weeks ago	

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the Past Simple of the verbs in parentheses.

1. I _____ (stop) working at 8 P.M.
2. Nick _____ (work) in a hotel last summer.
3. We _____ (not/see) our friends last week.
4. _____ they _____ (go) to Mexico in July?
5. Alan _____ (leave) work early today.
6. When _____ you _____ (arrive)?
7. Laura _____ (fix) my computer for me last night.
8. My grandparents _____ (have) a house by the beach.
9. When _____ the show _____ (end)?
10. They _____ (plan) a surprise party for us.

2 Write the Past Simple sentences in the correct order.

1. lost / Jack / his job / ago / a month
   _____ .
2. didn't / last / We / take / year / a vacation
   _____ .
3. at lunchtime / We / in the park / yesterday / a picnic / had
   _____ .
4. sent / you / I / an e-mail / but / reply / didn't
   _____ .
5. go / Why / night / did / so late / you / to bed / last
   _____ ?

3 Write the Past Continuous sentences in the correct order.

1. left / playing / when / they / I / were / in the yard
   _____ .
2. I / when / just leaving / was / rang / the phone / home
   _____ .
3. laughing / Why / you / me / at / you / were
   _____ ?
4. wasn't / My computer / couldn't / I / so / working / send e-mails
   _____ .

4 Complete the text. Use the Past Simple and Past Continuous.

It was such a terrible night! The wind (1) _____ (blow) and the trees (2) _____ (make) a lot of noise. Suddenly, I (3) _____ (hear) a big crash of thunder and it (4) _____ (start) to rain. As I (5) _____ (run) home, I (6) _____ (fall) over and got soaking wet. The rain (7) _____ (come) down so hard that it (8) _____ (be) difficult to see anything. I was very happy when I finally (9) _____ (arrive) back at my house.

5 Choose the correct preposition.

1. They started the class *on / at / in* April.
2. Let's meet *on / in/ at* 8:30.
3. I went to college *in / at / on* the 1990s.
4. What would you like to do *at / in/ on* the morning?
5. We always go shopping *on / in/ at* the weekend.
6. Wendy bought a car *at / on / in* November.
7. Do you eat special food *at / on / in* Thanksgiving?
8. What did he do *at / on / in* Sunday?
9. I'll give you a call *at / on / in* two weeks' time.
10. *In / On / At* New Year's Day we often go to the beach.

UNIT 4

4.1 Expressions of quantity ▶ Ex. 1–4

Count and noncount nouns

1. It is important to understand the difference between count and noncount nouns.

Count nouns	Noncount nouns
a cup	water
a girl	sugar
an apple	milk
an egg	music
a kilo	money

We can say *three cups, two girls, ten kilos.* We can count them. We cannot say ~~*two waters*~~, ~~*three musics*~~, ~~*one money*~~. We cannot count them.

2. Count nouns can be singular or plural.
   *This **cup is** full.*
   *These **cups are** empty.*
   Noncount nouns can only be singular.
   *The **water is** cold.*
   *The **weather was** terrible.*

much and *many*

1. We use *much* with noncount nouns in questions and negatives.
   *How **much money** do you have?*
   *There isn't **much milk** left.*
2. We use *many* with count nouns in questions and negatives.
   *How **many people** were at the party?*
   *I didn't take **many photos** on holiday.*

some and *any*

1. *Some* is used in affirmative sentences.
   *I'd like **some** sugar.*
2. *Any* is used in questions and negatives.
   *Is there **any** sugar in this tea?*
   *Do you have **any** brothers and sisters?*
   *We don't have **any** dishwashing liquid.*
   *I didn't buy **any** apples.*
3. We use *some* in questions that are requests or offers.
   *Can I have **some** cake?*
   *Would you like **some** soda?*
4. The rules are the same for the compounds *someone, anything, anybody, somewhere,* etc.
   *I've got **something** for you.*
   *Hello? Is **anybody** there?*
   *There isn't **anywhere** to go in my town.*

a few and *a little*

1. We use *a few* with count nouns.
   *There are **a few eggs** left, but not many.*
2. We use *a little* with noncount nouns.
   *Can you give me **a little help**?*

a lot/lots of

1. We use *a lot/lots of* with both count and noncount nouns.
   *There's **a lot of butter**.*
   *I've got **lots of friends**.*
2. *A lot/lots of* can be used in questions and negatives.
   *Are there **lots of tourists** in your country?*
   *There isn't **a lot of butter**, but there's enough.*

4.2 Articles – *a* and *the* ▶ Ex. 5

1. The indefinite article *a* or *an* is used with singular, countable nouns to refer to a thing or an idea for the first time.
   We have ***a cat*** *and* ***a dog****.*
   There's ***a supermarket*** *in Adam Street.*
2. The definite article *the* is used with singular and plural, countable and noncountable nouns when both the speaker and the listener know the thing or idea already.
   We have a cat and a dog. ***The cat*** *is old, but* ***the dog*** *is just a puppy.*
   I'm going to ***the supermarket****. Do you want anything?* (We both know which supermarket.)

Indefinite article

The indefinite article is used:

1. with professions.
   I'm ***a teacher****.*
   She's ***an architect****.*
2. with some expressions of quantity.
   a pair of ***a little*** ***a couple of*** ***a few***
3. in exclamations with *what* + a count noun.
   What a *beautiful* ***day****!*
   What a pity!

Definite article

The definite article is used:

1. before seas, rivers, hotels, theaters, museums, and newspapers.
   the Atlantic ***the Metropolitan Museum***
   the **Washington Times** ***the Ritz***
2. if there is only one of something.
   the sun ***the president*** ***the government***
3. with superlative adjectives.
   He's ***the richest man*** *in the world.*
   Jane's ***the oldest*** *in the class.*

No article

There is no article:

1. before plural and noncountable nouns when talking about things in general.
   I like potatoes.
   Milk is good for you.
2. before countries, towns, streets, languages, magazines, meals, airports, stations, and mountains.
   I had lunch with Paul.
   I bought Cosmopolitan *at South Station.*
3. before some places and with some forms of transport.

at home	in/to bed	by car
at/to school	by bus	by plane
at/to work	by train	on foot

   She goes to work by bus.
   I was at home yesterday evening.
4. in exclamations with *what* + a noncount noun.
   What *beautiful* ***weather****!*
   What *loud* ***music****!*

Note

In the phrase *go home*, there is no article and no preposition.
I ***went home*** *early.* NOT ~~*I went to home early.*~~

Exercises

1 Write C (count) or N (noncount).

1. butter _____
2. time _____
3. advice _____
4. girl _____
5. banana _____
6. sugar _____
7. child _____
8. weather _____

2 Write *how much, how many, much,* or *many.*

1. _____ time do we have left?
2. There isn't _____ milk.
3. _____ hours do you work every day?
4. There weren't _____ people at the party.
5. _____ children does Sue have?

3 Choose the correct option.

1. Just *a few / a little* milk in my coffee, please.
2. There's *lots of / a few* sugar in the cupboard.
3. Let's play *a few / a little* more songs.
4. I don't know *anything / something* about it.
5. There isn't *a lot of / many* time, but we'll get there.
6. Luke's got *something / anything* to tell you.
7. There is *a few / a lot of* traffic in Bangkok.
8. Is *nobody / anybody* in the house?

4 Use a word from the box to complete the conversations.

something	*anything (x2)*	*everything*	*someone/somebody*
anywhere (x2)	*no-one/nobody*	*anyone/anybody (x2)*	
somewhere (x2)	*nothing*	*nowhere*	

1. **A** I think I can hear _____ walking on the stairs!
   B Hello, is there _____ there?
   A I can't see _____ .
   B OK. There's obviously _____ there.
2. **A** Let's go _____ nice this weekend.
   B Good. We didn't go _____ last weekend.
3. **A** What's the matter?
   B Oh, I'm going to a party on Saturday and I can't find _____ to wear!
   A Don't worry. I have _____ you can borrow.
4. **A** Where did you go on vacation?
   B _____ I just stayed at home.
5. **A** What did you buy at the mall?
   B _____ . _____ was too expensive.

5 Correct these sentences using *a, an* or *the.*

1. I'm going to the mall. Would you like anything?
2. My brother's architect in big company in London.
3. Tokyo is capital city of Japan.
4. I bought pair of sunglasses on Main Street.
5. I live in small town in mountains in Canada.
6. What beautiful new coat you're wearing!
7. I'm reading interesting book at the moment.
8. The life is wonderful when the sun is shining.

UNIT 5

5.1 Verb patterns ▶ Ex. 1

Here are four verb patterns. There is a list of **verb patterns** on page 153.

1. Verb + *to* + infinitive
   *They **want to buy** a new car.*
   *I'd **like to go** abroad.*
2. Verb + *-ing*
   *We **love going** to parties.*
   *I **enjoy traveling** abroad.*
3. Verb + *-ing* or + *to* + infinitive with no change in meaning
   *It **started to rain/raining**.*
   *I **continued to work/working** in the library.*
4. Verb + preposition + *-ing*
   *We**'re thinking of moving**.*
   *I**'m looking forward to having** more free time.*

like doing and *would like to do*

1. *Like* + *doing* and *love* + *doing* express a general enjoyment.
   *I **like working** as a teacher.* = I am a teacher and I enjoy it.
   *I **love dancing**.* = This is one of my hobbies.
2. *Would like to do* and *would love to do* express a preference now or at a specific time.
   *I'**d like to be** a teacher.* = When I grow up, I want to be a teacher.
   *Thanks. I'**d love to dance**.* = We're at a club. I'm pleased you asked me.
3. Notice the short answers.
   Would you like to dance? ***Yes, I'd love to.**/No, thanks.*

5.2 Future forms ▶ Ex. 2

will

Form

will + infinitive without *to*
Will is a modal auxiliary verb. There is an introduction to **modal auxiliary verbs** on page 131 of the Grammar Reference. The forms of *will* are the same for all persons.

Affirmative and negative

I He She It We You They	'll (will) won't	come. help you. invite Tom.

Question
*What time **will** you **be back**?*

Use

Will is used:

1. to express a future decision or intention made *at* the moment of speaking.
   *"It's Jane's birthday." "Is it? I'**ll buy** her some flowers."*
   *I'**ll give** you my phone number.*
   *"Do you want the blue or the red pen?" "I'**ll take** the red one."*
2. to express an offer.
   *I'**ll carry** your suitcase.* *We'**ll wash** the dishes.*

Other uses of *will* are covered in Unit 9.

going to

Form

am/is/are + *going* + *to* + infinitive

Affirmative and negative

I	'm 'm not	going to leave.
He She It	's isn't	
We You They	're aren't	

Question
*What's he **going to do**?*
*When **are** you **going to leave**?*

Are they going to get married?

Short answer
***Yes**, they **are**./**No**, they **aren't**.*

Use

Going to is used:

1. to express a future decision, intention, or plan made *before* the moment of speaking.
   *I'**m going to study** hard.*
   *What **are** you **going to do** after college?*
2. when we can see or feel now that something is certain to happen in the future.
   *Look at these clouds! It**'s going to rain**.*
   *Watch out! That box **is going to fall**.*

will or *going to*? ▶ Ex. 3–4

Compare the use of *will* and *going to* in these sentences:
*I'm **going to make** a chicken casserole for dinner.*
(I decided this morning and bought everything for it.)
*What shall I cook for dinner? Um … I know! I'**ll make** a chicken casserole!*
(I decided at the moment of speaking.)

Present Continuous ▶ Ex. 5

The Present Continuous for the future is used:

1. to express a planned future arrangement.
   What are you doing on Saturday?
   We're having a party. Can you come?
2. with the verbs *go* and *come*.
   My parents are coming for dinner.
   We're going to the movies. Do you want to come?

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the infinitive or the *-ing* form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. They want _____ (go) for a walk.
2. She loves _____ (dance).
3. I'd like _____ (see) you very soon.
4. We're thinking of _____ (replace) our car.
5. I'm looking forward to _____ (hear) from you soon.

2 Write sentences to respond to these statements. Use *will*.

1. This bag's heavy.
   I'll carry it for you.
2. I need a cup of coffee.
   _____
3. Do you want a cheese sandwich or a burger?
   _____
4. I don't have your e-mail address.
   _____
5. I'm tired and I haven't done the dishes.
   _____

3 Choose the correct form.

1. *I'll be / I'm going to be* an astronaut when I grow up.
2. "The phone's ringing!" "OK, *I'll answer / I'm answering* it."
3. *I'm seeing / I'll see* the dentist tomorrow at 10:00.
4. I've decided *I'm going to get / I'll get* a new job.
5. Helen's pregnant. *She's going to have / She'll have* a baby.
6. Look at the mess! *I'll help / I'm going to help you* clean it up.
7. Oh no, I think *I'll sneeze / I'm going to sneeze.*
8. I'm not sure which one to buy. OK, *I'll take / I'm going to take* the blue one.

4 Write the sentences and questions in the correct order.

1. I'm / on business / New York / going / to
   _____ .
2. How long / are / stay / with / to / Suzy / going / you
   _____ ?
3. You / be / are / to / going / very surprised
   _____ .
4. vacation / this / going / a / take / isn't / She / to / year
   _____ .
5. I / rain / it's / to / going / think
   _____ .

5 Complete the sentences using the verb in parentheses and a future form.

1. I _____ (have) a party on Friday. Would you like to come?
2. I've decided that I need a new car. I _____ (buy) a Toyota hybrid.
3. If you have a problem, ask the teacher. She _____ (help) you.
4. It _____ (be) a nice day. Would you like to go to the park?
5. We _____ (go) to Thailand for vacation this year.

UNIT 6

6.1 *What . . . like?* ▶ Ex. 1

Form

1. Look at the questions and answers.
   A ***What's*** *your teacher* ***like?***
   B *She's very nice and patient.*

   A ***What are*** *his parents* ***like?***
   B *They're very strict.*

   A ***What was*** *your vacation in Peru* ***like?***
   B *Great, thanks. Good weather, good food.*

   A ***What were*** *the people* ***like?***
   B *Fabulous. Friendly and welcoming.*

   Note
   We don't use *like* in the answer.
   She's very nice. NOT ~~*She's like very nice.*~~
2. In the question *What ... like?, like* is a preposition.
   "What's Jim ***like?"***
   "He's intelligent and kind, and he's got beautiful brown eyes."

   In these sentences, *like* is a verb:
   "What does Jim ***like?"***
   "He ***likes*** *motorcycles and playing tennis."*

Use

1. *What ... like?* means "Describe somebody or something. Tell me about them. I don't know anything about them."
   What's *Megan's new boyfriend* ***like?***
2. *How's your mother?* asks about health. It doesn't ask for a description.
   "How's your mother?" "She's very well, thank you."

6.2 Comparative and superlative adjectives ▶ Ex. 2–4

Form

1. Look at the chart.

		Comparative	Superlative
Short adjectives	cheap small *big	cheaper smaller bigger	cheapest smallest biggest
Adjectives that end in *-y*	funny early heavy	funnier earlier heavier	funniest earliest heaviest
Adjectives with two syllables or more	careful boring expensive interesting	more careful more boring more expensive more interesting	most careful most boring most expensive most interesting
Irregular adjectives	far good bad	farther better worse	farthest best worst

* For short adjectives with one vowel + one consonant, double the consonant: *hot/hotter/hottest; fat/fatter/fattest.*

2. *Than* is often used after a comparative adjective.
   I'm ***younger than*** *Barbara.*
   Barbara's ***more intelligent than*** *Sarah.*

   Much can come before the comparative to give emphasis.
   She's ***much nicer than*** *her sister.*
   Is Tokyo ***much more modern than*** *New York?*
3. *The* is used before superlative adjectives.
   He's ***the funniest*** *student in the class.*
   Which is ***the tallest*** *building in the world?*

Use

1. Comparatives compare one thing, person, or action with another.
   *She's **taller** than me.*
   *Tokyo's **more expensive** than Taipei.*
2. Superlatives compare somebody or something with the whole group.
   *She's the **tallest** in the class.*
   *It's the **most expensive** hotel in the world.*
3. *As ... as* shows that something is the same or equal.
   *Jim's **as tall as** Peter.*
   *I'm **as worried as** you are.*
4. *Not as/so ... as* shows that something isn't the same or equal.
   *She **isn't as tall as** her mother.*
   *My car **wasn't so expensive as** yours.*

Exercises

1 Match the questions and answers.

1. What's Phil like? 2. What does Phil like? 3. How's Phil?	a. Very well, thanks. b. Oh, the usual things – good food and nice people. c. He's tall, funny, and very nice.

2 Write the comparative and superlative of each adjective.

1. easy	*easier*	*easiest*
2. expensive	_____	_____
3. far	_____	_____
4. sad	_____	_____
5. interesting	_____	_____
6. big	_____	_____
7. good	_____	_____
8. funny	_____	_____

3 Complete the sentences with the comparative or superlative form of the adjective in parentheses.

1. This restaurant is _____ (cheap) than the other one in this street. The food is really good. I think it's the _____ (delicious) food in town.
2. Who is the _____ (popular) actor in your country?
3. Michael is a good player, but John is a _____ (good) player than him. But Peter is the _____ (talented) player in the team.
4. Could you tell me the _____ (quick) way to get to Boston from here?
5. Eva is generous, but Laura is even _____ (generous) than her.
6. I've never been _____ (happy). This is the _____ (happy) day of my life.

4 Complete the sentences. Use *as ... as* and a word from the box.

long	*difficult*	*exciting*	*much*	*fast*	*hot*	*quiet*	*high*	*spicy*

1. I don't think a hippopotamus can run _____ a lion.
2. Today is warm, but it's not _____ yesterday.
3. I'm early. The trip didn't take _____ I expected.
4. The children are asleep, so I'll be _____ I can.
5. I got an A. The test wasn't _____ I expected.
6. The Alps aren't _____ the Himalayas.
7. My burrito isn't _____ yours.
8. I didn't expect the movie to be _____ it was!

UNIT 7

7.1 Present Perfect ▶ Ex. 1–3

Form

have/has + *-ed* (past participle)
The past participle of regular verbs ends in *-ed*. There are many common **irregular past participles**. See the list on page 153.

Affirmative and negative

I We/You/They	've (have) haven't	lived abroad.
He/She/It	's (has) hasn't	

Question

Have	I we/you/they	been to the United States?
Has	he/she/it	

	Short answer
Have you been to Korea?	***Yes, I have./No, I haven't.***

Use

1. The Present Perfect looks back from the present into the past, and expresses what has happened before now. The action happened at an indefinite time in the past.
   ***I've met** a lot of famous people.* (before now)
   *She **has won** awards.* (in her life)
   *She**'s written** 20 songs.* (up to now)

   The action can continue to the present, and probably into the future.
   *She**'s lived** here for 20 years.* (she still lives here)
2. The Present Perfect expresses an experience as part of someone's life.
   ***I've traveled** a lot in Asia.*
   *They**'ve lived** all over the world.*

   Ever and *never* are common with this use.
   *Have you **ever** been in a car crash?*
   *My mother has **never** flown in a plane.*
3. The Present Perfect expresses an action or state which began in the past and continues to the present.
   ***I've known** Alice for six years.*
   *How long **have** you **worked** as a teacher?*

   The time expressions *for* and *since* are common with this use. We use *for* with a period of time, and *since* with a point in time.
   *We've lived here **for** two years.* (a period of time)
   *I've had a beard **since** I left the army.* (a point in time)

   Note
   In many languages, this use is expressed by a present tense. But in English, we say:
   *Peter **has been** a teacher for ten years.*
   NOT ~~*Peter is a teacher for ten years.*~~
4. The Present Perfect expresses a past action with results in the present. It is often a recent past action.
   ***I've lost** my wallet.* (I haven't got it now.)
   *The taxi**'s arrived.*** (It's outside the door now.)
   ***Has** the mail carrier **been** here?* (Are there any letters for me?)

   The adverbs *just, already,* and *yet* are common with this use. *Yet* is used in questions and negatives.
   *She's **just** had some good news.*
   *I've **already** had breakfast.*
   *Has the mail carrier been **yet**?*
   *It's 11:00 and she hasn't got up **yet**.*

7.2 Present Perfect and Past Simple ▶ Ex. 4–5

1 Compare the Past Simple and Present Perfect.

Past Simple

1. The Past Simple refers to an action that happened at a definite time in the past.
   *He died **in 1882**.*
   *She got married **when she was 22**.*
   The action is finished.
   *I lived in Bangkok **for a year*** (but not now).
2. Time expressions

I did it	***in 1999**.*
	***last week**.*
	***two months ago**.*
	***on March 22**.*
	***for two years**.*

Present Perfect

1. The Present Perfect refers to an action that happened at an indefinite time in the past.
   She has written short stories.
   He's made five albums.
   I've never been to South America.
   The action can continue to the present.
   *She's lived there **for 20 years*** (and she still does.)
2. Time expressions

I've worked here	***for 20 years**.*
	***since 2002**.*
	***since I graduated from school**.*

*We've **never** been to Costa Rica.*

2 Compare the right and wrong sentences.

*I **broke** my leg last year.*
NOT ~~*I've broken my leg last year.*~~

*He **has worked** as a musician all his life.*
NOT ~~*He works as a musician all his life.*~~

*When **did** you **go** to Mexico?*
NOT ~~*When have you been to Mexico?*~~

*How long **have** you **had** your car?*
NOT ~~*How long do you have your car?*~~

Exercises

1 Make sentences in the Present Perfect.

1. You / do / homework?
   Have you done your homework?
2. You / see / Sarah?
   _____
3. You / make / decision / yet?
   _____
4. How long / know / Jamie?
   _____
5. She / be / Shanghai / twice.
   _____
6. Their plane / just / land.
   _____
7. Where / you / be?
   _____
8. What / do / your hair?
   _____

2 Write Present Perfect questions for these answers.

1. _____ ?
   No, I've never been to Brazil. But I'd like to go.
2. _____ ?
   Yes, I saw an elephant when I was on vacation in Thailand.
3. _____ ?
   No, but I'd love to win some money one day!

3 Use the Present Perfect and the words in parentheses to describe these situations.

1. He's carrying a suitcase. (He / be / on / vacation)
   He's been on vacation.
2. His plate is empty. (He / eat / everything)
   _____
3. She can't find her bag. (She / lose / bag)
   _____
4. Her leg is in a cast. (She / broke / leg)
   _____
5. The final score is 3–1 in our team's favor. (Our / team / win / match)
   _____
6. I don't have any more money. (I / spend / all / my / money)
   _____

4 Find and correct a mistake in each sentence.

1. I am here since last week.
2. Kevin had his new job for nine months. He loves it.
3. I lived here for ten years but I'm going to move soon.
4. Bridgit knows Philip for a year and a half.
5. We have been to China in 2005.
6. How long do you have your dog?
7. They have known each other since three days.
8. She's had a sore throat for this morning.
9. Jane was a vet for 30 years and she still enjoys it.
10. How long do you live in this city?

5 Choose the best answer.

1. *Did you ever hear / Have you ever heard* of an actor named Sylvia Halliwell?
2. *I never went / I've never been* to Vietnam.
3. *He never met / He's never met* his father. He died before he was born.
4. *Did you talk / Have you talked* to Maggie yesterday?
5. *I've never heard / I never heard* this music before.
6. *Have you seen / Did you see* the news last night?
7. *I never won / I've never won* a contest in my life.
8. *Did you ever dream / Have you ever dreamed* that you could fly?

UNIT 8

8.1 *have to* ▶ Ex. 1

Form

has/have + *to* + infinitive

Affirmative and negative

I We/You/They	have don't have	to	work hard.
He/She/It	has doesn't have		

Question
Do *you* ***have to*** *work hard?*
Does *he* ***have to*** *get up early?*

	Short answer
Do *you* ***have to*** *wear a uniform?*	*Yes, I* ***do****./No, I* ***don't****.*

Note
The past tense of *have to* is *had to*, with *did* and *didn't* in the question and the negative.
I ***had to*** *get up early this morning.*
Why ***did*** *you* ***have to*** *work last weekend?*
They liked the hotel because they ***didn't have to*** *do any cooking.*

Use

1. *Have to* expresses strong obligation. The obligation comes from "outside"—perhaps a law, a rule at school or work, or someone in authority.
   You ***have to*** *have a driver's licence if you want to drive a car.* (That's the law.)
   I ***have to*** *start work at 8:00.* (My company says I must.)
   The doctor says I ***have to*** *do more exercise.*
2. *Don't/doesn't have to* expresses absence of obligation (it isn't necessary).
   You ***don't have to*** *do the dishes. I have a dishwasher.*
   She ***doesn't have to*** *work on Monday. It's her day off.*

Note
Have got to expresses an obligation on one particular occasion.
I'm going to bed. I ***'ve got to get up*** *early tomorrow.*
She ***'s got to work*** *hard. Her exams start next week.*

To express obligation as a habit, we use *have to*, not *have got to*.
I ***have to write*** *two essays a week.*
Do *you* ***have to wear*** *a uniform?*

8.2 Introduction to modal auxiliary verbs ▶ Ex. 2–4

These are modal auxiliary verbs.

can	could	might	must	should	will	would

1. They go with another verb and add meaning.
   She ***can drive****.*
   I ***must get*** *my hair cut.*
2. There is no *-s* in the third person singular:
   He ***can dance*** *very well.*
   It ***will rain*** *tomorrow.*
3. There is no *do/does* in the question.
   Can *she* ***sing****?*
   Should *we* ***go****?*
4. There is no *don't/doesn't* in the negative.
   I ***won't have*** *any coffee, thank you.*
   I ***can't speak*** *Spanish.*
5. Most modal verbs refer to the present and future. Only *can* has a past tense form, *could*.
   I ***could swim*** *when I was three.*

8.3 *should* ▶ Ex. 3–4

Form

should + infinitive without *to*
The forms of *should* are the same for all persons.

Affirmative and negative

I He/She We/You/They	should shouldn't	do more exercise. tell lies.

Question
Should *I see a doctor?*
Do you think I ***should*** *see a doctor?*

Use

1. *Should* is used to express what the speaker thinks is right or the best thing to do. It expresses mild obligation, or advice.
   I ***should*** *do more work.* (This is my opinion.)
   You ***should*** *do more work.* (I'm telling you what I think.)
   Do you think we ***should*** *stop?* (I'm asking for your opinion.)
2. *Shouldn't* expresses negative advice.
   You ***shouldn't*** *sit so close to the TV. It's bad for your eyes.*
3. *Should* expresses the opinion of the speaker, and it is often introduced by *I think* or *I don't think*.
   I think *politicians* ***should*** *listen more.*
   I don't think *people* ***should*** *get married until they're 21.*

8.4 *must*

Form

must + infinitive without *to*
The forms of *must* are the same for all persons.

Affirmative and negative

I He/She We/You/They	must mustn't	try harder. steal.

Question
Questions with *must* are possible, but *have to* is more common.
What time do I ***have to*** *start?*

Use

1. *Must* expresses strong obligation. Generally, this obligation comes from "inside" the speaker.
   I ***must*** *get my hair cut.* (I think this is necessary.)
2. Because *must* expresses the authority of the speaker, you should be careful of using *You must … .* It sounds bossy!
   You ***must*** *help me.* (I am giving you an order.)
   Could you help me? is much better.
3. *You must …* can express a strong suggestion.
   You must *see the Monet exhibition. It's wonderful.*
   You must *give me a call when you're in town again.*

Exercises

1 Rewrite the sentences. Use a form of *have to*.

1. It's necessary for the children to wear a uniform.
   The children _____ a uniform.
2. I can stay in bed until late tomorrow.
   I _____ get up early tomorrow.
3. Why was it necessary for you to go to the office?
   Why _____ the office?
4. Must you leave so soon?
   _____ so soon?
5. I needed to make a phone call.
   I _____ a phone call.
6. It wasn't necessary for us to work on Sunday.
   We _____ on Sunday.

2 Correct the sentences.

1. Do you can drive a car?
2. I'm afraid we must to go now.
3. She cans sing very well.
4. She musts go to the dentist this afternoon.
5. You don't should drive too fast.
6. It won't raining tomorrow.
7. Could you to help me?
8. I don't would like to be a police officer.

3. Rewrite the sentences using a modal verb from the box.

can	can't	could	must	mustn't	'll	should	shouldn't

1. I'd like the salt, please.
   _____ you pass me the salt, please?
2. I don't think it's a good idea for you to stay.
   You _____ stay.
3. It is certain to rain this afternoon.
   It _____ rain this afternoon.
4. Do you know how to drive?
   _____ you drive?
5. Do not leave luggage here. It isn't allowed.
   You _____ leave luggage here.
6. It's very important that you take your medicine.
   You _____ take your medicine.
7. Janet doesn't know how to play an instrument.
   Janet _____ play an instrument.
8. I think it would be a good idea to apologize.
   You _____ apologize.

4 Choose the correct option.

1. You *should / have to* show your passport at the airport.
2. You *shouldn't / must* read that book. It isn't very good.
3. If you want to learn English, you *must / should* get an English speaking pen pal.
4. I think we *should / must* take some flowers when we go to Sue's for dinner.
5. We *must / have to* remember Robert's birthday tomorrow.
6. I *must / should* pay my taxes soon. I don't want to go to prison.
7. She's very rich, so she *doesn't have to / shouldn't* work.
8. You *don't have to / shouldn't* use cell phones in here.
   It isn't allowed.

UNIT 9

9.1 Time clauses ▶ Ex. 1–2

1. Look at this sentence.
   I'll give her a call when I get home.
   It consists of two clauses: a main clause *I'll give her a call*, and a secondary clause *when I get home.*
2. These conjunctions of time introduce secondary clauses.

when	while	as soon as	after	before	until

They refer to future time, but we use a present tense.

***When I get** home, I'll …*	NOT	~~*When I'll get …*~~
***While we're** away, …*	NOT	~~*While we'll be away …*~~
***As soon as I hear** from you, …*	NOT	~~*As soon as I'll hear …*~~
*Wait here **until I get** back.*	NOT	~~*… until I'll get back.*~~

9.2 *will*

Form

For the forms of *will*, see page 127.

Use

1. *Will* expresses a decision or intention made at the moment of speaking.
   *Give me your case. **I'll** carry it for you.*
2. It also expresses a future fact. The speaker thinks, "This action is sure to happen in the future."
   *Boston **will** win the game.*
   *Tomorrow's weather **will** be warm and sunny.*
   This use is like a neutral future tense. The speaker is predicting the future, without expressing an intention, plan, or personal judgement.

9.3 First conditional ▶ Ex. 3–4

Form

If + Present Simple, *will* + infinitive without *to*

Affirmative and negative
***If** I work hard, **I'll** (will) **pass** the test.*
***If** we **don't hurry** up, **we'll** (will) be late.*

Question
*What **will** you do **if** you don't go to college?*

Note
1. We do not usually use *will* in the condition (*if*) clause.
   If it rains … NOT ~~*If it will rain …*~~
2. The condition clause *if …* can come at the beginning of the sentence or at the end.
   ***If** I work hard, I'll pass the test.*
   *I'll pass the test **if** I work hard.*

Use

The first conditional is used to express a possible condition and a probable result in the future. English uses a present tense in the conditional (*if*) clause, but a future form in the result clause.
***If** my check **comes**, **I'll buy** us all dinner.*
*You**'ll get** wet if you **don't take** an umbrella.*

Note
If expresses a possibility that something will happen; *when* expresses what the speaker sees as certain to happen.
***If** I find your book, I'll send it to you.*
***When** I get home, I'll take a bath.*

Exercises

1 Check (✓) the correct sentence in each pair.

1. ☐ I'll get a newspaper when I go to the supermarket.
   ☐ I get a newspaper when I will go to the supermarket.
2. ☐ She's going to wait until he'll come.
   ☐ She's going to wait until he comes.
3. ☐ As soon as you turn left, you'll see my house.
   ☐ As soon as you'll turn left, you'll see my house.
4. ☐ Pietro's going to meet us before he sees Janet.
   ☐ Pietro's going to meet us before he'll see Janet.

2 Choose the correct answer. Sometimes two answers are possible.

1. We were really surprised _____ he arrived unexpectedly.
   a) if b) when c) as soon as
2. I'm really hungry! Let's go for dinner _____ the movie ends.
   a) before b) as soon as c) when
3. Wait _____ you've had lunch!
   a) until b) after c) when
4. I'm very busy, but I'll go shopping _____ I have time.
   a) until b) when c) if
5. I'll take a shower _____ I go to bed.
   a) before b) after c) while
6. Oh no! I forgot to feed the cat! I'll do it _____ we get home.
   a) after b) as soon as c) when
7. We'll go skiing this weekend _____ it snows enough this week.
   a) when b) after c) if
8. We're renting an apartment _____ our new house is built.
   a) until b) when c) before

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

1. If it's sunny, we _____ (go) to the beach.
2. What _____ you _____ (do) if you fail the test?
3. If we _____ (not/leave) soon, we'll be late.
4. You _____ (get) wet if you go out. It's raining!
5. If Sonya _____ (lie) to me once more, I'll be furious!

4 Complete the first conditional questions.

1. Perhaps it'll rain.
   What will you do if it rains?
2. It's possible David will lose his job.
   What _____ if he loses his job?
3. It's possible there won't be any tickets left.
   What will I do if _____ any tickets left?
4. Perhaps Alice will miss her flight.
   What _____ if she misses her flight?
5. It's possible that your taxi will be late.
   What _____ if the taxi is late?
6. Perhaps Alan won't reply to your e-mail.
   What will you do if _____ to your e-mail?

UNIT 10

10.1 The passive ▶ Ex. 1–4

Form

am/is/are *was/were* *has/have been* *will*	+ *-ed* (past participle)

The past participle of regular verbs ends in *-ed*. There are many common **irregular past participles**. See the list on page 153.

Present
English ***is spoken*** *all over the world.*
Are *cars* ***made*** *in your country?*

Past
The animals ***were frightened*** *by a loud noise.*
How ***was*** *the window* ***broken?***

Present Perfect
They ***haven't been invited*** *to the party.*
Has *my car* ***been repaired?***

will
Ten thousand cars ***will be produced*** *next year.*
Will *the children* ***be sent*** *to a new school?*

	Short answer
Are cars made in your country?	***Yes****, they* ***are.****/****No****, they* ***aren't.***
Has my car been repaired?	***Yes****, it* ***has.****/****No****, it* ***hasn't.***

Note
The passive infinitive (*to be* + *-ed*) is used after modal auxiliary verbs and other verbs which are followed by an infinitive.
Driving should ***be banned*** *in city centers.*
The house is going ***to be knocked down.***

Use

1. The rules for tense usage in the passive are the same as in the active.
   Present Simple expresses habit:
   My car ***is serviced*** *regularly.*
   Past Simple expresses a finished action in the past:
   Television ***was invented*** *by John Logie Baird.*
   Present Perfect expresses an action which began in the past and continues to the present:
   Diet Coke ***has been made*** *since 1982.*
2. The object of an active verb becomes the subject of a passive verb. Notice the use of *by* in the passive sentence.

   Active Shakespeare wrote *Hamlet*. (*Hamlet*: Object)
   Passive *Hamlet* was written by Shakespeare. (*Hamlet*: Subject)
3. The passive is not just another way of expressing the same sentence in the active. We choose the active or the passive depending on what we are more interested in.
   Hamlet ***was written*** *in 1600.* (We are more interested in *Hamlet*.)
   Shakespeare ***wrote*** *comedies, histories, and tragedies.* (We are more interested in Shakespeare.)

Exercises

1 Rewrite the active sentences in the passive.

1. Someone sells tickets at the box office.
   _____
2. People built Stonehenge thousands of years ago.
   _____
3. Someone has fixed my car.
   _____
4. They opened three new hospitals last year.
   _____

2 Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verbs in the box.

discover	make	invent	build	paint
write	give	steal	invite	employ

1. Around $50,000 _____ from a bank in Ohio last night.
2. The first train _____ by George Stevenson in the mid 19th century.
3. In China, red envelopes full of money _____ to children at New Year.
4. X-rays _____ accidentally _____ by Wilhelm Konrad Roentgen in 1896.
5. Hundreds of new homes _____ since March.
6. Next year 3 million mobile phones _____ in Finland.
7. Do you think we _____ to Helen's wedding?
8. Many people in Detroit _____ in the auto industry.
9. *Romeo and Juliet* _____ by William Shakespeare.
10. *Sunflowers* _____ by van Gogh.

3 Rewrite these sentences using a form of the passive.

1. People will eat six million hamburgers this year.
   Six million hamburgers will be eaten this year.
2. They cancelled the baseball game because of heavy rain.
   _____
3. A man told us not to walk on the grass.
   _____
4. How do people use chopsticks?
   _____
5. Someone cleans the kitchen every morning.
   _____
6. The police arrested the escaped prisoner late last night.
   _____
7. How did scientists discover DNA?
   _____

4 Find and correct two sentences that are wrong.

1. The money was stole from the shop.
2. Dinner is usually served at 6 o'clock.
3. A new bridge will be built next year.
4. Spanish spoken in Latin America.
5. These cars are made in Korea.

UNIT 11

11.1 Second conditional ▶ Ex. 1–2

Form

If + Past Simple, *would* + infinitive without *to*
Would is a modal auxiliary verb (see page 131).
The forms of *would* are the same for all persons.

Affirmative and negative
***If** I had more money, **I'd** (would) buy an MP3 player.*
***If** she knew the answer, **she'd** (would) tell us.*
***If** we didn't have to, we **wouldn't** work so hard.*

Question
*What **would** you do **if** you had a year off?*

	Short answer
Would you travel around the world?	***Yes, I would./No, I wouldn't.***

Note
1. The condition clause can come at the beginning or the end of the sentence.
   ***If** I had more time, I'd help.*
   *I'd help **if** I had more time.*
2. *Were* can be used instead of *was* in the condition clause.
   *If I **were** you, I'd go to bed.*
   *If he **were** here, he'd know what to do.*

Use

The second conditional is used to express an unreal or improbable condition and its result. The past forms are used to show this is different from reality.
The condition is unreal because it is different from the facts that we know. We can always say "But … ."
***If** I **were** president, **I'd increase** taxes for rich people.* (But I'm not president.)
***If** they **lived** in a big house, they**'d have** a party.* (But they live in a small house.)
*What **would** you **do if you saw** a ghost?* (But I don't think that you will see a ghost.)

11.2 *might* ▶ Ex. 3

Form

might + infinitive without *to*
Might is a modal auxiliary verb (see page 131).
The forms of *might* are the same for all persons.

Affirmative and negative

I He/She/It We/You/They	might might not	go to the party. be late. rain tomorrow. go out for a meal tonight.

Question
The inverted question *Might you … ?* is unusual. It is more common to ask a question with *Do you think … + will … ?*

Do you think	you'll get here on time? it'll rain? they'll come to our party?

	Short answer
Do you think he'll come?	*He **might**.*
Do you think it'll rain?	*It **might**.*

Use

1. *Might* is used to express a future possibility. It contrasts with *will*, which, in the speaker's opinion, expresses a future certainty.
   *England **will** win the game.*
   (I am sure they will.)
   *England **might** win the game.*
   (It's possible, but I don't know.)
2. Notice that, in the negative, these sentences express the same idea of possibility.
   *It **might not** rain this afternoon.*
   *I **don't think it'll** rain this afternoon.*

11.3 *so, such (a), so many, so much* ▶ Ex. 4

Form

***so* + adjective / adverb**
*I was **so scared!***
*He always drives **so fast.***

***such a* + adjective + singular noun**
*She's **such a nice person.***

***such* + adjective + plural/uncountable noun**
*The Smiths are **such friendly neighbors.***

***so many* + plural nouns**
*Some children have **so many toys!***

***so much* + uncountable nouns**
*Athletes earn **so much money** these days.*

Use

So and *such* are used more in spoken than written English. They are used for emphasizing an adjective, an adverb, or a noun. They are often written with an exclamation mark (!).

*He works **so hard!*** is stronger than *He works **very hard.***

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer.

1. If we *didn't / don't* have to work, we'd travel around the world.
2. If you *exercise / exercised* more, you'd feel better.
3. *I'd help / I'll help* you if I had more time.
4. If I *am / were you*, I'd forget all about it.
5. If I *win / won* the lottery, I'd give all the money to charity.

2 Match the two halves of each sentence.

1. He'd move to Bangkok _____	a. she'd be very happy.
2. If she got the job, _____	b. if I were you.
3. If the weather was nicer, _____	c. if I had a car.
4. I'd drive to work _____	d. we'd have a barbecue.
5. I'd take an aspirin, _____	e. if he spoke Thai.

3 Complete the conversations with *might/might not* or *will/won't.*

1. **A** Are you going to watch the game tonight?
   B Yes I am. Who do you think _____ win?
   A Well, I'm not sure. Boston has the better team, but L.A. is playing well right now, so they _____ win tonight.
2. **A** Are you going to Mark's party this Saturday?
   B I'm not sure. I'm tired, so I _____ go. I _____ just watch a DVD and relax instead.
   A Oh, come on, I _____ go if you go. It _____ be fun.
   B OK then, I _____ pick you up at 8:00.
3. **A** Hi, Nora. I'm sorry, but we _____ be able to get to the theater by 6:45. Our car has broken down.
   B That's OK. Do you think you _____ be able to get here by 9:00? There's another performance then.
   A Well, Max thinks he _____ be able to fix it. If not, we _____ get the bus. See you there at 9:00.

4 Complete the sentences with *so, such, so much* or *so many.*

1. It was _____ a nice day that we decided to have a picnic.
2. That book was _____ interesting I couldn't put it down.
3. I've got _____ work to do. I won't finish it by this evening.
4. You've worked _____ hard all week. You deserve a break.
5. It was _____ a great party that no one wanted to leave!
6. There were _____ people in town it took forever to do the grocery shopping.
7. That's _____ a fantastic dress. You look _____ nice.
8. I'm looking forward to my vacation _____ .
9. Some people have _____ money they don't know what to do with it!
10. That movie was _____ bad! I've never seen _____ an awful movie.

UNIT 12

12.1 Present Perfect Continuous ▶ Ex. 1–4

Form

has/have + been + -ing (present participle)

Affirmative and negative

I We You They	've (have) haven't	been working.
He She It	's (has) hasn't	

Question

*How long **have** you **been working**?*
*How long **has** he **been studying** English?*

	Short answer
Have you been running?	***Yes, I have./No, I haven't.***

Use

The Present Perfect Continuous is used:

1. to express an activity which began in the past and continues to the present.
   *We**'ve been waiting** here for hours!*
   *It**'s been raining** for days.*
2. to refer to an activity with a result in the present.
   *I'm hot because I**'ve been running**.*
   *I haven't got any money because I**'ve been shopping**.*

Note

1. Sometimes there is little or no difference in meaning between the Present Perfect Simple and Continuous.
   *How long **have you worked** here?*
   *How long **have you been working** here?*
2. Some verbs have the idea of a long time—*wait, work, learn, live, play.* They are more often found in the Present Perfect Continuous.
   *I**'ve been playing** tennis since I was a boy.*
   Some verbs have the idea of a short time—*find, start, buy, die, lose, break, stop.* It is unusual to find them in the Present Perfect Continuous.
   *I**'ve bought** a new dress.*
   *My cat **has died**.*
   *My radio**'s broken**.*
3. Verbs that express a state—*like, love, know, have* (for possession)—are not found in the Present Perfect Continuous.
   *We**'ve known** each other for a few weeks.*
   NOT ~~*We've been knowing each other for a few weeks.*~~
4. The Present Perfect Simple looks at the completed action. This is why the Present Perfect Simple is used if the sentence gives a number or a quantity.
   *I**'ve written** three letters today.*
   NOT ~~*I've been writing three letters today.*~~

Exercises

1 Choose the best answer.

1. At last! *I've understood / been understanding* the question.
2. The athletes are tired. They've *practice / been practicing* all day.
3. So, what have you *done / been doing* recently? Anything fun?
4. My friend has *been buying / bought* a new computer.
5. Have you *swum / been swimming*? Your hair looks wet.
6. Great news! Joanna has *been having / had* a baby boy!
7. I've never *believed / been believing* in horoscopes.
8. Oh, there you are! I've *looked / been looking* for you everywhere!

2 Make sentences using the Present Perfect Continuous.

1. **A** You're a really good singer!
   B I / practice / a lot / recently
   _____.
2. **A** You look really tired.
   B We / work / hard / this week.
   _____.
3. **A** Your English is good!
   B Thanks. I / study it / eight years.
   _____.
4. **A** Do I have blue paint in my hair?
   B Yes. What / you / paint?
   _____?
5. **A** You both look really suntanned!
   B We / sunbathe / at / beach.
   _____.

3 Complete the sentences with the Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous form of the verb in parentheses.

1. **A** What (1) _____ (do) to your arm?
   B I (2) _____ (play) tennis a lot this week, and I (3) _____ (hurt) my elbow.
2. **A** Your house looks fantastic! You (1) _____ (decorate) it beautifully.
   B Yes, but it's hard work. I (2) _____ (paint) the bedroom all afternoon and I (3) _____ (only paint) three walls.
   A Never mind. It will look great when you (4) _____ (finish) it.
3. **A** Hi Jack. I (1) _____ (not / see) you in so long. What (2) _____ (you /do) recently?
   B I (3) _____ (travel).
   A That's fantastic! Where (4) _____ (you / be)?
   B I (5) _____ (be) to Asia. Have (6) _____ (you / ever / go) there?
   A No, I haven't, but I (7) _____ (want) to go for a long time.
4. **A** Hi. (1) _____ (have) a good day?
   B Yes. I (2) _____ (shop). But I (3) _____ (spend) a lot of money!
   A Show me what you (4) _____ (buy).
   B Well, I'm afraid I (5) _____ (not buy) anything for you! I (6) _____ (try) to find you a birthday present for a while, but I (7) _____ (find) anything yet.

Pairwork Activities Student A

UNIT 1 *page 4*

PRACTICE
Exchanging information

Ask and answer questions to complete the information about Mary Steiner.



Dr. Mary Steiner lives in ... (*Where?*). She's married and has twin sons. Her husband's name is ... (*What ... name?*) and he's a surgeon. They met ... (*When?*). Both her sons went to Harvard University and studied ... (*What?*), and now they both work for Miramax film studios in California.

Mary started working as a radio show host ... (*When?*), and does five shows a week. Every day more than 60,000 people try to call her. They have ... problems – all kinds! (*What kind?*) The program lasts an hour, and at the end Mary feels ... (*How?*).

She's currently writing a book about marriage, because ... (*Why ... a book about marriage?*). Her own parents divorced when she was 5.

She's going to retire ... (*When?*). She wants to spend more time traveling.

UNIT 3 *page 21*

PRACTICE
Exchanging information

Ask and answer questions to complete the information about Hugo Fenton-Jones.

Teenager goes on spending spree with father's credit card



BIG SPENDER: Hugo Fenton-Jones

Toronto teen Hugo Fenton-Jones stole ... (*What?*) while his father was working in the yard. He then went to ... (*Where?*) and stayed in the Ritz-Carlton Hotel. His room was $... a night (*How much?*). While he was shopping on Fifth Avenue, he bought ... (*What?*).

He called two friends because he wanted them to come to New York. They were eating breakfast ... (*Where?*) when Hugo's father, James, called. His credit card company wanted to know why he was spending so much money. They thought James was staying in the Ritz-Carlton.

Hugo went ... (*Where?*), where his father was waiting for him. "He isn't speaking to me right now," said Hugo yesterday. "He's a little angry with me."

UNIT 2 *page 12*

PRACTICE
Exchanging information

Name and age	Makiko, 35	Mario and Ana, 69
Town and country		Curitiba, Brazil
Family		1 married daughter, 1 grandson
Occupation		retired, homemaker
Free time/vacation		opera, the U.S.
Current activity		preparing to go to the U.S.



UNIT 4 *page 28*

PRACTICE
Find the differences

Ask and answer questions to find the differences between your picture and your partner's.

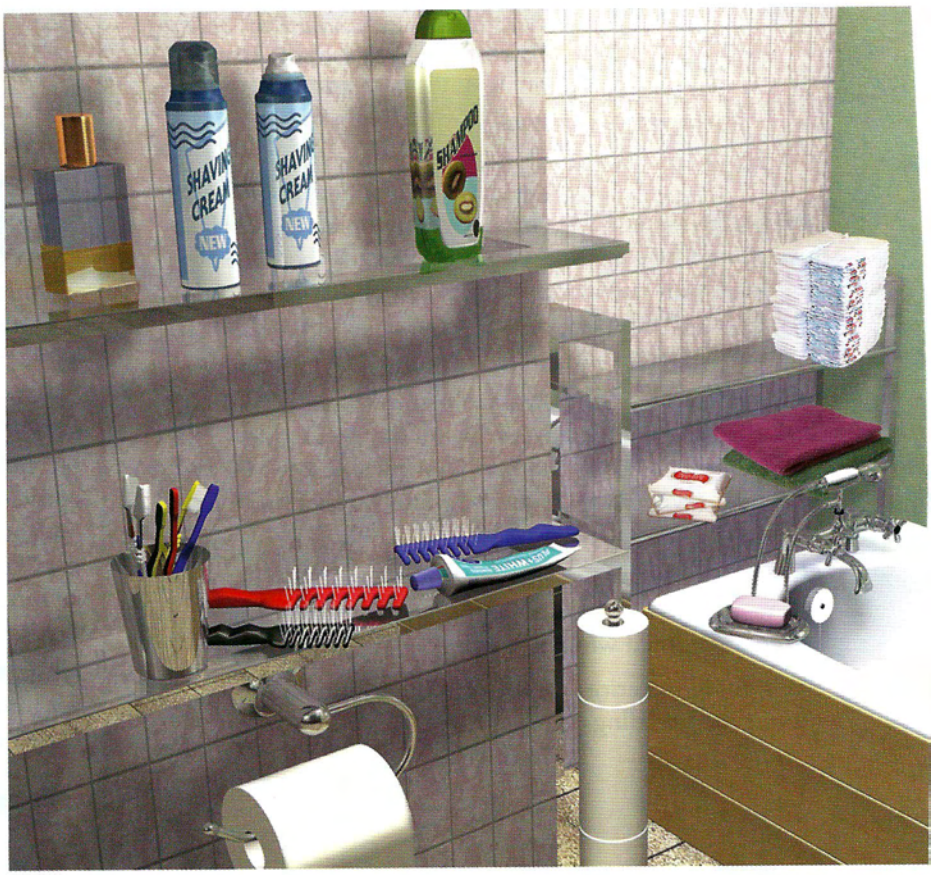
Ask about these things.

towels	toilet paper
soap	shaving cream
diapers	makeup
toothbrushes	deodorant
toothpaste	perfume/aftershave
shampoo	hairbrushes

How | much ... is there? / many ... are there?
Do they have any ... ?
Is / Are | there any ...?

(Yes,) | lots/a lot / a few/a little

(No,) There | isn't / aren't | any



UNIT 5 *page 37*

What are you doing tonight?

You study in the mornings. You need to arrange a time to meet when you and your partner are free. Look at your calendar and talk with your partner to find a time when you are both free.

What are you doing on Monday afternoon?

I'm playing tennis with Andy. Are you doing anything on Tuesday evening?

	morning	afternoon	evening
Monday	study		meet Frank 8:00
Tuesday	study	visit Aunt Pat	
Wednesday	study		go to movie with Jane
Thursday	study		cook dinner for mom and dad
Friday	study	go to driving school	

UNIT 12 *page 92*

PRACTICE

Exchanging information

Where was Steve born?

In Taipei.

When was he born?

In 1978.

Ask and answer questions to complete the information about Steve Chen.

Steve Chen

The Co-founder of YouTube

Steve was born _____ (*Where?*) in 1978. His family moved to _____ (*Where?*) when he was 8, and he studied computer science in college. According to Steve, he has been "a math and science geek" since he was young and is proud of it.

He has worked for websites like _____ (*What Web sites ... for?*), but he is best known for starting his own site, YouTube, when he was 26. He started YouTube with his friends because _____ (*Why?*). Now more than 500,000 people have joined YouTube, and over _____ videos have been put online (*How many?*).

Steve and his friends sold YouTube in 2006 for _____ (*How much ... for?*). Although he now has more than $350 million, he still works for YouTube. He has been _____ lately (*What ... doing lately?*). This is because YouTube has opened new offices in France, Italy, Japan, and Brazil.

He has been running YouTube since _____ (*How long?*) and is thinking about trying something new. He has been developing a way to show live video. His success still surprises him. When he was a child, a fortune teller said _____ (*What?*)!



EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Role play

1 Read your role.

- Be sure you understand the situation.
- What decisions will you make?

STUDENT A	STUDENT C	STUDENT E
Situation You're at home. It's 7:00 in the evening. You're watching TV. You've already done your homework. It was the vocabulary exercise on page 101 of *American Headway Student Book 2*. **Decision** What are you doing for the rest of the evening? Going out? Staying in? **The phone call** You will get a call from a friend who's in the same class as you. When the phone rings, pick it up and say hello.	**Situation** You're American. You live in a large American city. You're at home. It's 7:00 in the evening. Today is the 18th. Next week, on the 25th, a foreign student is coming to stay at your house while he studies English for a month at a nearby university. You don't know what time he is arriving at the airport. The airport is about 48 kilometers from your home. **Decision** Are you going to meet him at the airport? Or will he want to come into the city by taxi or bus? If he takes the airport bus, will he come directly to your home or will you meet him at the bus station? **The phone call** The student is going to call you. When the phone rings, pick it up and say hello. Ask questions such as "How are you?" and "Have you packed yet?" At the end of the conversation, say, "We're looking forward to meeting you."	**Situation** You're at home in your apartment, which you share with a roommate. It's 7:00 in the evening. Your roommate is out right now. **Decision** Where is your roommate? When will he/she be back? Do you know what he's/she's doing tonight, or not? **The phone call** Someone is going to call. When the phone rings, pick it up and say hello. If it's for your roommate, say, "Can I take a message?"

2 Find a partner.

Student A Find a Student B.
Student C Find a Student D.
Student E Find a Student F.

Role-play a phone conversation with your partner. Start the conversation.

3 Act out your phone conversation for the class.

Pairwork Activities Student B

UNIT 1 *page 4*

PRACTICE
Exchanging information

Ask and answer questions to complete the information about Mary Steiner.



Dr. Mary Steiner lives in Santa Barbara, California. She's married and has ... (*How many children?*). Her husband's name is Dan and he's a ... (*What ...do?*). They met when they were both at college. Both her sons went to ... University (*Which university?*) and studied law, and now they both work for ... (*Who ... for?*).

Mary started working as a radio show host 30 years ago, and does ... shows a week (*How many?*). Every day more than 60,000 people try to call her. They have money problems, relationship problems, work problems – all kinds! The program lasts ... (*How long?*), and at the end Mary feels really tired.

She's currently writing ... (*What?*) because she's worried about the number of divorces. Her own parents divorced when she was ... (*How old ... parents divorced?*).

She's going to retire next year. She wants to ... (*What ... do?*).

UNIT 3 *page 21*

PRACTICE
Exchanging information

Ask and answer questions to complete the information about Hugo Fenton-Jones.

Teenager goes on spending spree with father's credit card



BIG SPENDER: Hugo Fenton-Jones

Toronoto teen Hugo Fenton-Jones stole his father's credit card while his father was working ... (*Where?*). He then went to New York City and stayed in the ... Hotel (*Which hotel?*). His room was $1,000 a night. While he was shopping on ... (*Where?*), he bought clothes, jewelry, and perfume.

He called two friends because ... (*Why?*). They were eating breakfast in the Ritz-Carlton when Hugo's father, James, called. His credit card company wanted to know ... (*What?*). They thought James was staying in the Ritz-Carlton.

Hugo went home to Toronto, where ... was waiting for him (*Who?*). "He isn't speaking to me right now," said Hugo yesterday. "He's a little angry with me."

UNIT 2 *page 12*

PRACTICE
Exchanging information

Name and age	Makiko, 35	Mario and Ana, 69
Town and country	Tokyo, Japan	
Family	single, one brother	
Occupation	fashion buyer	
Free time/vacation	plays tennis and reads, London and Paris	
Current activity	buying clothes in Hong Kong	



UNIT 4 *page 28*

PRACTICE
Find the differences

Ask and answer questions to find the differences between your picture and your partner's.

Ask about these things.

towels	toilet paper
soap	shaving cream
diapers	makeup
toothbrushes	deodorant
toothpaste	perfume/aftershave
shampoo	hairbrushes

How | much ... is there? / many ... are there?
Do they have any ... ?
Is / Are | there any ...?

(Yes,) | lots/a lot / a few/a little

(No,) There | isn't / aren't | any



UNIT 5 *page 37*

What are you doing tonight?

You study in the mornings. You need to arrange a time to meet when you and your partner are free. Look at your calendar and talk with your partner to find a time when you are both free.

What are you doing on Monday afternoon?

I'm playing tennis with Andy. Are you doing anything on Tuesday evening?

	morning	afternoon	evening
Monday	study	play tennis with Andy	
Tuesday	study		watch baseball at Mike's house
Wednesday	study	visit James in the hospital	
Thursday	study		
Friday	study		

UNIT 12 *page 92*

PRACTICE

Exchanging information

Where was Steve born?

In Taipei.

When was he born?

In 1978.

Ask and answer questions to complete the information about Steve Chen.

Steve Chen

The Co-founder of YouTube

Steve was born in Taipei in _____ (*When?*). His family moved to the U.S. when he was 8, and he studied _____ in college (*What?*). According to Steve, he has been "a math and science geek" since he was young and is proud of it.

He has worked for websites like eBay and Facebook, but he is best known for starting his own site, YouTube, when he was _____ (*How old ... when...?*). He started YouTube with his friends because they wanted to share their videos from a party. Now more than _____ people have joined YouTube (*How many?*), and over 100 million videos have been put online.

Steve and his friends sold YouTube in _____ (*When?*) for $1.6 billion. Although he now has $_____ (*How much money ... ?*), he still works for YouTube. He has been traveling a lot on business lately. This is because YouTube has opened new offices in _____ (*Where?*).

He has been running YouTube since 2005 and is thinking about trying something new. He has been developing _____ (*What?*). His success still surprises him. When he was a child, a fortune teller said he would never be rich!



EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Role play

1 Read your role.

- Be sure you understand the situation.
- What decisions will you make?

STUDENT B	STUDENT D	STUDENT F
Situation You're at home. It's 7:00 in the evening. It's time to do tonight's English homework, but you have a problem. You've forgotten what the homework is, and you left your copy of *American Headway Student Book 2* at school. You're going to call a friend who's in the same class. **Decision** What are you doing for the rest of the evening? If you need to borrow a copy of *American Headway Student Book 2* could you go over to your friend's house? What time? **The phone call** Call your friend. Your friend will start the conversation. Ask, "How are you?" and talk a little before you ask about the homework. Say, "I've forgotten what tonight's homework is. Do you know?"	**Situation** You come from a country where English is not the main language. Today is the 18th. Next week, on the 25th, you're flying to the United States for a month to study English at a university. You're going to stay with an American family. They live in a large city, but you don't know their exact street address. You're going to call them to tell them what time you expect to arrive. **Decision** What time does the plane arrive? Do you want the family to meet you or will you take a bus or taxi from the airport? If you are going to take a bus, you need to know how to get from the bus station to their home. If you take a taxi, you need directions for the driver. **The phone call** Call the family. They will start the conversation. Say, "I'm calling to tell you when my flight arrives." Don't forget to ask for the address.	**Situation** It's 7:00 in the morning. You want to talk to a friend of yours. It's very important – you've found a used car that you think he'd/she'd like to buy. **Decision** If he/she isn't home, are you going to leave a message? Are you going to call again later, or do you want your friend to call you back? Will you be at home the rest of the evening, or are you going out? **The phone call** Call your friend. The other person starts the conversation.

2 Find a partner.

Student B Find a Student A.
Student D Find a Student C.
Student F Find a Student E.

Role-play a phone conversation with your partner. Start the conversation.

3 Act out your phone conversation for the class.

Extra Materials

UNIT 3 *page 22*

STORY SUMMARY

The MAN with the GOLDEN GUN

Francisco Scaramanga is an assassin who charges $1 million a job. He is called "the man with the golden gun" because he carries a golden gun with golden bullets. He has already killed one spy, 002, so when James Bond receives a gold bullet with 007 engraved on it, he knows he is next. "M," Bond's boss, says James cannot work as a secret agent until Scaramanga is caught. The gold bullet was made in China, so James leaves for Hong Kong where he meets another secret agent, Mary Goodnight. Unfortunately, Scaramanga follows Mary to Bond's hotel, captures her, and takes her to his secret island. James goes after them to the island, saves Mary, and shoots Scaramanga. He also finds a "Solar Agitator" that Scaramanga was planning to use to rule the world.

WRITING UNIT 3 *page 100*

WRITING A STORY

Aunt Camilla's Portrait

My aunt Camilla is very old and very rich. One day she was looking in the mirror when she suddenly decided that she wanted a portrait of herself. Immediately, she called the world-famous portrait painter, Rolf Unwin.

Twice a week she went to his studio. Rolf worked extremely hard and painted her portrait very carefully and secretly. He didn't want her to see the picture until it was completely finished.

Finally, after three months, the portrait was ready. My aunt was very excited and hurried to the studio. The portrait looked exactly like my aunt. Unfortunately, she was quite upset and refused to pay Rolf. She ordered him to paint it again.

This time my aunt didn't visit the studio at all. After another three months, the portrait was ready and my aunt went to see it. The face was that of a beautiful, young woman. It didn't look like my aunt at all, but of course, she absolutely loved it. She paid Rolf very generously.

UNIT 5 *page 37*

The Voice Within

Christina Aguilera

Young girl don't cry
I'll be right here when your world starts to fall
Young girl it's alright
Your tears will dry, you'll soon be free to fly

When you're safe inside your room you tend to *dream / think*
Of a place where nothing's harder than it seems
No one ever wants or *bothers / tries* to explain
Of the *pain / heartache* life can bring and what it means

Chorus

When there's no one else, look inside yourself
Like your oldest friend just trust the voice within
Then you'll find the strength that will guide your way
If you will learn to begin to trust the voice within

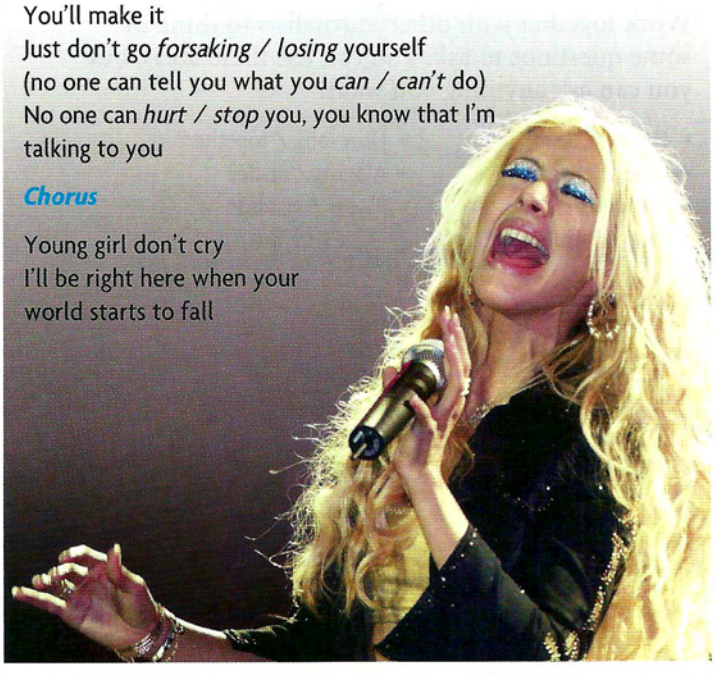
Young girl don't *leave / hide*
You'll never change if you just *run / walk* away
Young girl just hold *on / tight*
Soon you're going to see a brighter *day / dawn*

Chorus

Life is a *journey / train*
It can take you anywhere you *want / choose* to go
As long as you're learning
You'll find all you'll ever *need / have* to know
(be strong)
You'll make it
(hold on)
You'll make it
Just don't go *forsaking / losing* yourself
(no one can tell you what you *can / can't* do)
No one can *hurt / stop* you, you know that I'm talking to you

Chorus

Young girl don't cry
I'll be right here when your world starts to fall



UNIT 7 *page 51*

Find someone who . . .

Match the number you chose on page 51 to one of these sentences. Then do the activity on page 51.

1. Find someone who has been to Europe.
2. Find someone who has been to Australia.
3. Find someone who has been skiing.
4. Find someone who has tried Thai food.
5. Find someone who has climbed a mountain.
6. Find someone who has won a contest.
7. Find someone who has met a famous person.
8. Find someone who has broken a bone.
9. Find someone who has written a poem.
10. Find someone who has **never** failed a test.

UNIT 7 *page 53*

Role play

Use the prompts for your role to help prepare for the interview. When you are ready, have the interview.

Band members

Work with the other members of your band. Talk together to prepare your information.

- band name
- kind of music
- instruments
- musical influences
- how long you have been together
- albums you've made
- places you've visited

Journalists

Work together with other journalists to think of some questions to ask. You can use these ideas, but you can ask anything you want!

- Name of band?
- Kind of music?
- Instruments?
- Who / influenced? How?
- How long / together?
- Albums / made?
- Places / visited?

UNIT 12 *page 94*

Article 2

Faster than her father

Snow girl wins in Arctic

The teenage daughter of the well known polar explorer, David Hempleman-Adams, was celebrating yesterday. She's just become the youngest person to complete a route to the North Pole on foot.

"It was amazing."

Alicia Hempleman-Adams said, "We were walking up waterfalls and mountains, and across frozen lakes. It was amazing."

Alicia has survived temperatures of -49°F and strong winds to finish the 200-mile walk in 10 days, two days quicker than planned. She has also finished the journey faster than her father did it!

How does she feel at the end of her Arctic adventure? "It's a really good feeling. I'm glad we completed it. It's more of an achievement."

"I'm extremely proud."

But how does her father feel about her achievement?

Mr. Hempleman-Adams said, "I'm extremely proud, of course. I always wanted her to enjoy it. It has certainly given her a new maturity. I'm very proud—and a bit annoyed! She took a day less than I did—of course, she had much better skis than I had!"

Alicia is flying back to the UK today, as she is going back to school on Monday. She says she doesn't want to be an explorer, though. She would prefer to do something "more arty" in the future!

Word List

Here is a list of most of the new words in the units of *American Headway* Student Book 2.

adj = adjective
adv = adverb
conj = conjunction
coll = colloquial
n = noun
opp = opposite
pl = plural
prep = preposition
pron = pronoun
pp = past participle
v = verb
U.S. = American English

UNIT 1

advice *n* /ədvaɪs/
art gallery *n* /ɑrt gæləri/
adventure *n* /əd'vɛntʃər/
best friend *n* /bɛst frɛnd/
brave *adj* /breɪv/
can *n, v* /kən/
casual *adj* /kæʒuəl/
chewing gum *n* /tʃu:ɪŋ gʌm/
class *n* /klæs/
club *n* /klʌb/
comfortable *adj* /'kʌmftəbl/
conference *n* /'kanfrəns/
couple *n* /'kʌpl/
course *n* /kɔrs/
date *n* /deɪt/
designer *n* /dɪ'zaɪnər/
diary *n* /'daɪəri/
discover *v* /dɪ'skʌvər/
diving *n* /'daɪvɪŋ/
don't worry /doʊnt 'wəri/
downtown (U.S.) *n* /'daʊntaʊn/
end *n* /ɛnd/
environmental *adj* /ɛn,vaɪərn'məntl/
essay *n* /'ɛseɪ/
everyday *adj* /'ɛvrideɪ/
exchange *v* /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/
Excuse me! /ɪks'kyu:s ,mi:/
factory *n* /'fæktəri/
foreign *adj* /'fɔrən/
funny *adj* /'fʌni/
go clubbing *v* /,goʊ 'klʌbɪŋ/
good fun *adj* /,gʊd 'fʌn/
good looking *adj* /,gʊd 'lʊkɪŋ/
graduate *v* /'grædʊeɪt/
grow up *v* /,groʊ 'ʌp/
guilty *adj* /'gɪlti/
hairbrush *n* /'hɛrbrʌʃ/
hard (= difficult) *adj* /hɑrd/
Have a good weekend /,həv ə ,gʊd ,wi:k'ɛnd/
information *n* /,ɪnfər'meɪʃn/
kid (child) *n* /kɪd/
kind *n, adj* /kaɪnd/
last *adv* /læ:st/
last *v* /læ:st/
lawyer *n* /'lɔ:yər/
leave *v* /li:v/
mean *v, adj* /mi:n/
medicine *n* /'mɛdɪsn/
midnight *n* /'mɪdnaɪt/
mouse pad *n* /'maʊs ,pæd/
No problem /,noʊ 'prabləm/
object *n* /'abdʒɛkt/
outgoing *adj* /,aʊt'goəʊɪŋ/
pencil sharpener *n* /'pɛnsl ,ʃɑr:pənər/
poor *adj* /pʊr/
problem/'prabləm/
radio host *n* /'reɪdioʊ hoʊst/
relationship *n* /rɪ'leɪʃnʃɪp/
retired *adj* /rɪ'taɪərd/
ring *v, n* /rɪŋ/
rubber *n* /'rʌbər/
ruler *n* /'ru:lər/
scissors *n* /'sɪsərz/
See you later. /,si: ,yu: 'leɪtər/
separate *adj* /'sɛprət/
share *v* /ʃɛr/
single *adj* /'sɪŋgl/
snowboard *v* /'snoʊbɔ:rd/
sometimes *adv* /'sʌmtaɪmz/
star sign *n* /'stɑr: ,saɪn/
store *n* /stɔ:r/
successful *adj* /sək'sɛsfl/
sunglasses *n* /'sʌnglæsəs/
surfing *n* /'sər:fɪŋ/
That's OK /ðæts oʊ'keɪ/
theater *n* /'θiətər/
tissues *n* /'tɪʃu:z/
twin *n* /twɪn/
vegetarian *n, adj* /,vɛdʒə'tɛriən/
wallet *n* /'walət/
wonderful *adj* /'wʌndərfl/
You're welcome /yər 'wɛlkəm/

UNIT 2

abroad *adv* /ə'brɔ:d/
accent *n* /'æksɛnt/
accident *n* /'æksədənt/
act the part *coll* /,ækt ðə 'pɑr:t/
almost *adv* /'ɔ:lmoʊst/
always *adv* /'ɔ:lweɪz/
at least *adv* /ət 'li:st/
awful *adj* /'ɔ:fl/
bedtime *n* /'bɛdtaɪm/
boss *n* /bɔs/
bring *v* /brɪŋ/
celeb (celebrity) *n* /sə'lɛbrəti/
clean up *v* /,klin 'ʌp/
coast *n* /koʊst/
communication *n* /kə,myu:nə'keɪʃn/
competition *n* /,kampə'tɪʃn/
contact lenses *n pl* /'kantækt ,lɛnzɪz/
conversation *n* /,kanvər'seɪʃn/
disadvantage *n* /,dɪsəd'væ:ntɪdʒ/
distance *n* /'dɪstəns/
divide *v* /də'vaɪd/
divorced *adj* /də'vɔr:st/
do overtime *v* /,du: 'oʊvərtaɪm/
dormitory *n* /'dɔr:mətri/
employ *v* /ɛm'plɔɪ/
essential *adj* /ɪ'sɛnʃl/
European *adj* /,yʊrə'pi:ən/
exchange *v* /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/
exhausting *adj* /ɪg'zɔ:stɪŋ/
factory *n* /'fæktəri/
farmhouse *n* /'fɑr:mhaʊs/
First things first! /,fə:rst ,θɪŋz 'fə:rst/
flat *adj* /flæt/
glamorous *adj* /'glæmərəs/
Guess what! /,gɛs 'wʌt/
guest *n* /gɛst/
hairdresser *n* /'hɛrdrɛsər/
a handful *n* /eɪ 'hændfʊl/
have something in common (= to share interests or experiences) /,həv ,sʌmθɪŋ ɪn 'kamən/
hundred *n* /'hʌndrəd/
hurt *v* /hər:t/
impossible *adj* /ɪm'pasəbl/
interested *adj* /'ɪntrəstəd/
just *adv* /dʒʌst/
keep (us) busy *v* /,ki:p (əs) 'bɪzɪ/
landscape *n* /'lænskeɪp/
lifestyle *n* /'laɪfstaɪl/
lonely *adj* /'loʊnli/
loft *n* /lɔft/
lucky *adj* /'lʌki/
makeup *n* /'meɪkʌp/
manicure *n* /'mænəkyʊr/
mess *n* /mɛs/
miss *v* /mɪs/
monthly *adv* /'mʌnθli/
nail (= on your finger) *n* /neɪl/
national park *n* /,næʃənl 'pɑr:k/
never *adv* /'nɛvər/
occupation *n* /,akyjə'peɪʃn/
often *adv* /'ɔfn, 'ɔftn/
pearl *n* /pər:l/
politician *n* /,palə'tɪʃn/
poster *n* /'poʊstər/
practise *v* /'præktəs/
prefer *v* /prɪ'fə:r/
private *adj* /'praɪvət/
province *n* /'pravəns/
racing *n* /'reɪsɪŋ/
rent *v* /rɛnt/
right now *adv* /raɪt naʊ/
robot *n* /'roʊbat/
rooftop *adj* /'ru:ftap/
routine *n* /ru:'ti:n/
salary /sæləri/
sale *n* /seɪl/
send *v* /sɛnd/
sushi /'suʃi/
situated *pp* /'sɪtʃʊeɪtəd/
skills *n pl* /skɪlz/
social life *n* /'soʊʃl ,laɪf/
society *n* /sə'saɪəti/
sometimes *adv* /'sʌmtaɪmz/
strange *adj* /streɪndʒ/
surprise *n* /sər'praɪz/
technology *n* /tɛk'nalədʒi/
test *v* /tɛst/
text *v* /tɛkst/
That's really nice of you. /,ðæts ,ri:əli naɪs əv ,yu:/
these days /ðiz deɪz/
tiring *adj* /'taɪərɪŋ/
transatlantic *adj* /,trænzət'læntɪk/
trendy *adj* /'trɛndi/
twins *n* /twɪnz/
uniform *n* /'yu:nəfɔr:m/
useful *adj* /'yu:sfl/
usually *adv* /'yu:ʒuəli/
view *n* /vyu:/
view of *n* /'vyu: əv/
voice *n* /vɔɪs/
wear (your hair) up *v* /,wɛr (yər: 'hɛr) 'ʌp/
wonderful *adj* /'wʌndərfl/
worst *adj* /wər:st/

UNIT 3

air-conditioning *n* /ˈɛr kənˌdɪʃnɪŋ/
amazed *adj* /əˈmeɪzd/
angrily *adv* /ˈæŋgrəli/
angry (with sb) *adj* /ˈæŋgri (wɪð ...)/
apartment *n* /əˈpɑr:tmənt/
apologize *v* /əˈpalədʒaɪz/
appointment *n* /əˈpɔɪntmənt/
assassin *n* /əˈsæsn/
bang *v* /bæŋ/
big spender /ˌbɪg ˈspɛndər/
bowl *n* /boʊl/
break into *v* /ˈbreɪk ˌɪntu:, ˌɪntə/
breathe *v* /bri:ð/
bullet *n* /ˈbʊlət/
burglar *n* /ˈbərglər/
cage *n* /keɪdʒ/
canal *n* /kəˈnæl/
capture *v* /ˈkæptʃər/
carefully *adv* /ˈkɛrfəli/
connection *n* /kəˈnɛkʃn/
copy *n* /ˈkapi/
credit card *n* /ˈkrɛdət ˌkɑrd/
crept (past tense of creep) *v* /krɛpt/
crime *n* /kraɪm/
curtain *n* /ˈkərtn/
date *n* /deɪt/
destroy *v* /dɪˈstrɔɪ/
dinner *n* /dɪnər/
documentary *n* /ˌdokyəˈmɛntəri/
downstairs *adv* /ˌdaʊnˈsteɛrz/
dream (about sth) *v* /ˈdri:m (əˌbaʊt ...)/
engrave *v* /ɪnˈgreɪv/
exactly *adv* /ɪgˈzæktli/
exclaim *v* /ɪkˈskleɪm/
feel sick *v* /ˌfi:l sɪk/
felt (past tense of *feel*) *v* /fɛlt/
figure *n* /ˈfɪgyər/
fill *v* /fɪl/
fired his gun /faɪərd hɪz gʌn/
fix *v* /fɪks/
fortunately *adv* /ˈfɔ:tʃənətli/
grades *n* /greɪdz/
ghost *n* /goʊst/
golden *adj* /ˈgoʊldən/
gradually *adv* /ˈgrædʒuəli/
guiltily *adv* /ˈgɪltɪli/
gunman *n* /ˈgʌnmən/
happily ever after /ˌhæpəli ˌɛvər ˈæ:ftər/
haunt *v* /hɔ:nt/
heavily *adv* /ˈhɛvəli/
hide *v* /haɪd/
hit man *n* /ˈhɪt ˌmæn/
HQ (= headquarters) *n* /ˌeɪtʃ ˈkyu:/
hungry *adj* /ˈhʌŋgri/
immediate *adv* /ɪˈmi:diət/
invitation *n* /ˌɪnvəˈteɪʃn/
joke *n* /dʒoʊk/
knock on the door *v* /ˌnak an ðə ˈdɔ:r/
laugh *v* /læ:f/
lazily *adv* /ˈleɪzɪli/
lead *v* /li:d/
let out *v* /ˌlɛt ˈaʊt/
lock *v* /lak/
lose *v* /lu:z/
lovingly *adv* /ˈlʌvɪŋli/
message *n* /ˈmɛsɪdʒ/
midnight *n* /ˈmɪdnaɪt/
missing *adj* /ˈmɪsɪŋ/
movement *n* /ˈmu:vmənt/
museum *n* /myu:ˈzi:əm/
mystery *n* /ˈmɪstəri/
nervously *adv* /ˈnɜ:rvəsli/
noise *n* /nɔɪz/
original *adj* /əˈrɪdʒənl/
outside *adv* /aʊtˈsaɪd/
passport *n* /ˈpæ:spɔ:rt/
peacefully *adv* /ˈpi:sfʊli/
perhaps *adv* /pərˈhæps/
pick up (the phone) *v* /ˌpɪk ʌp (ðə ˈfoʊn)/
poem *n* /ˈpoʊəm/
point (straight at sth/sb) *v* /ˌpɔɪnt (ˈstreɪt ət ...)/
poker *n* /ˈpoʊkər/
portrait *n* /ˈpɔr:tret/
printer *n* /ˈprɪntər/
prison *n* /ˈprɪzn/
pull *v* /pʊl/
quietly *adv* /ˈkwaɪətli/
refuse (say no) *v* /rɪˈfyu:z/
relief *n* /rɪˈli:f/
reporters *n pl* /rɪˈpɔr:tərz/
run out of *v* /ˌrʌn ˈaʊt əv/
sadly *adv* /ˈsædli/
secret agent *n* /ˌsi:krət ˈeɪdʒənt/
security guard *n* /səˈkyʊərəti ˌgɑr:d/
shine *v* /ʃaɪn/
shoot *v* /ʃu:t/
softly *adv* /ˈsɔfli/
spending spree *n* /ˈspɛndɪŋ ˌspri:/
staff *n* /stæ:f/
stand up *v* /ˌstænd ˈʌp/
steal *v* /sti:l/
still *adv* /stɪl/
straight *adv* /streɪt/
suddenly *adv* /ˈsʌdnli/
switch off *v* /ˌswɪtʃ ˈɔf/
teen *n* /ˈtin/
terrorist *n* /ˈtɛrərɪst/
thief *n* /θi:f/
throw *v* /θroʊ/
thump (of the heart) *v* /θʌmp/
title *n* /ˈtaɪtl/
together *adv* /təˈgɛðər/
tragically *adv* /ˈtrædʒɪkli/
translation *n* /træns'leɪʃn/
truck *n* /trək/
turn on *v* /ˌtərn ˈɑn/
unfortunately *adv* /ʌnˈfɔr:tʃənətli/
unlock *v* /ˌʌnˈlak/
urgently *adv* /ˈər:dʒəntli/
whisper *v* /ˈwɪspər/
with feeling *adv* /ˌwɪð ˈfi:lɪŋ/
worry *v* /ˈwəri/
worth *adj* /wər:θ/

UNIT 4

adult *n* /ˈədʌlt/
allergic *adj* /əˈlər:dʒɪk/
amazing *adj* /əˈmeɪzɪŋ/
ancient *adj* /ˈeɪnʃənt/
antique *n* /æn'ti:k/
anybody *pron* /ˈɛnibʌdi/
anyone *pron* /ˈɛniwʌn/
anything *pron* /ˈɛniθɪŋ/
aromatic *adj* /ˌærəˈmætɪk/
aspirin *n* /ˈæsprən/
backpack *n* /ˈbækpæk/
bakery *n* /ˈbeɪkəri/
bargain (for sth) *v* /ˈbɑr:gən (fər ...)/
be packed with /bi ˈpækt wɪð/
belt *n* /bɛlt/
book (of) *n* /ˌbʊk (əv)/
bored *adj* /bɔ:rd/
brands *n* /brændz/
bridge *n* /brɪdʒ/
bunch (of) *n* /ˌbʌntʃ (əv)/
businesses n pl /ˈbɪznəsɪz/
busy *adj* /ˈbɪzi/
canal *n* /kəˈnæl/
carpet *n* /ˈkɑr:pət/
cash (a check) *v* /ˌkæʃ (əɪ ˈtʃɛk)/
cashier *n* /kæˈʃɪər/
cent (U.S. currency) *n* /sɛnt/
certainly *adv* /ˈsər:tnli/
change *n* /tʃeɪndʒ/
choose *v* /tʃu:z/
clever idea *n* /ˌklɛvər aɪˈdiə/
cloth *n* /klɔθ/
clothing *n* /ˈkloʊðɪŋ/
collect *v* /kəˈlɛkt/
colorful *adj* /ˈkʌlərfl/
commission *n* /kəˈmɪʃn/
contrast *n* /ˈkəntræ:st/
cost *n* /kɔst/
count (money) *v* /ˌkaʊnt (ˈmʌni)/
covered (with sth) *adj* /ˈkʌvərd (wɪð ...)/
create *v* /kriˈeɪt/
currency *n* /ˈkərənsi/
customer *n* /ˈkʌstəmər/
delicious *adj* /dɪˈlɪʃəs/
deodorant *n* /diˈəʊdərənt/
desert *n* /ˈdɛzərt/
diaper *n* /daɪpər/
dollar (U.S. currency) *n* /ˈdalər/
doughnut *n* /ˈdoʊnʌt/
dozen eggs *n* /ˌdʌzn ˈɛgz/
drugstore /drʌgstɔr/
endless *adj* /ˈɛndləs/
everything *pron* /ˈɛvriθɪŋ/
exactly *adv* /ɪgˈzæktli/
exchange rate *n* /ɪkˈstʃeɪndʒ ˌreɪt/
fascinating *adj* /ˈfæsəneɪtɪŋ/
fine (= good quality) *adj* /faɪn/
fitting room *n* /fitiŋ rum/
float *v* /floʊt/
for goodness sake! /fər ˌgʊdnəs ˈseɪk/
for sale /fər ˈseɪl/
forget *v* /fərˈgɛt/
furniture *n* /ˈfɜ:nɪtʃər/
glasses *n* pl /ˈglæ:səz/
global *adj* /ˈgloʊbl/
grown (grown locally) *pp* /groʊn (ˌgroʊn ˈloʊkəli)/
half *n* /hæ:f/
herb *n* /hər:b/
hobby *n* /ˈhabi/
huge *adj* /hyu:dʒ/
international *adj* /ˌɪntərˈnæʃnəl/
invented *pp* /ɪnˈvɛntɪd/
jewelery *n* /ˈdʒu:əlri/
kilo (of) *n* /ˌki:loʊ (əv)/
Let's see /ˌlɛts ˈsi:/
liter (of) *n* /ˌli:tər (əv)/
loaf (of) *n* /ˌloʊf (əv)/
luxurious *adj* /lʌgˈʒʊəriəs/
market *n* /ˈmɑr:kət/
mechanic *n* /məˈkænɪk/
movie set *n* /ˈmuvi, sɛt/
narrow *adj* /ˈnæroʊ/
newsstand *n* /ˈnu:zestænd/
noisy *adj* /ˈnɔɪzi/
package /ˈpækɪdʒ/
packet (of) *n* /ˌpæckət əv/
peaceful *adj* /ˈpi:sfl/
pick from *v* /ˈpɪk frəm/
picnic *n* /ˈpɪknɪk/
pints *n* /paɪnts/
pound (pounds sterling = British currency) *n* /paʊndz
product *n* /ˈpradʌkt/
quantity *n* /ˈkwantəti/
roll *n* /roʊl/
rug *n* /rʌg/
scales *n pl* /skeɪlz/
scientist *n* /ˈsaɪəntɪst/
seller *n* /ˈsɛlər/
shaving cream *n* /ˈʃeɪvɪŋ krim/
shopping list *n* /ˈʃopɪŋ ˌlɪst/
sidewalk *n* /ˈsaɪdwɔk/
silver *n* /ˈsɪlvər/
size *n* /saɪz/
soap *n pl* /ṣoʊp/
sore throat /ˌsɔr: ˈθroʊt/
spectacular *adj* /spɛkˈtækyələr/

spice *n* /spaɪs/
spoonful *n* /'spu:nfʊl/
stalls *n pl* /stɔ:lz/
stove *n* /stoʊv/
strange *adj* /streɪndʒ/
survey (conduct a survey) *n* /'sər:veɪ (kən,dʌkt ə 'sər:veɪ)/
tissue *n* /'tɪʃu:/
traditional *adj* /trə'dɪʃnl/
traveler's check *n* /'trævlərz,tʃɛk/
village *n* /'vɪlɪdʒ/
website *n* /'wɛbsaɪt/
wooden *adj* /'wʊdn/

UNIT 5

affect *v* /ə'fɛkt/
ambition *n* /æm'bɪʃn/
annoyed *adj* /ə'nɔɪd/
annoying *adj* /ə'nɔɪɪŋ/
applicable *adj* /æ'plɪkəbl/
argue (with sb) *v* /'ɑr:gyu: (wɪð ...)/
army *n* /'ɑr:mi/
arrange *v* /ə'reɪndʒ/
average *adj* /'ævrɪdʒ/
be in trouble with the police /bi ɪn 'trʌbl wɪð ðə pə'lis/
be pleased for sb /bi 'pli:zd fər/
be responsible *v* /,bi: rɪ'spansəbl/
behavior *n* /bɪ'heɪvyər/
blame *v* /bleɪm/
body piercing *n* /'badi ,pɪrsɪŋ/
boots *n pl* /bu:ts/
bored *adj* /bɔr:d/
boring *adj* /'bɔ:rɪŋ/
brat *n* /bræt/
bullying *n* /'bʊlɪɪŋ/
camp *n* /kæmp/
cheating *n* /'tʃi:tɪŋ/
Cheer up! /,tʃɪr 'ʌp/
chorus *n* /'kɔ:rəs/
confused *adj* /kən'fyu:zd/
confusing *adj* /kən'fyu:zɪŋ/
cried (past tense of cry) *v* /kraɪd/
cruise *n* /kru:z/
delete *v* /dɪ'li:t/
depressed *adj* /dɪ'prɛst/
depressing *adj* /dɪ'prɛsɪŋ/
desperate *adj* /'dɛspərət/
disappointed *adj* /,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪd/
disappointing *adj* /,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪŋ/
discuss *v* /dɪ'skʌs/
divorced *adj* /də'vɔr:s/
elementary school *n* /ɛlə'mɛntari skul/
end up *v* /,ɛnd 'ʌp/
excited *adj* /ɪk'saɪtəd/
exciting *adj* /ɪk'saɪtɪŋ/
exhausting *adj* /ɪg'zɔ:stɪŋ/
experience *n* /ɪk'spɪriəns/
fascinated *adj* /'fæsəneɪtɪd/
fascinating *adj* /'fæsəneɪtɪŋ/
fault *n* /fɔ:lt/
fed up with /,fɛd 'ʌp wɪð/
feel depressed *adj* /,fi:l dɪ'prɛst/
feel sorry for *v* /,fi:l 'sari fɔ:r, fər/
fighting *n* /'faɪtɪŋ/
footsteps *n* pl /'fʊtstɛps/
frightened *adj* /'fraɪtnd/
frightening *adj* /'fraɪtnɪŋ/
give sb a call (= call sb on the phone) *coll* /,gɪv ... ə kɔl/
give up (= stop doing sth) *v* /,gɪv 'ʌp/
grade *n* /greɪd/
have a baby /həv ə beɪbi/
headache *n* /'hɛdeɪk/
heartache *n* /'hɑr:teɪk/
heavy *adj* /'hɛvi/
hike *n* /haɪk/
hope *n* /hoʊp/
horrible (to sb) *adj* /'hɔrəbl (tə ...)/
hurt *adj* /hər:t/
incredible *adj* /ɪn'krɛdəbl/
innocence *n* /'ɪnəsns/
instruction *n* /ɪn'strʌkʃn/
intelligent *adj* /ɪn'tɛlədʒənt/
invite *v* /ɪn'vaɪt/
lend *v* /lɛnd/
lie *n* /laɪ/
look forward to (doing sth) /'lʊk ,fɔr:wəd tə .../
mail (letters/packages) *n, v* /meɪl/
marathon *n* /'mærəθan/
marital status *n* /'mærɪtl ,staetəs/
nurse *n* /nə:rs/
occupation *n* /,akyə'peɪʃn/
orders (follow orders) *n pl* /'ɔr:dərz (,faloʊ 'ɔr:dərz)/
out of control /,aʊt əv kən'troʊl/
permanent *adj* /'pər:mənənt/
physical activity *n* /,fɪzɪkl æk'tɪvəti/
piercings *n pl* /'pɪrsɪŋz/
plan (to do sth) *v* /,plæn (tə 'du: ...)/
police *n, v* /pə'lis/
problem *n* /'prabləm/
promise *v* /'praməs/
prison *n* /'prɪzn/
psychologist *n* /saɪ'kalədʒɪst/
rebel (against sb or sth) *v* /rɛ'bl (ə,gɛnst ...)/
relaxing *adj* /rɪ'læksɪŋ/
remarried *adj* /,ri:'mærid/
save money /,seɪv 'mʌni/
secret *n* /'si:krət/
self-control *n* /,sɛlf kən'troʊl/
seriously *adv* /'sɪriəsli/
shocked *adj* /ʃakt/
shocking *adj* /'ʃakɪŋ/
signature *n* /'sɪgnətʃər/
situation *n* /,sɪtʃʊ'eɪʃn/
skip school /skɪp skul/
spy story *n* /'spaɪ ,stɔ:ri/
stand your ground /,stænd yər 'graʊnd/
stay out all night /steɪ aot ɔl nəɪt/
steal *v* /sti:l/
study *v* /'stʌdi/
sunshine *n* /'sʌnʃaɪn/
surprised *adj* /sər'praɪzd/
surprising *adj* /sər'praɪzɪŋ/
swearing *n* /'swɛrɪŋ/
tell (a secret/lie) *v* /,tɛl (ə 'si:krət, 'laɪ)/
test *n, v* /tɛst/
therapy *n* /'θɛrəpi/
tired of *adj* /'taɪərd əv/
tough *adj* /tʌf/
troubled *adj* /'trʌbld/
trust *n, v* /trʌst/
vet *n* /vɛt/

UNIT 6

absolutely *adv* /'æbsəlu:tli/
according to *prep* /ə'kɔr:dɪŋ tə/
advantage *n* /əd'væ:ntɪdʒ/
afford *v* /ə'fɔ:rd/
amazing *adj* /ə'meɪzɪŋ/
angry *adj* /'æŋgri/
awesome /ɔsəm/
back to normal /,bæk tə 'nɔr:ml/
backpack *n* /'bækpæk/
be accepted *v* /,bi: ək'sɛptɪd/
birthplace *n* /'bɔ:rθpleɪs/
bit (= small piece) *n* /bɪt/
book (a room) *v* /,bʊk (ə 'ru:m)/
booking fee *n* /'bʊkɪŋ ,fi:/
break up *v* /,breɪk 'ʌp/
building *n* /'bɪldɪŋ/
character *n* /'kærəktər/
check in *n* /'tʃek ɪn, ,tʃɛk 'ɪn/
client *n* /'klaɪənt/
comedy *n* /'kamədi/
community *n* /kə'myu:nəti/
contemporary *adj* /kən'tɛmpərɛri/
cosmopolitan *adj* /,kazmə'palɪətn/
creative *adj* /kr:'ətɪv/
dirty *adj, v* /dərti/
diverse *adj* /daɪ'və:rs/
dorm (dormitory) *n* /dɔr:m/
earn *v* /ərn/
expiration date *n* /ɛk'speɪfn ,deɪt/
facility *n* /fə'sɪləti/
fashionable *adj* /'fæʃnəbl/
fluency *n* /'flu:ənsi/
foreigner *n* /'fɔrənər/
friendliest *adj* /'frɛndliəst/
friendship *n* /'frɛndʃɪp/
gender *n* /'dʒendər/
general knowledge *n* /,dʒɛnrəl 'nalɪdʒ/
generous *adj* /'dʒɛnərəs/
get along *v* /,gɛt 'əlcŋ/
get better *v* /,gɛt 'bɛtər/
Good luck! /,gʊd 'lʌk/
guide *n* /gaɪd/
halves (pl of half) *n* /hæ:vz/
hippopotamus *n* /,hɪpa'patəməs/
homeland *n* /'hoʊmlænd/
host *v* /hoʊst/
hostel *n* /'hastal/
human *n* /'hyu:mən/
I'm sorry to hear that /,aɪm 'sari tə 'hɪr ,ðæt/
immigrant *n* /'ɪməgrənt/
impolite *adj* /,ɪmpə'laɪt/
in particular /,ɪn pər'tɪkyələr/
in the beginning /,ɪn ðə bɪ'gɪnɪŋ/
independence *n* /,ɪndɪ'pɛndəns/
industrial *adj* /ɪn'dʌstriəl/
interest *n* /'ɪntrəst/
jazz *n* /dʒæz/
leaflet *n* /'li:flət/
lonely *adj* /'loʊnli/
mentioned *pp* /'mɛnʃnd/
messy *adj* /'mɛsi/
miserable *adj* /'mɪzrəbl/
modern *adj* /'madərn/
music scene *n* /'myu:zɪk ,si:n/
neighbor *n* /'neɪbər/
Oh no! /,oʊ noʊ/
online /an'laɪn/
owner *n* /'oʊnər/
passion *n* /'pæʃn/
pleasure *n* /'plɛʒər/
polite *adj* /pə'laɪt/
population *n* /,papyʊ'leɪʃn/
principle *n* /'prɪnsəpl/
quiz *n* /kwɪz/
rap *n* /ræp/
receptionist *n* /rɪ'sɛpʃnɪst/
romance *n* /roʊ'mæns/
rude *adj* /ru:d/
run *v* /rʌn/
science fiction *n* /,saɪəns 'fɪkʃn/
sculpture *n* /'skʌlptʃər/
separate *adj* /'sɛprət/
a shame /ə 'ʃeɪm/
shark *n* /ʃɑr:k/
shocking *adj* /'ʃakɪŋ/
sights *n pl* /saɪts/
sightseeing *n* /'saɪtsiɪŋ/
sightseeing tour *n* /'saɪtsiɪŋ ,tʊr/
skyscraper /'skaɪskreɪpər/
spicy *adj* /'spaɪsi/

stare *v* /steɪ/
stick together (= stay together) *v, coll* /ˌstɪk tə'geðər/
stingy *adj* /'stɪndʒi/
sunset *n* /'sʌnsɛt/
talented *adj* /'tæləntɪd/
temple *n* /'tɛmpl/
terms and conditions *n pl* /ˌtər:mz ənd kən'dɪʃnz/
terrible *adj* /'tɛrəbl/
test *n* /tɛst/
That's fantastic! /ˌðæts fæn'tæstɪk/
thief *n* /θi:f/
thriller *n* /'θrɪlər/
tired of /taɪərd əv/
tour *n* /tʊr/
trip *n* /trɪp/
used car *n* /yuzd kar/
vibrant *adj* /'vaɪbrənt/
vitality *n* /vaɪ'tæləti/
worried *adj* /'wərid/

UNIT 7

accident *n* /'æksədənt/
account *n* /ə'kaʊnt/
accountant *n* /ə'kaʊntnt/
advertise *v* /'ædvərtaɪz/
advertisement *n* /ˌædvər'taɪzmənt/
album *n* /'ælbəm/
alive *adj* /ə'laɪv/
ambitious *adj* /æm'bɪʃəs/
arrange /ə'reɪndʒ/
art *n* /ɑ:rt/
artist *n* /'ɑ:rtɪst/
attend *v* /ə'tɛnd/
bad-tempered *adj* /ˌbæd 'tɛmpərd/
band *n* /bænd/
bass *n* /beɪs/
bodyguard *n* /'badigɑ:rd/
to book *v* /tə bʊk/
calm *adj* /kɑ:m/
camping *n* /'kæmpɪŋ/
career *n* /kə'rɪr/
chaffeur *n* /'ʃoʊfər/
chef *n* /ʃɛf/
corridor *n* /'kɔrədɔ:r/
courage *n* /'kərɪdʒ/
danger *n* /'deɪndʒər/
decide *v* /dɪ'saɪd/
decision *n* /dɪ'sɪʒn/
decorate *v* /'dɛkəreɪt/
decorator *n* /'dɛkəreɪtər/
dietician *n* /ˌdaɪə'tɪʃn/
difference *n* /'dɪfrəns/
disaster *n* /dɪ'zæ:stər/
disastrous *adj* /dɪ'zæ:strəs/
drama queen *n* /'drɑ:mə ˌkwi:n/
drum *n* /drʌm/
easygoing *adj* /ˌi:zi 'goʊɪŋ/
electric *adj* /ɪ'lɛktrɪk/
electrician *n* /ɪˌlɛk'trɪʃn/
employ *v* /ɛm'plɔɪ/
employer *n* /ɛm'plɔɪər/
employment *n* /ɛm'plɔɪmənt/
entourage *n* /'antərɑ:ʒ/
explain *v* /ɪk'spleɪn/
explanation *n* /ˌɛkspla'neɪʃn/
fame *n* /feɪm/
famous *adj* /'feɪməs/
fire (from a job) *v* /ˌfaɪər/
flopped (= been unsuccessful) *pp* /flapt/
founder member *n* /'faʊndər ˌmɛmbər/
friendly *adj* /'frɛndli/
governed *pp* /'gʌvərnd/
great granddaughter *n* /ˌgreɪt 'grændɔ:tər/
guitar *n* /gɪ'tɑ:r/
have a break (= have a rest) /ˌhæv ə 'breɪk/
havoc (play havoc with sth) *n* /'hævək/
heir *n* /ɛr/
imagination *n* /ɪˌmædʒə'neɪʃn/
including *prep* /ɪn'klu:dɪŋ/
industry *n* /'ɪndəstri/
influenced (by sb/sth) *pp* /'ɪnflʊənst (ˌbaɪ ...)/
interpret *v* /ɪn'tər:prət/
interpreter *n* /ɪn'tər:prətər/
invent *v* /ɪn'vɛnt/
invitation *n* /ˌɪnvə'teɪʃn/
journalist *n* /'dʒər:nəlɪst/
keyboard *n* /'ki:bɔr:d/
kind *adj* /kaɪnd/
kindness *n* /'kaɪndnəs/
law *n* /lɔ:/
librarian *n* /laɪ'brɛriən/
library *n* /'laɪbrɛri/
lighting *n* /'laɪtɪŋ/
manicurist *n* /'mænɪkyʊrɪst/
member *n* /'mɛmbər/
misfortunes *n pl* /ˌmɪs'fɔr:tʃə:nz/
model *v* /'mɑdl/
moody *adj* /'mu:di/
movie (= film) *n U.S.* /'mu:vi/
movie premiere *n* /'muvi ˌprɪmiɪr/
music business *n* /'myu:zɪk ˌbɪznəs/
musical instrument *n* /ˌmyu:zɪkl 'ɪnstrəmənt/
musician *n* /myu:'zɪʃn/
nervous breakdown *n* /ˌnər:vəs 'breɪkdaʊn/
noisy *adj* /'nɔɪzi/
novel *n* /'navl/
organization *n* /ˌɔr:gənə'zeɪʃn/
PA (personal assistant) *n* /ˌpi: 'eɪ, (ˌpər:sənl ə'sɪstənt/)
paparazzi n *pl* /ˌpæpə'rætsi/
patient *adj* /'peɪʃnt/
patient *n* /'peɪʃnt/
perform *v* /pər'fɔ:rm/
performance *n* /pər'fɔr:məns/
personal trainer *n* /ˌpər:sənl 'treɪnər/
photographer *n* /fə'tagrəfər/
piano *n* /pi'ænoʊ/
politician *n* /ˌpalə'tɪʃn/
politics *n* pl /'palətɪks/
private jet *n* /ˌpraɪvət 'dʒɛt/
psychoanalysis *n* /ˌsaɪkoʊə'næləsəs/
reception *n* /rɪ'sɛpʃn/
refer to *v* /rɪ'fər: tu:, tə/
related *adj* /rɪ'leɪtəd/
saxophone *n* /'sæksəfoʊn/
science *n* /'saɪəns/
selfish *adj* /'sɛlfɪʃ/
series *n* /'sɪri:z/
sidewalk (= pavement) *n U.S.* /'saɪdwɔ:k/
spoiled /spɔɪld/
staff *n* /stæ:f/
temperamental *adj* /ˌtɛmprə'mɛntl/
ten dollar bill *n* /ˌtɛn 'dalər bɪl/
thoughtful *adj* /'θɔ:tfl/
tragedy *n* /'trædʒədi/
tragic *adj* /'trædʒɪk/
trumpet *n* /'trʌmpət/
unkind *adj* /ˌʌn'kaɪnd/
upset *adj* /ʌp'sɛt/

UNIT 8

ability *n* /ə'bɪləti/
ache *v* /eɪk/
agency *n* /'eɪdʒənsi/
ankle *n* /'æŋkl/
apologize *v* /ə'palədʒaɪz/
apply *v* /ə'plaɪ/
application *n* /ˌæplə'keɪʃn/
architect *n* /'ɑr:kətɛkt/
assistance *n* /ə'sɪstəns/
be on call /bi ˌan 'kɔ:l/
behave *v* /bɪ'heɪv/
bill *n* /bɪl/
blow your nose /ˌbloʊ yər: 'noʊz/
bully *n* /'bʊli/
career *n* /kə'rɪr/
chat *v* /tʃæt/
childcare *n* /'tʃaɪldkɛr/
clinic *n* /klɪnɪk/
construction worker *n* /kən'strʌkʃn wərkər/
country *n* /'kʌntri/
coward *n* /'kaʊərd/
definition *n* /ˌdɛfə'nɪʃn/
detective *n* /dɪ'tɛktɪv/
development *n* /dɪ'vɛləpmənt/
diarrhea *n* /ˌdaɪə'rɪə/
enclosed *adj* /ɪn'kloʊzd/
engineering *n* /ˌɛndʒ'ənɪrɪŋ/
enquire *v* /ɪn'kwaɪər/
ex-boyfriend *n* /ˌɛks 'bɔɪfrɛnd/
fall in love /ˌfɔ:l ɪn 'lʌv/
farmer *n* /'fɑ:rmər/
feed *v* /fi:d/
fire fighter *n* /'faɪər ˌfaɪtər/
flight attendant *n* /flaɪt ə'tɛndənt/
food poisoning *n* /'fu:d ˌpɔɪzɪnɪŋ/
gardener *n* /'gɑ:rdnər/
gender *n* /'dʒɛndər/
gender gap *n* /'dʒɛndər ˌgæp/
glands *n pl* /glændz/
hairdresser *n* /'hɛrdrɛsər/
ignore *v* /ɪg'nɔ:r/
inform *v* /ɪn'fɔ:rm/
interview *n, v* /'ɪntərvyu:/
liquid *n* /'lɪkwəd/
mechanic *n* /mə'kænɪk/
message *n* /'mɛsɪdʒ/
nanny *n* /'næni/
necessary *adj* /'nɛsəsɛri/
night shift *n* /'naɪt ˌʃɪft/
non-traditional *adj* /ˌnan trə'dɪʃnl/
obligation *n* /ˌablə'geɪʃn/
odd *adj* /ad/
optometrist *n* /ap'tamətrɪst/
opinion *n* /ə'pɪnyən/
painter *n* /'peɪntər/
plumber *n* /'plʌmər/
possession *n* /pə'zɛʃn/
prejudice *n* /'prɛdʒədɪs/
prescribe *v* /prɪ'skraɪb/
prescription *n* /prɪ'skrɪpʃn/
profession *n* /prə'fɛʃn/
psychology *n* /saɪ'kalədʒi/
racism *n* /'reɪsɪzəm/
reassure *v* /ˌri:ə'ʃʊr/
regret (to inform you) *v* /rɪ'grɛt (tə: ɪnˌfɔ:rm yu:)/
ruin *v* /'ru:ɪn/
satisfaction *n* /ˌsætəs'fækʃn/
seat belt *n* /'si:tbɛlt/
sexism *n* /'sɛksɪzəm/
signature *n* /'sɪgnətʃər/
sneeze *v* /sni:z/
soldier *n* /'soʊldʒər/
sore throat /ˌsɔ:r 'θroʊt/
stay calm /ˌsteɪ 'kɑ:m/
stomachache *n* /'stʌmək ˌeɪk/
strangely *adv* /'streɪndʒli/
swallow *v* /'swaloʊ/
swollen *pp* /'swoʊlən/
symptom *n* /'sɪmptəm/
take care of *v* /ˌteɪk 'kɛr əv/
taxi driver *n* /'tæksi ˌdraɪvər/
temperature *n* /'tɛmprətʃər/

tough *adj* /tʌf/
traditionally *adv* /trə'dɪʃənəli/
twist *v* /twɪst/
workplace *n* /'wə:rkpleɪs/

UNIT 9

addict *n* /'ædɪkt/
army *n* /'ɑr:mi/
as soon as /əz 'su:n əz/
atmosphere *n* /'ætməsfɪr/
awful *adj* /'ɔ:fl/
be bothered /bi 'baðərd/
be determined to do something /bi dɪ,tər:mənd tə 'du:/
be in control (of a situation) /,bi: ɪn kən,troʊl/
brochure *n* /'broʊʃʊr/
buffet car (on a train) *n* /'bəfeɪ ,kɑ:r/
carefree *adj* /'kɛfri:/
chase *v* /tʃeɪs/
consultant *n* /kən'sʌltnt/
crowded *adj* /'kraʊdəd/
debt *n* /dɛt/
delayed *adj* /dɪ'leɪd/
desire *n* /dɪ'zaɪər/
destination *n* /,dɛstə'neɪʃn/
distance *n* /'dɪstəns/
door to door /,dər: tə 'dər:/
earn *v* /ər:n/
environment *n* /ɛn'vaɪərnmənt/
escape *v* /ɪ'skeɪp/
favor *n* /'feɪvər/
firework *n* /'faɪərwər:k/
fluent *adj* /'flu:ənt/
flight *n* /flaɪt/
fortune (= a lot of money) *n* /'fɔr:tʃə:n/
freedom *n* /'fri:dəm/
gate *n* /geɪt/
get along well (with sb) *v* /,gɛt əlɔŋ 'wə'l (wɪð ...)/
harmed by (= damaged by) *pp* /'hɑr:md ,baɪ/
I can't see the point *coll* /aɪ ,kɑ:nt ,si: ðə 'pɔɪnt/
I can't be bothered *coll* /aɪ ,kɑ:nt bi 'bɑðərd/
insect *n* /'ɪnsɛkt/
It's your turn *coll* /ɪts 'yər: ,tər:n/
join *v* /dʒɔɪn/
mess *n* /mɛs/
message *n* /'mɛsɪdʒ/
money worries /'mʌni ,wəriz/
normal *adj* /'nɔr:ml/
navy *n* /'neɪvi/
old people's home *n* /,oʊld 'pi:plz ,hoʊm/
path *n* /pæ:θ/
plan *n* /plæn/
pollute *v* /pə'lu:t/
pond *n* /pand/
pros and cons /,proʊz ənd 'kanz/
put sb off sth (= stop sb liking sth) *v* /,pʊt ... 'ɔf ...)/
readjust *v* /,ri:ə'dʒʌst/
refer to *v* /rɪ'fər: tə/
retired *adj* /rɪ'taɪərd/
routine *n* /ru:'ti:n/
ruin *v* /'ru:ɪn/
run away *v* /,rʌn ə'weɪ/
sailor *n* /'seɪlər/
salary *n* /'sæləri/
save *v* /seɪv/
settle *v* /'sɛtl/
snack *n* /snæk/
stressful *adj* /'strɛsfl/
sunburned *adj* /'sʌnbər:nt/
tablet *n* /'tæblət/
Take care! /,teɪk 'kɛr/
the jungle (= African/Australian countryside) *n* /ðə 'dzʌŋgl/
traffic jam *n* /'træfɪk ,dʒæm/
travel brochure *n* /'trævl ,broʊʃʊr/
unwillingness *n* /ʌn'wɪlɪŋnəs/
wild *adj* /waɪld/
without doubt /wɪ,ðaʊt 'daʊt/
wood *n* /wʊd/
year abroad *n* /yɪr ə'brɔd/

UNIT 10

accurate *adj* /'ækyərət/
annoy *v* /ə'nɔɪ/
appliance *n* /ə'plaɪəns/
automated *adj* /'ɔ:təmeɪtɪd/
awarded *pp* /ə'wɔr:dɪd/
be broke (= have no money) *v coll* /,bi 'broʊk/
be related to (sb) *v* /,bi rɪ'leɪtəd tə .../
body *n* /'badi/
bone *n* /boʊn/
borrow *v* /'baroʊ/
briefcase *n* /'bri:fkeɪs/
cell *n* /sɛl/
century *n* /'sɛntʃəri/
certain *adj* /'sər:tn/
chemical *adj* /'kɛmɪkl/
chemist *n* /'kɛmɪst/
climb *v* /klaɪm/
cloth *n* /klɔθ/
commit (a crime) *v* /kə'mɪt/
company *n* /'kʌmpəni/
complain *v* /kəm'pleɪn/
complaint *n* /kəm'pleɪnt/
contain *v* /kən'teɪn/
criminal *n* /'krɪmənl/
cure *n, v* /kyʊr/
cut open *v* /,kʌt 'oʊpən/
develop *n* /dɪ'vɛləp/
dialogue *n* /'daɪələg/
discovered *pp* /dɪ'skʌvərd/
discovery *n* /dɪ'skʌvəri/
disease *n* /dɪ'zi:z/
DNA *n* /,di: ɛn 'eɪ/
domestic *adj* /də'mɛstɪk/
dream *v* /dri:m/
dream of *v* /'dri:m əv/
electricity *n* /ɪ,lɛk'trɪsəti/
experiment *v* /ɪk'sperɪmənt/
fault *n* /fɔ:lt/
government official *n* /,gʌvərmənt ə'fɪʃl/
graveyard *n* /'greɪvyɑ:rd/
gun *n* /gʌn/
guilty *adj* /'gɪlti/
heartbroken *adj* /'hɑr:tbroʊkən/
helicopter *n* /'helɪkɑptər/
homesick *adj* /'hoʊmsɪk/
hopeless *adj* /'hoʊpləs/
human *adj* /'hyu:mən/
illegal *adj* /ɪ'li:gl/
imaging *n* /'ɪmɪdʒɪŋ/
immediately *adv* /ɪ'mi:diətli/
invention *n* /ɪn'vɛnʃn/
item *n* /'aɪtəm/
keep a secret *v* /,ki:p ə ɪ 'si:krət/
lie *n* /laɪ/
luggage *n* /'lʌgɪdʒ/
make a complaint *v* /,meɪk ə ɪ kəm'pleɪnt/
match *v* /mætʃ/
memory *n* /'mɛməri/
miracle *n* /'mɪrəkl/
monster *n* /'manstər/
novel (= book) *n* /'navl/
operation *n* /,apə'reɪʃn/
paper mill *n* /'peɪpər ,mɪl/
papyrus *n* /pə'paɪrəs/
passenger *n* /'pæsəndʒər/
penicillin *n* /,pɛnə'sɪlən/
pick *v* /pɪk/
plastic *n* /'plæstɪk/
plot *n* /plat/
poet *n* /'poʊət/
popularity *n* /,papyə'lærəti/
prepare *v* /prɪ'pɛr/
press *v* /prɛs/
produce *v* /prə'du:s/
project *n* /'pradʒɛkt/
published *pp* /'pʌblɪʃt/
radium *n* /'reɪdiəm/
rarely *adv* /'rɛrli/
recently *adv* /'ri:səntli/
result *n* /rɪ'zʌlt/
ride *n, v* /raɪd/
science fiction /,saɪəns 'fɪkʃn/
search engine *n* /'sərtʃ ,ɛndʒən/
structure *n* /'strʌktʃər/
successful *adj* /sək'sɛʃfl/
suspect *n* /'sə'spɛkt/
technology *n* /tɛk'nalədʒi/
the atom *n* /ðə 'ætəm/
the truth *n* /ðə 'tru:θ/
translated *pp* /træns'leɪtɪd/
unique *adj* /yu:'ni:k/
weblink *n* /'wɛblɪŋk/
weight *n* /weɪt/
work of art *n* /,wər:k əv 'ɑ:rt/
worldwide *adj* /'wər:ldwaɪd/
X-ray *n* /'ɛks ,reɪ/

UNIT 11

accept *v* /ək'sept/
active *adj* /'æktɪv/
afterwards *adv* /'aeftərwərdz/
agree *v* /ə'gri/
ambition *n* /æm'bɪʃn/
ambitious *adj* /æm'bɪʃəs/
ash *n* /æʃ/
at the last minute /ət ðə ,læ:st 'mɪnət/
ban *v* /bæn/
be made redundant /bi ,meɪd rɪ'dʌndənt/
billion *n* /'bɪlyən/
can't stand /,kænt 'stænd/
blocked *pp* /blakt/
break down *v* /,breɪk 'daʊn/
certain *adj* /'sərtn/
chatter *v* /'tʃætər/
cloud *n* /klaʊd/
contaminated *adj* /kən'tæməneɪtɪd/
control *v* /kən'troʊl/
crazy *adj* /'kreɪzi/
crops *n pl* /kraps/
crossroads *n pl* /'krɔsroʊdz/
currently *adv* /'kərəntli/
decision *n* /dɪ'sɪʒn/
do well (= be successful) *v* /,du: 'wɛl/
dream of something /'dri:m əv 'sʌmθɪŋ/
earth *n* /ər:θ/
education *n* /,edʒə'keɪʃn/
erupt *v* /ɪ'rʌpt/
eventually *adv* /ɪ'ventʃəli/
excitedly *adv* /ɪk'saɪtədli/
expression *n* /ɪk'sprɛʃn/
extinct *adj* /ɪk'stɪŋkt/
fail *v* /feɪl/
famine *n* /'fæmən/
fight *n, v* /faɪt/
freeze *v* /fri:z/
frightening *adj* /'fraɪtnɪŋ/
geyser *n* /'gaɪ:zər/
give away *v* /,gɪv ə'weɪ/
global *adj* /'gloʊbl/
go on *v* /,goʊ an/
greenhouse *n* /'gri:nhaʊs/

ground *n* /graʊnd/
have an argument (= argument) *v* /ˌhæv ən argyumənt/
heating *n* /'hi:tɪŋ/
housing *n* /'haʊzɪŋ/
huge *adj* /hyu:dʒ/
impressed *adj* /ɪm'prɛst/
junk *n* /dʒʌŋk/
landscape (design) *n* /'lændskeɪp ('lændskeɪp dɪˌzaɪn)/
leader *n* /'li:dər/
lie down *v* /ˌlaɪ 'daʊn/
literature *n* /'lɪtərətʃər/
look for *v* /'lʊk fɔ:r, fər/
Look out! /ˌlʊk 'aʊt/
look up *v* /ˌlʊk 'ʌp/
ordinary *adj* /'ordnɛri/
oven *n* /'ʌvən/
pick up *v* /ˌpɪk 'ʌp/
plant *n* /plæ:nt/
possibility *n* /ˌpasə'bɪlətɪ/
put off *v* /ˌpʊt 'ɔf/
recycle *v* /ˌri:'saɪkl/
rock *n* /rak/
run (a company) *v* /ˌrʌn (ə 'kʌmpəni)/
run out of *v* /ˌrʌn 'aʊt əv/
second-hand *adj* /ˌsɛkənd 'hænd/
shantytown *n* /'ʃænti ˌtaʊn/
shock *n* /ʃak/
shoot up *v* /ˌʃu:t 'ʌp/
so *adv, adj* /soʊ/
stranger *n* /'streɪndʒər/
such /sʌtʃ/
sunlight *n* /'sʌnlaɪt/
take off *v* /ˌteɪk 'ɔf/
a talk *n* /ə 'tɔ:k/
throw away *v* /ˌθroʊ ə'weɪ/
try on *v* /ˌtraɪ 'an/
turn around *v* /ˌtərn ə'raʊnd/
turn off *v* /ˌtərn 'af/
unlikely *adv* /ˌʌn'laɪkli/
volcano *n* /val'keɪnoʊ/

UNIT 12

autobiography *n* /ˌɔ:təbaɪ'agrəfi/
break (a record) *v* /ˌbreɪk (ə 'rɛkərd)/
brief *adj* /bri:f/
brought *pp* /brɔ:t/
challenge *n* /'tʃæləndʒ/
climb *v* /klaɪm/
Congratulations! *n pl* /kənˌgrætʃə'leɪʃnz/
continent *n* /'kantənənt/
copies (pl of copy) *n* /'kapiz/
cover *v* /'kʌvər/
crowded *adj* /'kraʊdəd/
daughter *n* /'dɔ:tər/
decorate (a house) *v* /ˌdɛkəreɪt (ə 'haʊs)/
delighted *adj* /dɪ'laɪtəd/
delivery *n* /dɪ'lɪvəri/
dessert *n* /dɪ'zərt/
dig *v* /dɪg/
dirty *adj* /'dər:ti/
disguise *v* /dɪs'gaɪz/
do drugs *v* /du 'drʌgz/
explorer *n* /ɪk'splɔ:rər/
explore *v* /ɪk'splɔ:r/
fed up *adj, coll* /ˌfɛd 'ʌp/
fix *v* /fɪks/
follow *v* /'faloʊ/
footsteps *n pl* /'fʊtstɛps/
fresh air *n* /ˌfrɛʃ 'ɛr/
frozen *adj* /'froʊzn/
get used to sth *v* /ˌgɛt 'yust tə .../
hard *adj* /hɑrd/
Have a good trip! *coll* /ˌhæv ə ˌgʊd 'trɪp/
hero *n* /'hɪroʊ/
hide *v* /haɪd/
homeless *adj* /'hoʊmləs/
honest *adj* /'anəst/
hurt *v* /hər:t/
in somebody's footsteps /ɪn 'sʌmbʌdiz 'fʊtstɛps/
income *n* /'ɪnkʌm/
journey *n* /'dʒərni/
let *v* /lɛt/
Oh, what a shame! *coll* /ˌoʊ ˌwat ə ʃeɪm/
outdoor *adj* /'aʊtdɔ:r/
Pardon me? /'pɑrdn mi/
peak (of a mountain) *n* /pi:k/
physical education *n* /ˌfɪzɪkl ˌɛdʒə'keɪʃn/
pretty *adv coll* /'prɪti/
present *v* /prɛ'zɛnt/
reason *n* /'ri:zn/
record books *n* /'rɛkər:d ˌbʊks/
remind *v* /rɪ'maɪnd/
seat *n* /si:t/
silly *adj* /'sɪli/
stay calm *v* /ˌsteɪ 'kɑ:m/
subway station (= underground station) *n US* /'sʌbweɪ ˌsteɪʃn/
succeed *v* /sək'si:d/
successful *adj* /sək'sɛʃfl/
swear (= I promise) *v* /sweər/
sympathetic *adj* /ˌsɪmpə'θetɪk/
take it easy /ˌteɪk ɪt 'i:zi/
the North Pole *n* /ðə ˌnɔ:θ 'pəʊl/
trip *n* /trɪp/
well-prepared *adj* /ˌwel prɪ'pɛrd/

Irregular Verbs

Base form	Past Simple	Past participle
be	was/were	been
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
can	could	been able
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone/been
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hit	hit	hit
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
leave	left	left
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read /rid/	read /rɛd/	read /rɛd/
ride	rode	ridden
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Verb Patterns

Verb + *-ing*	
like love enjoy hate finish stop	swimming cooking

Verb + *to* + infinitive	
choose decide forget manage promise need help hope try want would like would love	 to go to work

Verb + *-ing* or *to* + infinitive	
begin start	raining/to rain

Modal auxiliary verbs	
can could will would	 go arrive

Phonetic Symbols

Consonants			
1	/p/	as in	**pen** /pɛn/
2	/b/	as in	**big** /bɪg/
3	/t/	as in	**tea** /ti/
4	/d/	as in	**do** /du/
5	/k/	as in	**cat** /kæt/
6	/g/	as in	**go** /goʊ/
7	/f/	as in	**five** /faɪv/
8	/v/	as in	**very** /'vɛri/
9	/s/	as in	**son** /sʌn/
10	/z/	as in	**zoo** /zu/
11	/l/	as in	**live** /lɪv/
12	/m/	as in	**my** /maɪ/
13	/n/	as in	**nine** /naɪn/
14	/h/	as in	**happy** /'hæpi/
15	/r/	as in	**red** /rɛd/
16	/y/	as in	**yes** /yɛs/
17	/w/	as in	**want** /wɒnt/
18	/θ/	as in	**thanks** /θæŋks/
19	/ð/	as in	**the** /ðə/
20	/ʃ/	as in	**she** /ʃi/
21	/ʒ/	as in	**television** /'telɪvɪʒn/
22	/tʃ/	as in	**child** /tʃaɪld/
23	/dʒ/	as in	**Japan** /dʒə'pæn/
24	/ŋ/	as in	**English** /'ɪŋglɪʃ/

Vowels			
25	/i/	as in	**see** /si/
26	/ɪ/	as in	**his** /hɪz/
27	/ɛ/	as in	**ten** /tɛn/
28	/æ/	as in	**stamp** /stæmp/
29	/ɑ/	as in	**father** /'fɑðər/
30	/ɔ/	as in	**saw** /sɔ/
31	/ɒ/	as in	**hot** /hɒt/
32	/ʊ/	as in	**book** /bʊk/
33	/u/	as in	**you** /yu/
34	/ʌ/	as in	**sun** /sʌn/
35	/ə/	as in	**about** /ə'baʊt/
36	/eɪ/	as in	**name** /neɪm/
37	/aɪ/	as in	**my** /maɪ/
38	/ɔɪ/	as in	**boy** /bɔɪ/
39	/aʊ/	as in	**how** /haʊ/
40	/oʊ/	as in	**go** /goʊ/
41	/ər/	as in	**bird** /bərd/
42	/ɪr/	as in	**near** /nɪr/
43	/ɛr/	as in	**hair** /hɛr/
44	/ar/	as in	**car** /kar/
45	/ɔr/	as in	**more** /mɔr/
46	/ʊr/	as in	**tour** /tʊr/

How to access the *American Headway, Second Edition* Student Book 2 audio files

The new *American Headway* Student Audio Download Center allows students to access and download audio files for the listening activities in the Student Book. To find this content, visit the *American Headway* Student Audio Download Center at www.oup.com/elt/americanheadway2e. Then navigate the files by searching for the unit, page number, and exercise.

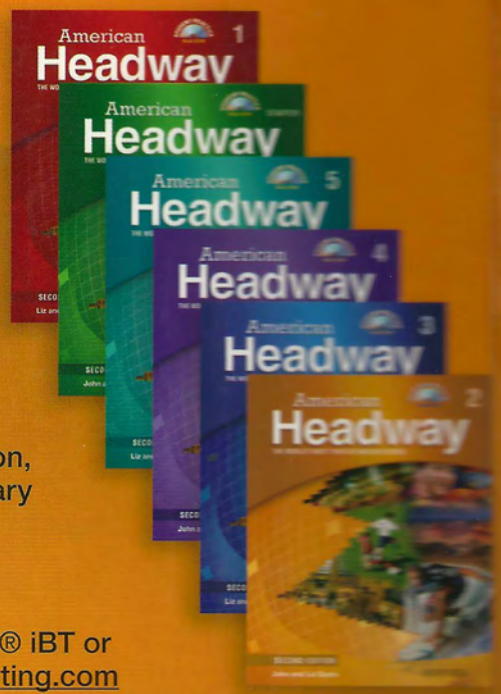
Student Practice Multi-ROM tracks

Track	Unit	Topic	Speakers
1	1	Do you have a best friend?	Lisa, Lindsay, Hong, Seana
2	2	What is your favorite room?	Kami, Amanda, Will, Seana, Lisa
3	3	What did you do on your last birthday?	Dan, Julie, Jen, Yuhi
4	4	Have you visited a market in another country?	Lindsay, Zaida, Jen
5	5	Who do you ask for advice?	Kami, Beth, Vangile, Seana
6	6	Things you love that are free	Dan, Lindsay, Yuhi, Zaida
7	7	Have you ever met a famous person?	Lisa, Dan, Joshua, Paul, Lindsay
8	8	What did you have to do to help in the house?	Will, Joshua, Beth, Amanda
9	9	What places in the world would you like to go to?	Nick, Dan, Kami, Seana
10	10	What annoys you?	Dan, Lindsay, Yuhi, Robert
11	11	My neighbors make a lot of noise. What should I do?	Kami, Amanda, Will, Joe, Paul
12	12	Would you explore the North Pole?	Lisa, Lindsay, Joe, Zaida



American Headway

THE WORLD'S MOST TRUSTED ENGLISH COURSE



New Advanced title completes 6-level curriculum

New Student Practice Multi-ROM provides hours of interactive grammar, vocabulary, writing, and listening practice

New Teacher Resource Center brings together all classroom presentation, practice, and assessment materials in one customizable online library

New Spotlight on Testing lessons in Workbooks 1-5 prepare students for success on the TOEFL® iBT and other standardized exams

New Access to automatically-graded, online practice test for the TOEFL® iBT or your choice of other exam available through www.oxfordenglishtesting.com

Oxford › making digital sense

FOR STUDENTS:

- Student Book with Multi-ROM
- Workbook with Spotlight on Testing
- Workbook Audio CD
- Student Practice Multi-ROM
- Student Audio Download Center: www.oup.com/elt/americanheadway2e
- oxfordenglishtesting.com

FOR TEACHERS:

- Teacher's Book
- Test Generator CD-ROM
- Class Audio CDs
- Log on Program Tour and Teacher Resource Center: www.oup.com/elt/teacher/americanheadway2e

NEW Student Practice Multi-ROM

Variety of interactive exercises offer grammar, vocabulary, writing, and listening practice



OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com

*TOEFL is a registered trademark of Educational Testing Service (ETS). This publication is not endorsed or approved by ETS.

CEF B1 A2 A1

ISBN 978-0-19-472964-2

9 780194 729642